

MX8 Mobile Computer

with Microsoft[®] Windows[®] Mobile 6.1

User's Guide

Disclaimer

Honeywell International Inc. ("HII") reserves the right to make changes in specifications and other information contained in this document without prior notice, and the reader should in all cases consult HII to determine whether any such changes have been made. The information in this publication does not represent a commitment on the part of HII.

HII shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein; nor for incidental or consequential damages resulting from the furnishing, performance, or use of this material.

HII disclaims all responsibility for the selection and use of software and/or hardware to achieve intended results.

This document contains proprietary information that is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated into another language without the prior written consent of HII.

© 2009-2014 Honeywell International Inc. All rights reserved.

Web Address: www.honeywellaidc.com

Trademarks

RFTerm is a trademark or registered trademark of EMS Technologies, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft® Windows®, ActiveSync®, MSN, Outlook®, Windows Mobile®, the Windows logo, and Windows Media are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries."

Marvell® is a registered trademark of Marvell Technology Group Ltd., or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Summit Data Communications, the Laird Technologies Logo, the Summit logo, and "Connected. No Matter What" are trademarks of Laird Technologies, Inc.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

microSD and microSDHC are trademarks or registered trademarks of SD-3C, LLC in the United States and/or other countries.

Symbol® is a registered trademark of Symbol Technologies. MOTOROLA, MOTO, MOTOROLA SOLUTIONS and the Stylized M Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Motorola Trademark Holdings, LLC and are used under license.

Hand Held is a trademark of Hand Held Products, Inc., a subsidiary of Honeywell International.

RAM® and RAM Mount™ are both trademarks of National Products Inc., 1205 S. Orr Street, Seattle, WA 98108.

Wi-Fi®, WMM®, Wi-Fi Multimedia™, Wi-Fi Protected Access®, WPA™, WPA2™ and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™ logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.

Acrobat® Reader © 2014 with express permission from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Other product names or marks mentioned in this document may be trademarks or registered trademarks of other companies and are the property of their respective owners.

Patents

For patent information, please refer to www.hsmpats.com.



Table of Contents

Chapter 1 - MX8 Agency Compliance

Laser Warnings	1-1
Laser Label Location.....	1-1
Laser Safety Statement.....	1-1

Chapter 2 - Getting Started

Overview	2-1
About this Guide.....	2-1
Out of the Box	2-1
Initial Setup for the MX8.....	2-2
Hardware Setup.....	2-2
Software Setup	2-2
Components.....	2-3
Front View	2-3
Back.....	2-4
I/O Port and Cables	2-5
AC/DC Adapter for MX8 and MX8 Desktop Cradle	2-5
Scanner / Imager Aperture	2-6
Handle	2-6
Hand Strap	2-6
Keypads.....	2-7
32 Key Triple-Tap Keypad	2-7
32 Key Alpha-Mode Keypad	2-8
Locking and Unlocking the MX8.....	2-8
Rebooting the MX8	2-8
Suspend / Resume	2-9
Warmboot	2-9
Cold Boot / Restart	2-9
Battery.....	2-10
Inserting a Battery	2-10
Removing the Main Battery	2-10
Charging the Main Battery.....	2-10
Backlights and Indicators	2-11
MX8 Status LEDs	2-11
System Status LED	2-11
Alpha mode Status LED	2-11
Scan Status	2-11
Toggle Vibrate Indicator	2-11
Tapping the Touch Screen with a Stylus.....	2-12
Touch Screen.....	2-13
Calibrating the Touch Screen	2-13
Adjusting the Display Backlight Timer	2-13
Apply the Touch Screen Protective Film	2-13
Using the Input Panel / Virtual Keyboard	2-14
Setting Date and Time Zone	2-14
Setting Speaker Volume	2-15
Battery Power Scheme	2-16
AC Power Scheme	2-16

Setup Terminal Emulation Parameters.....	2-16
Using the AppLock Switchpad.....	2-17
Using the Keypad.....	2-17
Using the Touch Screen.....	2-17
Connecting Bluetooth Devices	2-17
Taskbar Connection Indicator	2-18
Reboot	2-19
Warm Boot	2-19
Cold Boot	2-19
Attaching the Handstrap	2-20
Attaching the Trigger Handle.....	2-21
Assembling the Carry Case.....	2-22
Carry Case with Metal Snaps.....	2-22
Assembling the Voice Case.....	2-22
Connecting the USB Client and Power Cable	2-23
Connecting the Serial and Power Cable.....	2-23
Connecting an External Power Supply	2-23
Connecting the Headset Cable.....	2-24
Adjust Headset / Microphone and Secure Cable.....	2-25
Accessing Files on the CF/SD Card.....	2-25
Cleaning the Touch Screen and Scanner Aperture	2-26
Startup Help.....	2-26

Chapter 3 - Hardware Configuration

System Hardware	3-1
802.11b/g and a/b/g Wireless Client	3-1
Central Processing Unit	3-1
System Memory	3-1
Internal Mini SD Memory Card.....	3-1
Video Subsystem	3-1
Power Supply	3-1
COM Port	3-2
RS232 Serial Port	3-2
USB Client Port.....	3-2
Audio Headset Connection	3-2
Audio Support	3-2
Scanner / Imager Port.....	3-3
Bluetooth.....	3-3
Keypads	3-4
Using the Triple-Tap Keypad.....	3-4
Using the Alpha-Mode Keypad.....	3-4
Display	3-5
Display Backlight Timer.....	3-5
Status LEDs	3-5
System Status LED	3-5
Scan Status LED	3-5
Alpha Mode LED	3-6

Chapter 4 - Power Modes and Batteries

Power Modes.....	4-1
On Mode	4-1
Suspend Mode	4-1
Off Mode	4-1
Batteries	4-1
Checking Battery Status.....	4-1
Main Battery Pack	4-1
Battery Hotswapping	4-2
Low Battery Warning	4-2
Backup Battery	4-2
Handling Batteries Safely	4-2

Chapter 5 - Software Configuration

Introduction	5-1
Windows Mobile 6.1 Operating System	5-1
Software Development	5-1
Clearing Registry Settings	5-1
Installed Software	5-2
Software Load	5-2
Software Backup	5-2
Version Control	5-2
Boot Loader.....	5-2
Startup Folders and Launch Sequences.....	5-2
Today Screen	5-3
Start Menu	5-3
Configurable Today Screen Listing	5-3
Date.....	5-3
Device Unlocked / Device Locked.....	5-4
Notification Bar.....	5-4
Status Icons	5-4
Soft Keys.....	5-5
Start and Program Menus	5-5
Installed Programs.....	5-6
Internet Explorer.....	5-6
Office Mobile Applications.....	5-6
ActiveSync	5-6
AppLock (Option)	5-6
Summit.....	5-6
Windows Media Player.....	5-6
Bluetooth (Option)	5-7
RFTerm (Option)	5-7
Status Popup.....	5-7
HSM Connect.....	5-7
GrabTime	5-8
Synchronize with a local time server	5-8
Enhanced Launch	5-8
RegLoad.....	5-8
RegEdit	5-8
Remote Desktop	5-8

Set Remote Desktop Mobile Options.....	5-9
Connect to a Remote Server	5-9
Installing Applications	5-10
Preparation.....	5-10
Package File Installation	5-10
Installing Applications Help	5-12
Settings Panels.....	5-13
Personal Panels	5-15
Buttons	5-15
Program Buttons.....	5-15
Up/Down Control	5-16
Input	5-16
Input Method.....	5-16
Word Completion	5-17
Options	5-18
Lock.....	5-19
Password.....	5-19
Hint	5-20
Menus	5-21
Owner Information.....	5-22
Sounds & Notifications	5-24
Sounds	5-24
Notifications	5-25
Today	5-26
System Panels.....	5-27
About.....	5-27
Version	5-27
Device ID	5-28
Copyrights	5-28
About MX8WM.....	5-29
Software	5-29
Hardware	5-30
Versions.....	5-30
Network IP	5-31
Backlight.....	5-32
Battery Power	5-32
External Power	5-33
Brightness.....	5-34
Certificates	5-35
Personal	5-35
Intermediate.....	5-36
Root	5-37
Clock & Alarms.....	5-38
Time.....	5-38
Alarms	5-38
More	5-39
Customer Feedback.....	5-40
Encryption	5-41
Error Reporting.....	5-42
External GPS	5-43
License Manager.....	5-44
Managed Programs.....	5-45

Memory	5-46
Main	5-46
Storage Card	5-46
MX8WM Options	5-47
Communication	5-47
Misc.	5-47
Status Popup	5-48
Power	5-49
Battery	5-49
Advanced.....	5-50
Regional Settings	5-51
Remove Programs	5-52
Screen.....	5-53
Alignment.....	5-53
Clear Type	5-53
Text Size.....	5-54
Task Manager	5-55
Windows Update	5-56
Connections Panel	5-57
Beam.....	5-57
Connections	5-58
Domain Enroll.....	5-59
Wi-Fi (Network Adapters).....	5-60
Wi-Fi (Network Access).....	5-61
Wireless	5-61
Network Adapters	5-62
Wireless Manager	5-63
Wi-Fi	5-63
Bluetooth	5-64
Using ActiveSync.....	5-64
Initial Install	5-65
Install ActiveSync on Host Computer	5-65
Serial Connection	5-65
USB Connection	5-65
Connect -- Initial Install Process.....	5-65
Synchronize Files.....	5-65
MX8 and PC Partnership	5-65
Serial Port Transfer	5-65
USB Transfer	5-66
Explore	5-66
Disconnect	5-66
USB Connection	5-66
Serial Connection	5-66
Cold Boot and Loss of Host Re-connection	5-66
ActiveSync Help	5-67
Configuring with HSM Connect	5-68
Install HSM Connect	5-68
Using HSM Connect.....	5-70

Chapter 6 - AppLock (Application Locking)

Introduction	6-1
--------------------	-----

Setup a New Device	6-1
Administration Mode	6-2
End User Mode	6-2
Passwords	6-3
End-User Switching Technique	6-3
Using a Stylus Tap	6-3
Using the Switch Key Sequence	6-3
Hotkey (Activation hotkey)	6-4
End User Internet Explorer (EUIE)	6-4
Application Configuration	6-4
Application Panel	6-5
Launch Button	6-6
Auto At Boot	6-6
Auto Re-Launch	6-7
Manual (Launch)	6-7
Match	6-7
Allow Close	6-7
Security Panel	6-8
Setting an Activation Hotkey	6-8
Setting a Password in the Security Panel	6-8
Options Panel	6-9
Status Panel	6-10
View	6-10
Log	6-11
Save As	6-11
AppLock Help	6-11
AppLock Error Messages	6-12

Chapter 7 - Bluetooth

Introduction	7-1
Initial Configuration	7-2
Subsequent Use	7-2
Bluetooth Devices Panel	7-3
Clear Button	7-3
Discover Button	7-3
Stop Button	7-4
Bluetooth Device Menu	7-5
Bluetooth Properties	7-6
Settings Panel	7-7
Turn On Bluetooth (Button)	7-7
Options	7-7
Reconnect Panel	7-9
Options	7-9
About Panel	7-10
Easy Pairing and Auto-Reconnect	7-11
Bluetooth Bar Code Reader Setup	7-11
MX8 with Label	7-11
MX8 without Label	7-12
Bluetooth Reader Beep and LED Indications	7-13
Bluetooth Remote Device Beep Type	7-13

Bluetooth Remote Device LED	7-13
Bluetooth Printer Setup	7-13

Chapter 8 - Data Collection

Introduction	8-1
Bar Code Readers	8-1
Return to Factory Default Settings	8-1
Using Programming Bar Codes	8-1
Hand Held Products Imager	8-1
Data Processing Overview	8-2
Main Tab	8-2
Continuous Scan Mode	8-3
COM1 Tab	8-4
Notification Tab	8-5
Vibration	8-5
Data Options Tab	8-6
Enable Code ID	8-6
Options	8-7
Buttons	8-7
Symbology Settings	8-8
Processing Order	8-9
Strip Leading/Trailing Control	8-10
Barcode Data Match List	8-10
Add Prefix/Suffix Control	8-11
Symbologies	8-13
AIM Symbologies	8-13
HHP Symbologies	8-14
Advanced Button (Hand Held Products Only)	8-14
HHP Properties	8-31
Ctrl Char Mapping	8-32
Custom Identifiers	8-34
Control Code Replacement Examples	8-35
Bar Code Processing Examples	8-36
Length Based Bar Code Stripping	8-37
Processing Tab	8-39
About Tab	8-40
Hat Encoding	8-41

Chapter 9 - Enhanced Launch Utility

Introduction	9-1
Registry Based Launch Items	9-1
Launch Startup Options	9-2
Script Based Launch Items	9-3
Enhanced Launch Utility Use	9-3
File Names	9-3
Command Line Structure	9-4
Comments	9-4
Commands Supported by Launch	9-5
Copy	9-5

Delete	9-5
DelRegData	9-5
DelRegKey	9-6
Elseif	9-6
ElseifFile	9-6
EndIf	9-7
EndIfFile	9-7
EndIfTerm	9-7
FCopy	9-7
IfFile	9-8
IfTerm	9-8
Launch	9-8
LaunchCmd	9-9
Message	9-9
Mkdir	9-9
Rmdir	9-10
SetRegData	9-10
SetRegKey	9-11
Shortcut	9-11
Launch Error Messages	9-11
Example Script File.....	9-13

Chapter 10 - Wireless Network Configuration

Introduction	10-1
Important Notes	10-1
Summit Client Utility	10-1
Help	10-1
Summit Tray Icon	10-1
Using Windows Mobile Wireless Manager	10-3
Create a New Network Connection	10-3
Edit a Network Connection	10-5
Switch Control to SCU	10-5
Main Tab	10-5
Auto Profile	10-6
Admin Login.....	10-7
Profile Tab.....	10-8
Buttons	10-8
Profile Parameters	10-9
Status Tab.....	10-11
Diags Tab.....	10-12
Global Tab.....	10-13
Custom Parameter Option	10-14
Global Parameters	10-14
Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials	10-17
Using Stored Credentials	10-17
Using a Sign On Screen.....	10-17
Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path.....	10-19
User Certificates.....	10-19
Root CA Certificates.....	10-19
Using the Certs Path	10-19

Using the Windows Certificate Store	10-19
Configuring Profiles	10-21
No Security	10-21
WEP	10-22
LEAP	10-23
PEAP/MSCHAP	10-24
PEAP/GTC	10-26
WPA/LEAP	10-28
EAP-FAST	10-29
EAP-TLS	10-31
WPA PSK	10-33
Certificates	10-34
Generating a Root CA Certificate	10-34
Installing a Root CA Certificate	10-37
Generating a User Certificate	10-37
Exporting a User Certificate	10-39
Installing a User Certificate	10-40
Installing a User Certificate	10-44
Verify Installation	10-47

Chapter 11 - Keymaps

Introduction	11-1
32 key Numeric-Alpha Triple-Tap Keymap	11-1
32 key Alpha-Mode Keymap	11-6

Chapter 12 - Cradles

Unpacking your Cradles	12-1
Overview	12-1
Preparing the Cradle for Use	12-1
Tethered Scanners and the MX8 Cradles	12-2
Cleaning, Storage and Service	12-2
Battery Cleaning, Storage and Service	12-3
Using the Desktop Cradle	12-3
Introduction	12-3
Quick Start - Desktop Cradle	12-3
Battery Charging in a Desktop Cradle	12-3
Front View	12-4
Back View	12-4
Top View	12-5
Desktop Mounting Footprint	12-5
Cradle LEDs	12-6
Docked LED	12-6
Spare Battery LED	12-6
MX8 Mobile Device System Status LED	12-6
Installing / Removing the Docking Bay Adapter Cup	12-7
Installing	12-7
Removing	12-7
Assembling the AC Power Adapter	12-8
Connecting Input/Output Cables	12-9

Attaching a Serial or I/O Connector	12-9
Docking and Undocking the MX8.....	12-9
Using the Spare Battery Bay	12-9
Inserting a Spare Battery	12-10
Removing Spare Battery	12-10
MX8 Desktop Cradle Help.....	12-11
Using the Charging Multi-Dock.....	12-12
Introduction	12-12
Installing / Removing the Docking Bay Adapter Cups.....	12-12
Installing	12-12
Removing	12-12
Assembling the AC Power Adapter.....	12-13
LED Indicators.....	12-13
MX8 System Status LED	12-13
Docking and Undocking the MX8.....	12-14
Safety Guidelines and Cautions.....	12-14
Using the Passive Vehicle Cradle	12-15
Introduction	12-15
Preparing the Passive Vehicle Cradle for Use	12-15
Quick Start	12-15
Components.....	12-16
U-Bracket Footprint	12-16
RAM Assembly Components.....	12-16
RAM Assembly Footprint.....	12-16
Installing the Cradle U-Bracket	12-17
Installing the RAM Bracket.....	12-18
Velcro Slides	12-18

Chapter 13 - Battery Charger

Unpacking your Battery Charger	13-1
Introduction.....	13-1
Cautions and Warnings	13-2
Battery Charger.....	13-2
Lithium-Ion Battery Pack.....	13-2
Front View	13-3
Top View.....	13-3
Installation	13-4
Assemble the Power Supply	13-4
Setup.....	13-4
Mounting.....	13-5
Charging Batteries.....	13-6
Inserting a Battery into the Charging Pocket.....	13-6
Remove the Battery from the Charging Pocket.....	13-6
Interpreting the Charging Pocket LEDs.....	13-6
Battery Charger Help.....	13-7
Charger Cleaning, Storage and Service.....	13-8
Cleaning.....	13-8
Storage.....	13-8
Service	13-8
Battery Cleaning, Storage and Service	13-9

Cleaning	13-9
Storage.....	13-9
Service	13-9

Chapter 14 - Technical Specifications

MX8	14-1
Dimensions and Weight.....	14-1
Environmental Specifications	14-2
Network Card Specifications	14-2
Summit 802.11 b/g	14-2
Summit 802.11 a/b/g	14-2
Bluetooth	14-2
Input/Output Port Pinout	14-3
AC Wall Adapter	14-3
Cradles and Multi-dock.....	14-4
Technical Specifications – Desktop Cradle.....	14-4
Pinout - RS232 Connector.....	14-4
Technical Specifications – Charging Multi-dock.....	14-5
Battery Charger	14-5
Electrical.....	14-5
Temperature.....	14-5
Dimensions	14-5


Chapter 15 - Customer Support

Technical Assistance.....	15-1
Product Service and Repair.....	15-1
Limited Warranty	15-1

MX8 Agency Compliance


MX8 mobile computers meet or exceed the requirements of all applicable standards organizations for safe operation. However, as with any electrical equipment, the best way to ensure safe operation is to operate them according to the agency guidelines that follow. Read these guidelines carefully before using your MX8.

This documentation is relevant for the following models: MX8.

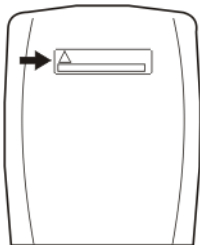
Caution: 	RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. The battery should be disposed of by a qualified recycler or hazardous materials handler. Do not incinerate the battery or dispose of the battery with general waste materials.
---	--

Laser Warnings

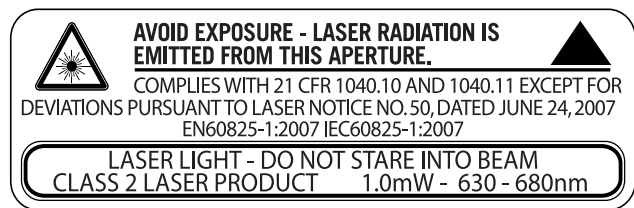
- Do not look into the laser's lens.
- Do not stare directly into the laser beam.
- Do not remove the laser caution labels from the MX8.
- Do not connect the laser bar code aperture to any other device. The laser bar code aperture is certified for use with the MX8 only.

Caution: 	Laser radiation when open. Read the caution labels. Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
---	---

Laser Label Location



If the following label is attached to your product, it indicates the product contains an engine with a laser aimer:



Laser Safety Statement

This device has been tested in accordance with and complies with IEC60825-1 ed2 (2007). Complies with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for deviations pursuant to Laser Notice No. 50, dated June 24, 2007.

LASER LIGHT, DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM, CLASS 2 LASER PRODUCT, 1.0 mW MAX OUTPUT: 630-680nm.

Model Number, Serial Number and IMEI Labels

The model (item) number, serial number, and international mobile equipment identity (IMEI) number for the terminal are located on labels affixed to the back of the terminal.

FCC Part 15 Statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

If necessary, the user should consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. The user may find the following booklet helpful: "Something About Interference." This is available at FCC local regional offices. Honeywell is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by unauthorized modifications of this equipment or the substitution or attachment of connecting cables and equipment other than those specified by Honeywell. The correction is the responsibility of the user.

Caution: Any changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by Honeywell may void the FCC authorization to operate this equipment.

FCC 5GHz Statement

LAN devices are restricted to indoor use only in the band 5150-5250 MHz. For the band 5600-5650 MHz, no operation is permitted.

When using IEEE 802.11a wireless LAN, this product is restricted to indoor use, due to its operation in the 5.15- to 5.25-GHz Frequency range. The FCC requires this product to be used indoors for the frequency range of 5.15 GHz to 5.25 GHz to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems. High-power radar is allocated as the primary user of the 5.25- to 5.35-GHz and 5.65- to 5.85-GHz bands. These radar stations can cause interference with and/or damage to this device.

Canadian Compliance

This ISM device complies with Canadian RSS-210.

Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

CE Mark

The CE marking on the product indicates that this device is in conformity with the following directives:

- 1995/5/EC R&TTE
- 2011/65/EU RoHS (Recast)

In addition, complies to 2006/95/EC Low Voltage Directive, when shipped with recommended power supply. European contact:



Hand Held Products Europe BV
Nijverheidsweg 9-13
5627 BT Eindhoven
The Netherlands

Honeywell shall not be liable for use of our product with equipment (i.e., power supplies, personal computers, etc.) that is not CE marked and does not comply with the Low Voltage Directive.

RF Notices

This device contains transmitter Module FCC ID: KDZLXE4830P.

This device contains transmitter Module FCC ID: KDZLXE4831P.

RF Safety Notice (KDZLXE4830)



Caution:

This portable device with its antenna complies with FCC and Industry Canada RF exposure limits set for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment has shown compliance with FCC and Industry Canada Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) limits. Highest reported SAR for the MX8 is 0.125W/kg on body. Any accessories not provided by Honeywell should not be used with this device. This device must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

RF Safety Notice (KDZLXE4831)



Caution:

This portable device with its antenna complies with FCC and Industry Canada RF exposure limits set for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment has shown compliance with FCC and Industry Canada Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) limits. Highest reported SAR for the MX8 is 0.358W/kg on body. Any accessories not provided by Honeywell should not be used with this device. This device must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Bluetooth



Bluetooth® Class II

Honeywell Scanning & Mobility Product Environmental Information

Refer to www.honeywellaidc.com/environmental for the RoHS/REACH/WEEE information.

Dealer License - Republic of Singapore

Complies with IDA Standards DA103458
--

Brazil

Bluetooth and GSM technology are not available in Brazil.

Getting Started

Overview

The MX8 is a rugged, portable, hand-held mobile computer capable of wireless data communications. The MX8 can receive and transmit information using an 802.11 network card and it can store information for later transmission through an RS232 or USB port.

The MX8 is vertically oriented and features backlighting for the display. The touch-screen display supports graphic features and Windows icons that the Windows operating system supports. The keypad is available in a 32-key numeric-alpha triple-tap version and a 32-key Alpha mode version.

This device can be scaled from a limited function batch computer to an integrated RF scanning computer. A trigger handle is available as an accessory.

The stylus attached to the handstrap is used to assist in entering data and configuring the mobile device. Protective film for the touch screen is available as an accessory.

The MX8 is powered by a 3000 mAh Lithium-Ion main battery pack and an internal Ni-MH backup battery.

About this Guide

This MX8 User's Guide provides instruction for the system administrator to follow when configuring the MX8 with a Microsoft Windows Mobile 6.5 operating system. Also included are setup and use instructions for the MX8 Battery Charger, Desktop Cradle, Passive Vehicle Mounted Cradle and Multi-dock.

Out of the Box

After you open the shipping carton verify it contains the following items:

- MX8 Hand Held Computer
- Rechargeable Battery
- Hand Strap (attached to the MX8)
- Quick Start Guide
- Getting Started Disc

If you ordered accessories for the MX8, verify they are also included with the order. Keep the original packaging material in the event the MX8 should need to be returned for service. For details, see [Product Service and Repair](#) (page 15-1).

Initial Setup for the MX8

Following are steps you might take when setting up a new MX8. Follow the links for further instruction for each step. Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) if you need additional help.

Note: Installing or removing accessories should be performed on a clean, well-lit surface. When necessary, protect the work surface, the MX8 and components from static discharge.

Hardware Setup

1. Connect accessories e.g., hand strap (if necessary), trigger handle, etc.
2. Provide a power source:
 - Insert a fully charged main battery.
 - Connect a power cable (USB/Power or Serial/Power).
 - Place the MX8 in a powered Desktop Cradle or Multi-dock.
3. Press the Power key.

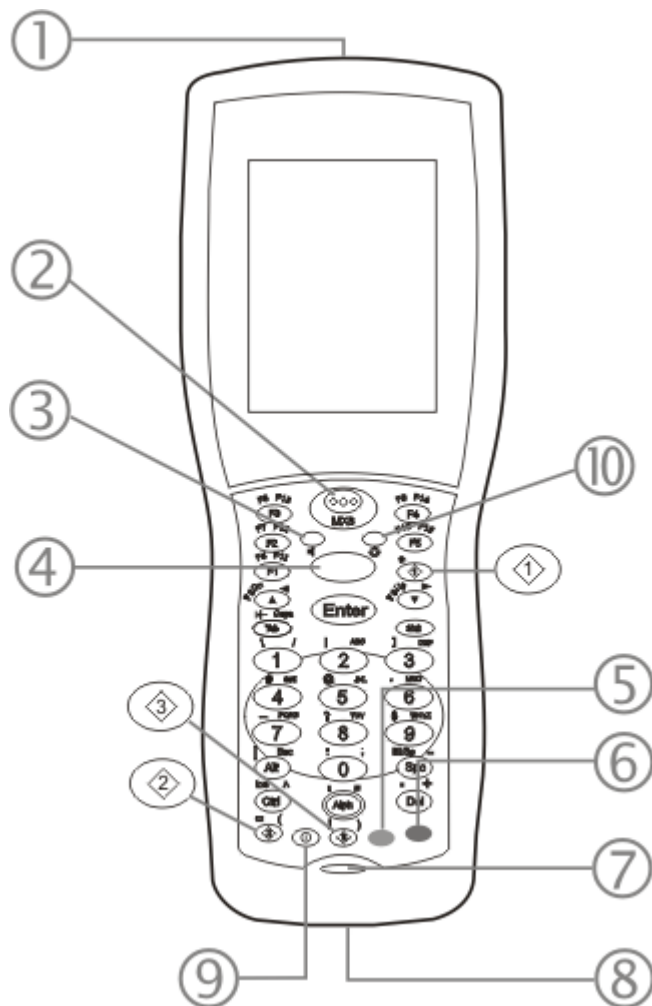
Software Setup

Hardware setup should be completed before starting software setup.

1. Calibrate Touch screen.
2. Set Date and Time Zone.
3. Set Power Timers.
4. Set Speaker Volume.
5. Pair Bluetooth devices.
6. Assign Mappable Keys.
7. Setup Wireless client parameters.
8. Setup terminal emulation parameters.
9. Save changed settings to the registry.
10. Set AppLock parameters.
11. Set DCWedge parameters.

Components

Front View

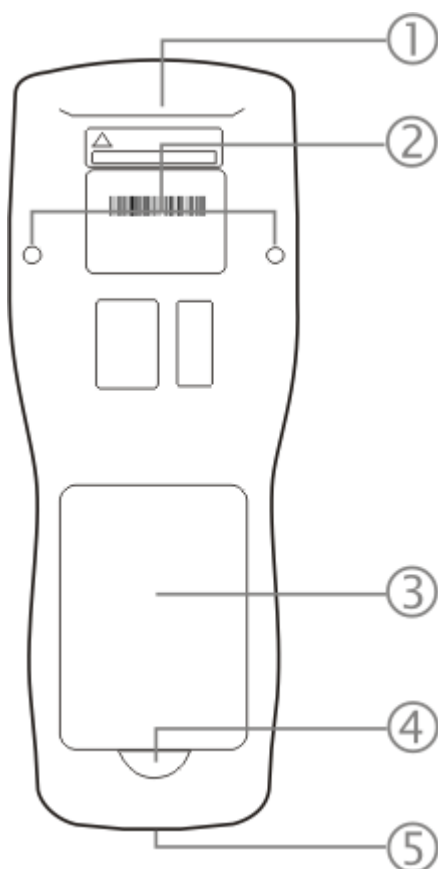


1. Scanner/Imager Aperture
2. Speaker
3. System Status LED
4. Scan Button
5. Orange Key (Sticky Key)
6. Blue Key (Sticky Key)
7. Scan Status LED
8. Cable Port
9. On / Off Button
10. Alpha Lock LED



Diamond 1, 2, 3 Keys

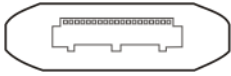
Back



1. Scanner/Imager Aperture
2. Trigger Handle Attach Points and Hand Strap Retainer Bracket Attach Points
3. Main Battery
4. Battery Fastener
5. I/O Cable Port

Note: The touch screen stylus can be secured in the hand strap or the trigger handle.

I/O Port and Cables

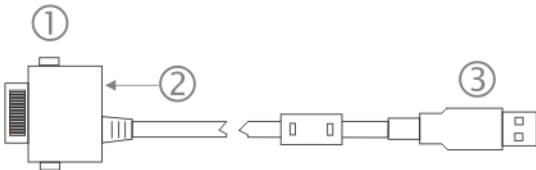


Input/Output Port



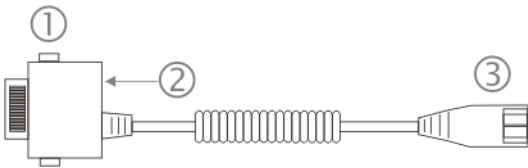
Cable: Multipurpose RS232 and Power
MX8055CABLE

1. To MX8 I/O port
2. Attach A/C Adapter barrel connector
3. To RS232 device



Cable: Multipurpose USB and Power
MX8051CABLE

1. To MX8 I/O port
2. Attach A/C Adapter barrel connector
3. To USB device



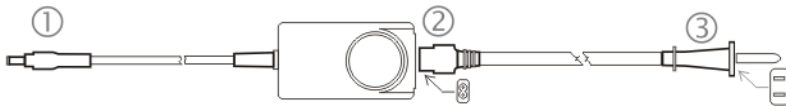
Adapter/Cable : Audio

MX8060CABLE

1. To MX8 I/O port
2. Attach A/C Adapter barrel connector
3. To audio device

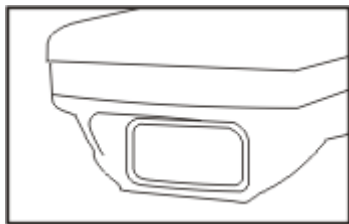
AC/DC Adapter for MX8 and MX8 Desktop Cradle

Part Numbers: MX8301PWRSPLY (US), MX8302PWRSPLY (WW).



1. To power port.
2. To adapter.
3. To wall plug.

Scanner / Imager Aperture

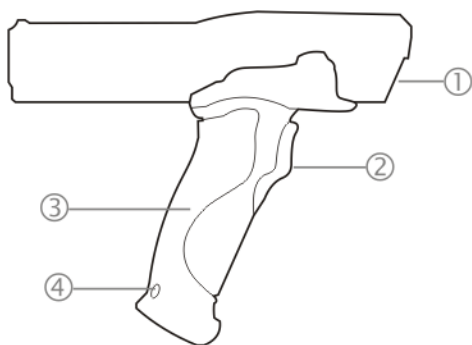


Caution: Never stare directly into the beam aperture.

If Continuous Scan Mode has been enabled (default is disabled), the laser is always on and decoding.

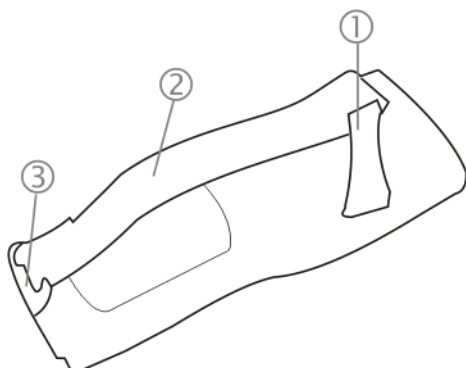
Caution: Laser beam is emitted continuously. Do not stare into the laser beam.

Handle



1. Imager / Scanner Aperture
2. Trigger
3. Handle
4. Tether Attach Point

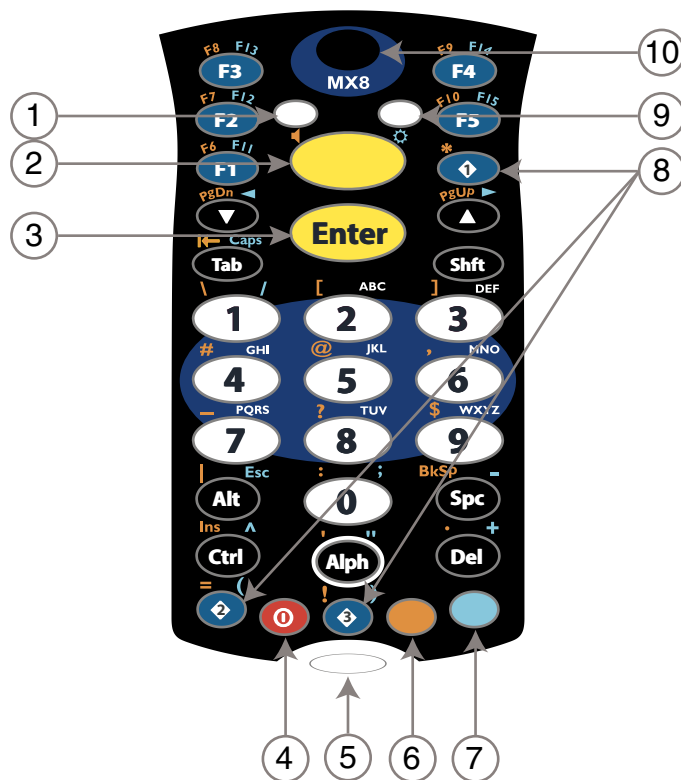
Hand Strap



1. Handstrap Retainer Bracket
2. Handstrap
3. Handstrap Clip

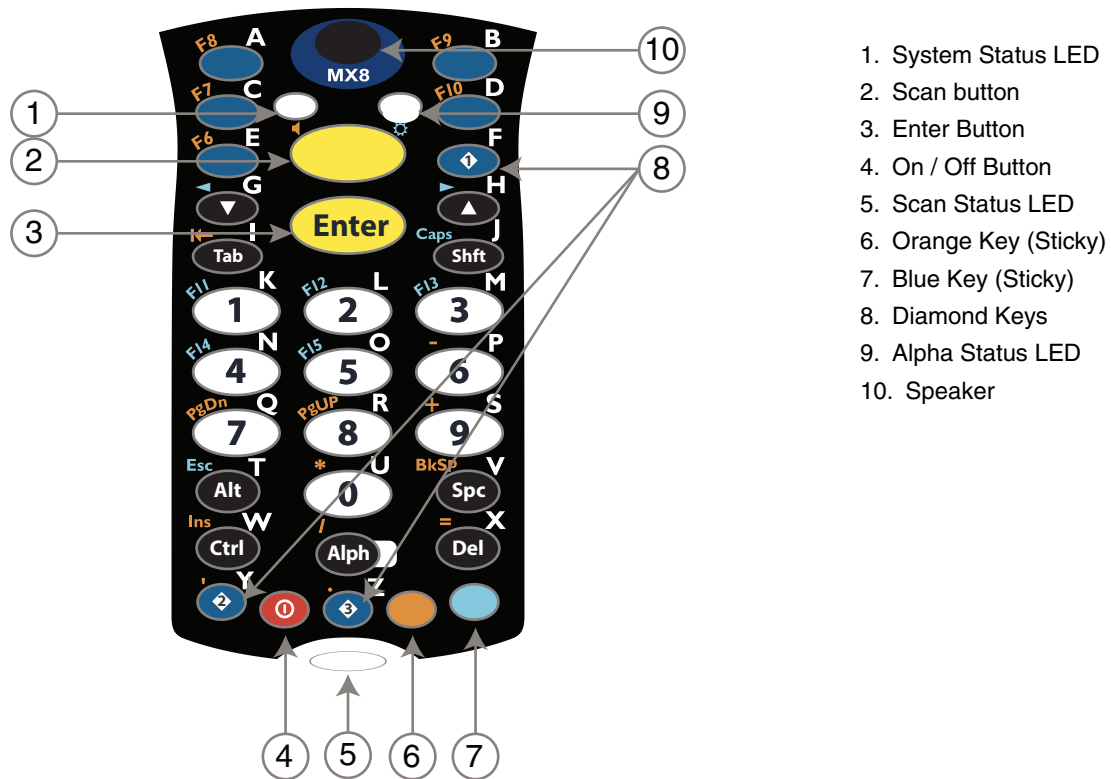
Keypads

32 Key Triple-Tap Keypad



1. System Status LED
2. Scan Button
3. Enter Button
4. On / Off Button
5. Scan Status LED
6. Orange Key (Sticky)
7. Blue Key (Sticky)
8. Diamond Keys
9. Alpha Status LED
10. Speaker

32 Key Alpha-Mode Keypad



Locking and Unlocking the MX8

Locking the MX8

The MX8 can be locked manually by tapping Device unlocked on the Today screen. By default, this option is included on the Today screen. Care should be taken to not accidentally tap this area of the Today screen. Lock can be removed from the Today screen by selecting the **Start > Settings > Personal > Today > Items** tab.

The MX8 can also be configured to Lock automatically after a defined period of inactivity.

This setting is accessed via **Start > Settings > Personal > Lock > Password** tab. By default, this option is Disabled.

Unlocking the MX8

When the MX8 is locked, the Today screen displays Device locked by default. Click Unlock at the lower part of the screen:

- If there is no password or PIN set, click Unlock on the next screen to unlock the MX8. The MX8 is returned to normal operation.
- If there is a password or PIN set, enter the password/PIN and click Unlock. If several unsuccessful attempts are made, the MX8 can be configured to display a password hint.

Rebooting the MX8

When the Desktop or Start screen is displayed or an application begins, the power up sequence is complete. If you have previously saved your settings, they will be restored on reboot. Application panel changes are saved when ok is tapped on an application properties panel.

During the processes that follow there may be small delays while the wireless client connects to the network and Bluetooth relationships establish or re-establish.

Suspend / Resume

Quickly tapping the Power key places the MX8 in Suspend mode. Quickly tapping the Power key again, pressing any key, pressing the trigger (on the trigger handle), or tapping the touch screen, returns the MX8 from Suspend. The System LED blinks green when the video display is Off.

Hold down the Power key and then the Enter key until the screen blanks. Release the keys and the MX8 resumes.

Warmboot

Hold down the Power key and then the Enter key until the screen blanks. Release the keys and the MX8 warmboots. The unit reboots and all programs are re-launched.

Cold Boot / Restart

Temporary data not saved is lost. All programs are re-launched, programs installed from CAB files are reinstalled. Previously saved user settings are restored. Restart may also be called cold boot. Hold down the Blue key, the Scan key and the Power key until the screen blanks. Release the keys and the MX8 cold boots.

Be sure to press the Scan key not the Enter key. Pressing the Enter key begins a suspend/resume function instead of a cold boot function.

Battery

The MX8 will not function unless the battery pack is in place and securely latched.

Be sure to place the unit in Suspend Mode before removing the battery. Failing to properly place the device in Suspend mode will result in a loss of all unsaved data.

The main battery is located in a compartment on the back of the unit. The battery case serves as the back cover for the battery well of the MX8. The MX8 draws power from the battery immediately upon successful connection. Check battery status using the Battery control panel. Main battery level, internal battery level, status and other details are displayed.

An MX8 will retain data, while the main battery is removed and replaced with a fully charged main battery, for 5 minutes. Important: When the internal battery power is Low or Very Low connect the AC adapter to the MX8 before replacing the main battery.

Note: The battery should not be replaced in a dirty, harsh or hazardous environment. When the battery is not connected to the MX8, any dust or moisture that enters the battery well or connector may transfer to the battery well terminals, potentially causing damage.

Caution. Use only Honeywell batteries as replacements: MX8A380BATT / 161376-0001

Inserting a Battery

To insert a main battery, complete the following steps:

1. Detach the bottom hook of the handstrap (if installed).
2. Tilt the end (without the latch) of the fully charged battery pack into the upper end of the battery compartment, and firmly press the other end until it is fully inserted into the battery compartment
3. Push down on the battery until the retaining clip clicks into place.
4. Replace the handstrap clip in its holder (if installed).

Removing the Main Battery

To remove the battery, complete the following steps:

1. Place the MX8 in Suspend mode.
2. Detach the bottom hook of the handstrap (if installed).
3. Slide the battery retaining clip down to release the main battery.
4. Pull the battery up and out of the battery well with a hinge motion.
5. Place the discharged battery pack in a powered battery charger.

Charging the Main Battery

Warning. Only use Honeywell batteries as replacements: MX8A380BATT / 161376-0001

The MX8 Battery Charger is designed for an indoor, protected environment.

New batteries must be fully charged prior to use.

An external power source is required before the main battery in the MX8 will recharge.

The main battery can be recharged in an AC powered Battery Charger after the battery has been removed from the MX8 or its packing material when new.

The main battery can be recharged while it is in the MX8:

- by connecting the MX8 AC power adapter to the I/O connector at the base of the MX8.
- by docking the MX8 in a powered desk cradle
- or by connecting the car power adapter (CLA) to the I/O connector at the base of the MX8.

Note: An uninterrupted external power source (wall AC adapters) transfers power to the computer's internal charging circuitry which, in turn, recharges the main battery and internal battery. Frequent connection to an external power source, if feasible, is recommended to maintain internal battery charge status as the internal battery cannot be recharged by a dead or missing main battery.

Backlights and Indicators

MX8 Status LEDs

The MX8 System Status LED is located at the top left of the keypad, above the Scan button. The Alpha Mode LED is located at the top right of the keypad, above the Scan button.

LEDs (Light Emitting Diodes) are located on the front of the MX8. They are:

- System Status LED indicates power management status.
- Alpha Mode Status LED.

System Status LED

When the LED is ...	It means ...
Blinking Red	Battery power fail; critical suspend mode
Steady Red	Main battery low
Blinking Green	Display turned off
Yellow / Amber	A few seconds when Power key is pressed
No Color	No user intervention required.

Alpha mode Status LED

When the LED is ...	It means ...
Steady Green	Device is in "Alpha" character input mode
No Color	Device is in "Numeric" key input mode

Scan Status

The Scan Status LED is an oval indicator situated below the keypad and next to the On button.

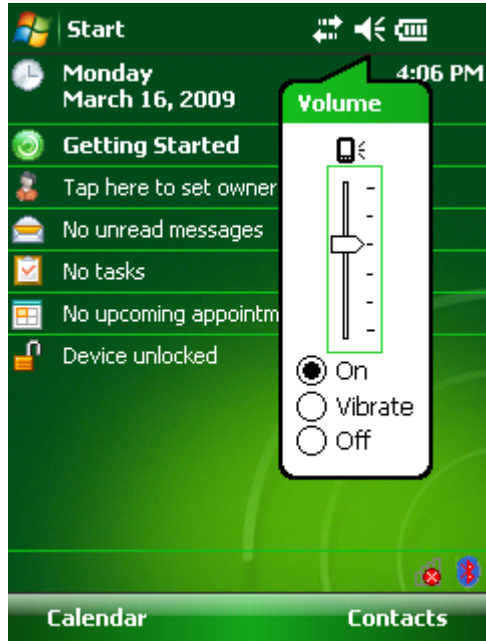
When the LED is ...	It means ...
Steady Green	Good scan
Steady Amber	Decoder engine storing changed parameters
Steady Red	Scan in progress
No Color	Scanner / Imager ready for use or no scanner installed.

Toggle Vibrate Indicator

The vibration motor is activated when a scan is completed successfully (good scan vibration) or with a failure (scan key released before good scan, timeout, or rejected because of Data Options configuration).

The vibrations can be detected under the handstrap or through the trigger handle.

Use the Speaker Volume / Vibrate Icon in the top right corner of the Today screen to toggle sound and/or vibration on or off.



Vibration can also be set using **Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Notification** tab. Since the Data Collection Wedge uses the operating system interface to sound beeps, if the volume/vibrate icon is set to anything other than On, Wedge beeps do not sound. Wedge vibration is not affected by these settings.

Tapping the Touch Screen with a Stylus

Note: Always use the point of the stylus for tapping or making strokes on the touch screen.

Never use an actual pen, pencil, or sharp/abrasive object to write on the touch screen.

Hold the stylus as if it were a pen or pencil. Touch an element on the screen with the tip of the stylus then remove the stylus from the screen.

Firmly press the stylus into the stylus holder when the stylus is not in use. A stylus replacement kit is available.

Using a stylus is similar to moving the mouse pointer then left-clicking icons on a desktop computer screen. Using the stylus to tap icons on the touch screen is the basic action that can:

- Open applications
- Choose menu commands
- Select options in dialog boxes or drop-down boxes
- Drag the slider in a scroll bar
- Select text by dragging the stylus across the text
- Place the cursor in a text box prior to typing in data
- Place the cursor in a text box prior to retrieving data using a scanner/imager or an input/output device connected to a serial port.

Use keypad shortcuts instead of the stylus:

- Press TAB and an Arrow key to select a file.
- After a file is selected, press Enter to open the file.
- Press the Del key to delete a file.

Touch Screen

Calibrating the Touch Screen

If the touch screen is not responding properly to stylus taps, you may need to recalibrate the touch screen.

Recalibration involves tapping the center of a target. If you miss the center, keep the stylus on the screen, slide it over the target's center, and then lift the stylus.

1. To recalibrate the screen, select **Start > Settings > System > Screen** tab.
2. To begin, tap the Align screen button with the stylus.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen. Tap the OK button when complete, if necessary.

Adjusting the Display Backlight Timer

The backlight settings use the Honeywell set of default timeouts and are synchronized to the User Idle setting in the Schemes tab in the Power control panel.

When the backlight timer expires, the display backlight is dimmed, not turned off. When both checkboxes are unchecked, the backlight never turns off (or dims).

Default values are 3 seconds for Battery, 2 minutes for External and both the check boxes are enabled.

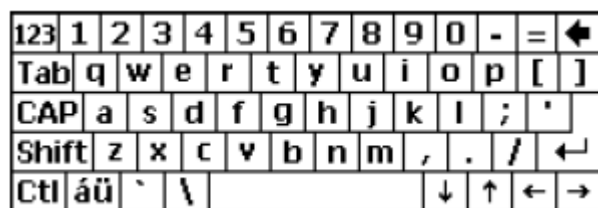
Apply the Touch Screen Protective Film

First, clean the touch screen of fingerprints, lint particles, dust and smudges.

Remove the protective film from its container. Remove any protective backing from the film sheet by lifting the backing from a corner of the film. Discard the backing.

Apply the film to the touch screen starting at one side and smoothing it across the display. If air bubbles appear, raise the film slightly and continue smoothing the film across the display until it covers the glass surface of the display. If dust, lint or smudges are trapped between the protective film and the glass display, remove the protective film, clean the display and apply the protective film again.

Using the Input Panel / Virtual Keyboard



The virtual keyboard is always available when needed e.g., text entry.

Place the cursor in the text entry field and, using the stylus:

- Tap the Shift key to type one capital letter.
- Tap the CAPS key to type all capital letters.
- Tap the áü key to access symbols.

Some applications do not automatically display the Input Panel. In this case, do the following to use the Input Panel:



Input Panel icon



Keyboard icon

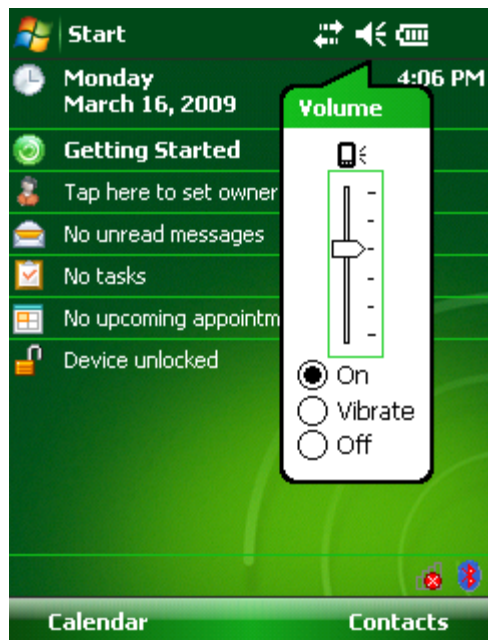
Setting Date and Time Zone

When the Date is enabled to display on the Today screen, the date is displayed on the left side of the screen and the time is displayed on the right side. If there are any alarms set, a bell icon is displayed under the current time.

To set the Date and Time Zone, tap the Date or Time on the Today screen or tap **Start > Settings > Clock and Alarms** icon. Select the physical time zone. If required, adjust the time an calendar date and tap OK.

Setting Speaker Volume

Use the Volume Icon in the top right corner of the Today screen to open the Volume panel. Slide the arrow up or down to adjust speaker volume. Tap the On or Off radio button to turn speaker sound on or off.



Battery Power Scheme

Use this option when the MX8 will be running on battery power only.

Switch state to User Idle	Default is After 3 seconds
Switch state to System Idle	Default is After 15 seconds
Switch state to Suspend	Default is After 5 minutes

AC Power Scheme

Use this option when the MX8 will be running on external power (e.g., connected to an A/C power source).

Switch state to User Idle	Default is After 2 minutes
Switch state to System Idle	Default is After 2 minutes
Switch state to Suspend	Default is After 5 minutes

The timers are cumulative. The System Idle timer begins the countdown after the User Idle timer has expired and the Suspend timer begins the countdown after the System Idle timer has expired. When the User Idle timer is set to "Never", the power scheme timers never place the MX8 in User Idle, System Idle or Suspend modes (even when the MX8 is idle).

Using the Battery Power Scheme Defaults listed above, the cumulative effect results in the following:

- The backlight turns off after 3 seconds of no activity,
- The display turns off after 18 seconds of no activity (15 seconds + 3 seconds),
- And the MX8 enters Suspend after 5 minutes and 18 seconds of no activity.

Setup Terminal Emulation Parameters

Before you make a host connection, you will, at a minimum, need to know:

- the alias name or IP address (Host Address) and
 - the port number (Telnet Port) of the host system to properly set up your host session.
1. Make sure the mobile client network settings are configured and functional. If you are connecting over wireless LAN (802.11x), make sure your mobile client is communicating with the Access Point.
 2. From Start > Program, run RFTerm or tap the RFTerm icon on the desktop.
 3. Select Session > Configure from the application menu and select the "host type" that you require. This will depend on the type of host system that you are going to connect to; i.e., 3270 mainframe, AS/400 5250 server or VT host.
 4. Enter the "Host Address" of the host system that you wish to connect to. This may either be a DNS name or an IP address of the host system.
 5. Update the telnet port number, if your host application is configured to listen on a specific port. If not, just use the default telnet port.
 6. Select OK.
 7. Select Session > Connect from the application menu or tap the "Connect" button on the Tool Bar. Upon a successful connection, you should see the host application screen displayed.

To change options such as Display, Colors, Cursor, Bar Code, etc., refer to these sections in the *RFTerm Reference Guide* for complete descriptions of these and other features.

Using the AppLock Switchpad



Switchpad Menu



Switchpad icon

Click the switchpad icon.

A checkmark on the switchpad menu indicates applications currently active or available for Launching by the MX8 user. When Keyboard, on the Switchpad Menu, is selected, the default input method (Input Panel, Transcriber, or custom input method) is activated.

Using the Keypad

One switch key sequence (or hotkey) is defined by the Administrator for the end-user to use when switching between locked applications. This is known as the Activation key.

When the switch key sequence is pressed on the keypad, the next application in the AppLock configuration is moved to the foreground and the previous application moves to the background. The previous application continues to run in the background. MX8 key presses affect the application in focus only.

Using the Touch Screen

The figure shown above is an example and is shown only to aid in describing how the user can switch between applications using a stylus.

When the user taps the Switchpad icon with the stylus, a menu pops up listing the applications available to the user. The user can tap an application name in the popup menu and the selected application is brought to the foreground. The previous application continues to run in the background. Stylus taps affect the application in focus only. When the user needs to use the Input Panel, they tap the Keyboard option. Input Panel taps affect the application in focus only.

Connecting Bluetooth Devices

Before connecting to Bluetooth Devices:

- The system administrator has discovered, paired, connected and disconnected (using LXEZ Pairing Control Panel) Bluetooth devices for each MX8.
- The system administrator has enabled and disabled LXEZ Pairing parameters for the MX8.
- The system administrator has also assigned a Computer Friendly Name using LXEZ Pairing Control Panel for the MX8.



To connect Bluetooth devices, the MX8 should be as close as possible and in direct line of sight (distances up to 32.8 feet or 10 meters) with the targeted Bluetooth device during the discovery and pairing process.

If the devices are in Suspend, tap the power key to wake the MX8.

Using the correct procedure, wake the targeted Bluetooth device if necessary.

There may be audible or visual signals as both devices discover and pair with each other.

Taskbar Connection Indicator

	MX8 is connected to one or more of the targeted Bluetooth device(s).
	MX8 is not connected to any Bluetooth device. MX8 is ready to connect with any Bluetooth device. MX8 is out of range of all paired Bluetooth device(s). Connection is inactive.

There may be audible or visual signals from paired devices as they move back into range and re-connect with the Bluetooth hardware in the MX8.

Reboot

When the Windows desktop/Today screen is displayed or an application begins, the power up (or reboot) sequence is complete.

Warm Boot

Hold down the Power key and then the Enter key until the screen blanks. Release the keys and the MX8 warm boots.

Or, using the input panel,

Tap Start > Run and type WARMBOOT.EXE or WARMBOOT. This command is not case sensitive. Tap the OK button. This process takes less than 15 seconds. Temporary data not saved is lost.

Note: There may be slight delays while the wireless client connects to the network, re-authorization for voice-enabled applications completes, Wavelink Avalanche management of the MX8 startup completes, or Bluetooth relationships establish or re-establish.

Cold Boot

Temporary data not saved is lost. All programs are re-launched. Previously saved user settings are restored. Cold boot is also called cold reset.

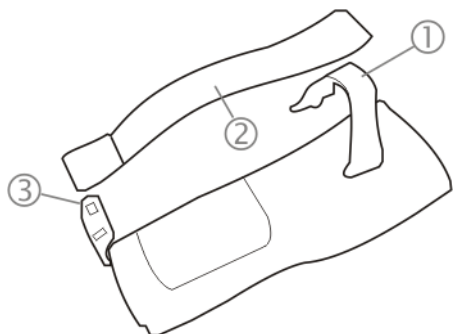
Hold down the Blue key, the Scan key and the Power key until the screen blanks. Release the keys and the MX8 cold boots.
or

Tap Start > Run and, using the virtual keyboard or SIP, type COLDBOOT. Tap the OK button and the MX8 cold boots.
This command is not case-sensitive.

There may be small delays while the wireless client connects to the network, authorization for Voxware-enabled applications complete, Wavelink Avalanche management of the MX8 startup completes, and Bluetooth relationships establish or re-establish.

Attaching the Handstrap

Either the trigger handle is attached to the MX8 or the handstrap is attached, not both. In the absence of a trigger handle, the handstrap should be used at all times. The handstrap is pre-installed on a MX8 that is purchased without a trigger handle.



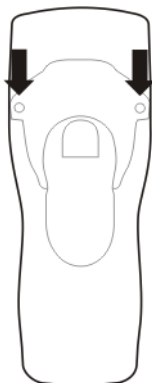
- 1. Handstrap Retainer Bracket
- 2. Handstrap and tethered stylus
- 3. Handstrap Clip

Tool Required: Phillips #1 screwdriver (not supplied)

1. Place the MX8 with the screen facing down, on a flat stable surface.
2. Attach the handstrap retainer bracket to the MX8 with the screws and washers provided.
3. Slip the Handstrap Clip into the bracket at the base of the MX8.
4. Making sure the closed loop fastener surfaces on the handstrap are facing up, slide the strap through the pin in the bottom bracket and the clip.
5. Fold each end of the strap over so that the closed loop fastener surfaces mate evenly.
6. Test the strap's connection making sure the MX8 is securely connected to each end of the handstrap's connectors.
7. Check the closed loop fastener, retainer bracket and clip connections frequently. If they have loosened, they must be tightened or replaced before the MX8 is placed into service again.

Attaching the Trigger Handle

Pressing the trigger on the trigger handle activates the integrated scanner and functions the same as the Scan key on the keypad. With the handle installed the Scan key on the keypad remains active. The trigger duplicates the operation.



- The handle is built of a durable, flexible plastic.
- The handle will not detach from the MX8 if the unit is dropped.
- The trigger handle is a mechanical device. Battery or external A/C power is not required for operation.
- The trigger handle does not need to be removed when replacing the main battery pack.
- The trigger handle might also be called a pistol grip.

Equipment needed: Torque wrench capable of torquing to 3 ± 1 in/lb ($.34\pm .11$ N/m).

Either the trigger handle or the handstrap is attached, not both. Honeywell recommends that, in the absence of a trigger handle, the handstrap be used at all times.

1. Place the MX8 with the screen facing down, on a flat stable surface.
2. Remove the handstrap, if installed.
3. Remove the battery.
4. Slide the locking tab on the underside of the trigger handle into the slot at the back of the battery compartment and press it firmly into place.
5. Ensure that the battery can be inserted into the battery compartment before securing the trigger handle in place.
6. Attach the trigger handle to the MX8 (as shown above) with the screws provided.
7. Torque the pan head screws to 3 ± 1 in/lb ($.34\pm .11$ N/m).
8. Secure the strap tether to the trigger handle.
9. Place the stylus in the stylus holder in the trigger handle.
10. Periodically check the trigger handle for wear and the connection for tightness. If the handle gets worn or damaged, it must be replaced. If the trigger handle connection loosens, it must be tightened or replaced before the MX8 is placed in service.

Assembling the Carry Case

Note: Accessory installation or removal should be performed on a clean, well-lit surface. When necessary, protect the work surface, the MX8, and components from electrostatic discharge.

1. Remove any cables connected to the I/O port at the bottom of the MX8.
2. Remove the rubber boot from the MX8.
3. Separate the hook and loop fabric on the carry case without removing the hook and loop fabric from the carry case.
4. Slip the removable, clear plastic protector for the keypad and touch screen into the case. Position it against the openings for the keypad and touch screen in the case. The voice case does not require the clear plastic protector.
5. Slide the MX8 into the case, making sure the touch screen and keypad (including the Scan LED) are visible and accessible through the front openings of the case.
6. Securely tether the stylus to the case, if necessary. Place the stylus in the stylus holder on the handstrap or in the trigger handle.
7. Loosen then tighten the handstrap (on cases without a trigger handle opening) until the carry case assembly is secure in your hand.
8. When a shoulder strap is available, secure the clips at each end of the shoulder strap to the D rings on either side of the carry case. The shoulder strap allows the MX8 to hang upside down until needed.

The main battery can be removed and inserted without taking the MX8 out of the carry case.

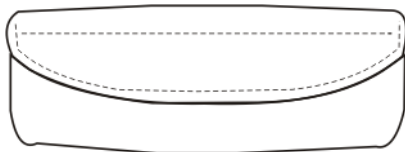
Carry Case with Metal Snaps

The metal snap has a bulge in the lip and a dot indentation on the opposite side. To snap the cap closed, tuck the lip bulge under the snap lip and press on the dot to snap closed.

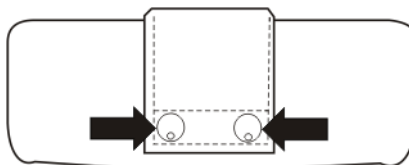
Pull the snap up to open.

Assembling the Voice Case

The voice case is a sturdy, lightweight, protective covering for the MX8. The voice case cannot protect the MX8 from destructive, excessive force or a harsh or wet environment. It is designed to protect the MX8 from dirt, dampness, and minor, trivial bumps or jostling. The MX8 battery cannot be hotswapped while the MX8 is enclosed by the voice case.



Voice Case Front



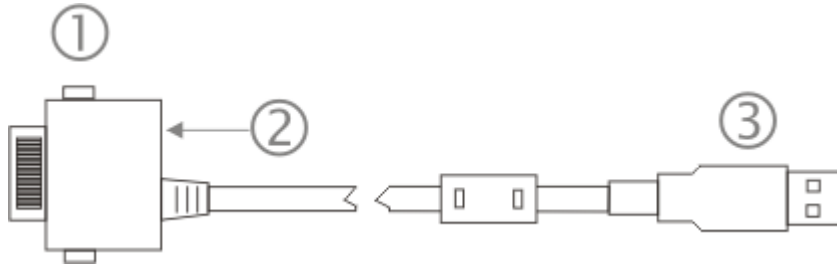
Belt Loop Snaps

1. Open the belt loop on the voice case. The belt loop snaps are self locking at the dimple. Locate the dimple on each belt loop snap. Unfasten each belt loop snap by using your thumb to push the snap head upward at the dimple.
2. Place the belt on the voice case inside the open area of the belt loop. Fasten the belt to the voice case. Lock each belt loop snap by rocking the snap head onto the snap base (starting on the opposite side of the dimple) and pressing down on the dimple side of the snap head.
3. Do not put the belt on yet.
4. Attach the audio adapter/cable to the base of the MX8. Do not connect the headset to the cable yet.
5. Slip the MX8 into the voice case, with the keypad and touch screen facing the front of the case. The audio cable should be exiting the side opening at the left side of the case. If it is not, remove the MX8 from the voice case, turn it around and insert into the voice case again.
6. Close the voice case cover by folding the hook side over the loop side. Press along the length of the cover until the hook and loop fabric is secure.

Connecting the USB Client and Power Cable

Note: AC/DC Adapter must be assembled before this process begins.

Note: Do not connect AC power to the AC Adapter yet.



1. Holding the cable I/O connector (1), pinch the catch release buttons in until the catches are open. Connect the cable to the MX8 I/O port by matching the shape of the I/O connector on the cable with the shape of the I/O connector at the base of the MX8. Release the catch release buttons.
2. Insert the AC adapter single pin cable (2) .
3. Connect the AC Adapter to a power source (wall outlet).
4. Insert the USB client plug (3) into the target USB Client port.
5. The MX8 and the USB client are connected.

Connecting the Serial and Power Cable

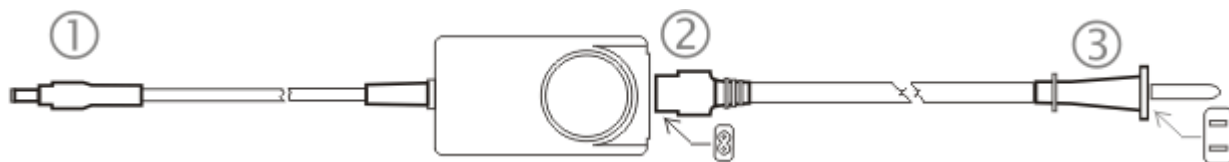
Note: AC/DC Adapter must be assembled before this procedure begins.

Note: Do not connect AC power to the AC Adapter yet.



1. Holding the cable I/O connector (1), squeeze the catch release buttons in until the catches are open. Connect the cable to the MX8 I/O port by matching the shape of the I/O connector on the cable with the shape of the I/O connector at the base of the MX8. Release the catch release buttons.
2. Connect the AC adapter single pin cable end here (2).
3. Connect the assembled AC/DC Adapter to a power source (wall outlet).
4. Connect the RS232 cable end (3) to the desired serial device. Turn the thumbscrews clockwise until the connection is finger-tight.
5. The MX8 and the serial device are connected.

Connecting an External Power Supply



-
1. Connects to multi-purpose cables connected to I/O port on MX8 (can also be used with the desktop cradle).
 2. AC connection from wall to AC adapter
 3. Wall plug

To apply external power to the MX8 follow the steps below in sequence.

1. Plug the 2 prong AC adapter cable end of the external power assembly into an AC power source (e.g., wall outlet).
2. Firmly press the female end of the power cable into the male connector on the power adapter. When AC power is being supplied to the power adapter, the LED on the power adapter illuminates green.
3. Squeeze the catches of the I/O connector and push the cable connector into the MX8 I/O port until it clicks. The click means the connector is seated firmly.
4. Press the power cable connector pin from the power adapter into the connector on the (USB/Power or Serial/Power) cable attached to the base of the MX8. External power is now being supplied to the MX8.

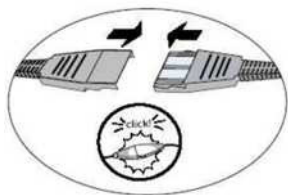
Whenever possible, use the AC power adapter with the MX8 to conserve the main battery power and maintain a charge in the internal battery.

Connecting the Headset Cable



1. Microphone
2. Headphones
3. Connects to voice cable end of voice cable

Connect the MX8 voice cable I/O connector to the I/O port on the MX8. The MX8 internal microphone and speaker are automatically disabled.



Slide the voice cable ends together until they click shut. Do not twist or bend the connectors.
The MX8 is ready for voice-enabled applications.

Adjust Headset / Microphone and Secure Cable



The headset consists of an earpiece, a microphone, a clothing clip and a cable. The headset attaches to the audio cable end of the voice cable which attaches to the MX8.

Align the audio connector and the headset quick connect cable end. Firmly push the cable ends together until they click and lock in place.

Do not twist the microphone boom when adjusting the microphone. The microphone should be adjusted to be about two finger widths from your mouth.

Make sure the microphone is pointed at your mouth. Note the small “Talk” label near the mouthpiece. Make sure the Talk label is in front of your mouth. The microphone cable can be routed over or under clothing.

Under Clothing

- Leave the cable exposed only at the top of the collar.
- Be sure to leave a small loop of cable to allow movement of your head.

Over Clothing

- Use clothing clips to hold the cable close to your body.
- Tuck the cable under the belt, but leave a small loop where it goes under the belt.
- Do not wear the cable on the front of your body. It may get in your way or get caught on protruding objects.

Accessing Files on the CF/SD Card

Tap the My Device icon on the Desktop then click the System icon. The SD/CF card is used for permanent storage of the MX8 drivers, CAB files and utilities. It is also used for registry content back up. CAB files, when executed, are not deleted.

Always perform a warm reset (Start / Run / Warmboot) when exchanging one flash (CF/SD) card for another.

Cleaning the Touch Screen and Scanner Aperture

Note: These instructions are for components made of glass. If there is a removable protective film sheet on the display, remove the film sheet before cleaning the screen.

Keep fingers and rough or sharp objects away from the bar code reader scanning aperture and the mobile device touch screen.

If the glass becomes soiled or smudged, clean only with a standard household cleaner such as Windex® without vinegar or use Isopropyl Alcohol. Dampen the cloth with the cleaner and then wipe the surface.

Do not use paper towels or harsh-chemical-based cleaning fluids since they may result in damage to the glass surface. Use a clean, damp, lint-free cloth.

Do not scrub optical surfaces. If possible, clean only those areas which are soiled. Lint and particulates can be removed with clean, filtered canned air.

Startup Help

Issue:

Can't change the date/time or adjust the volume.

Solution:

AppLock is installed and may be running in User Mode on the MX8. AppLock user mode restricts access to the control panels.

Issue:

Touch screen is not accepting stylus taps or needs recalibration.

Solution:

if the touch screen is not accepting stylus taps, hold down the Blue key, the Scan key and the Power key until the screen blanks. Release the keys and the MX8 will coldboot.

Issue:

MX8 seems to lockup as soon as it is rebooted.

Solution:

There may be slight delays while the wireless client connects to the network, authorization for voice-enabled applications complete, Wavelink Avalanche management of the MX8 startup completes, and Bluetooth relationships establish or re-establish.

Issue:

New MX8 main batteries don't last more than a few hours.

Solution:

New batteries must be fully charged prior to first use. Li-Ion batteries (like all batteries) gradually lose their capacity over time (in a linear fashion) and never just stop working. This is important to remember – the MX8 is always 'on' even when in the Suspend state and draws battery power at all times.

Hardware Configuration

System Hardware

802.11b/g and a/b/g Wireless Client

The MX8 has an 802.11 network card that supports diversity with two internal antennas. The CPU board does not allow hot swapping the network card. Adjusting power management on the network card is set to static dynamic control. WEP, WPA and LEAP are supported.

Central Processing Unit

The CPU is a 520MHz PXA27X CPU. The operating system is Microsoft® Windows® Mobile 6.5. The OS image is stored on an internal flash memory card and is loaded into DRAM for execution. Turbo mode switching is supported and turned on by default.

The MX8 supports the following I/O components of the core logic:

- One mini SD card slot under the main battery pack.
- One serial port.
- One Digitizer Input port (touch screen).

System Memory

The CPU configuration supports 128MB Strata Flash, 128MB SDRAM. The system optimizes for the amount of SDRAM available.

Internal flash is used for boot loader code and system low-level diagnostics code. Bootloader code is validated at system startup. The UUID required by the Windows OS is stored in the boot flash. A second copy of the bootloader code is stored on the internal SD Flash drive, so that if a damaged bootloader is detected, it may be re-flashed correctly.

Internal Mini SD Memory Card

The MX8 has one mini SD card interface for storage for User data. The mini SD slot is accessible from the battery compartment and ships with a qualified 128MB Mini SD Flash card.

The internal mini SD flash card supports a FAT16 file system, via a special device driver, and appears to the OS as a folder. This allows the contents to be manipulated via the standard Windows interface.

Video Subsystem

The touch screen is a 2.8" (7.1 cm) diagonal viewing area, ¼ VGA 320 by 240 pixel TFT Transmissive Active Color LCD. Backlighting is available and can be turned on and off with key sequences. The turn-off timing is configured through the Start > Settings > Control Panel > Display > Backlight icon. The display controller supports Microsoft graphics modes.

A touch screen allows mouse functions (tapping on the display or signature capture) using a stylus. The touch screen has an actuation force with finger less than 100 grams. The color display has an LED backlight and is optimized for indoor use.

The display appears black when the MX8 is in Suspend Mode.

Power Supply

The MX8 uses two batteries for operation.

Main Battery

A replaceable 3000 mAh Lithium-Ion (Li-Ion) battery pack. The battery pack recharges while in the MX8 when the device is connected to the optional external MX8 AC/DC power source. The main battery pack can be removed from the MX8 and inserted in the MX8 Multi- Charger which simultaneously charges up to four battery packs in five hours. The MX8 status indicator is illuminated when the backup battery is being charged by the main battery pack. A new main battery pack can be fully charged in 5 hours when it is in an MX8 connected to AC power and 5 hours when it is in the MX8 battery charger.

Backup Battery

An internal 160mAh Nickel Metal Hydride (Ni-MH) battery. The backup battery is recharged directly by the MX8 main battery pack. Recharging maintains the backup battery near full charge at all times. When the backup battery is fully drained, it may take up to 5 hours to recharge. The capability to discharge the backup battery is provided to allow the user to condition the battery in order to recover full battery capacity. The backup battery must be replaced by qualified service personnel. The battery has a minimum 2 year service life.

Note: An uninterrupted external power source (wall AC adapters) transfers power to the MX8's internal charging circuitry which, in turn, recharges the main battery and backup battery. Frequent connection to an external power source, if feasible, is recommended to maintain backup battery charge status as the backup battery cannot be recharged by a dead or missing main battery.

COM Port

The MX8 has one 20-pin multifunction I/O port that can be configured by the user.

Note: The MX8 AC Power Adapters (MX8301PWRSPLY and MX8302PWRSPLY) are only intended for use with the MX8 multi-purpose cables and the MX8 Desktop Cradle.

RS232 Serial Port

Configured as COM1. Bi-directional full duplex and supports data rates up to 115 Kb/s. The port does not have RI or CD signals nor does it support 5V switchable power on pin 9 for tethered scanners. The serial port driver supports full duplex communications over the serial port. It supports data exchange via ActiveSync, but does not automatically start ActiveSync when connected. The Cable, Multipurpose RS232 and Power accessory can be used with the RS232 serial port. External AC power is available when the multipurpose RS232/Power cable is connected.

USB Client Port

The MX8 has one USB Client port for ActiveSync applications. An accessory USB cable, Cable, Multipurpose USB and Power is available to connect the MX8 to a USB Type A plug on a PC for ActiveSync functions. External AC power is available when the multipurpose USB Client/Power cable is connected.

Audio Headset Connection

An audio headset interface is available using the Adapter, Audio accessory with the I/O port. The connection cable connects the MX8 to a Voxware quick disconnect 4-pin interface. This cable adapts to specific styles of headsets for voice input, stereo or mono output. The MX8 with a Summit Client supports mono only. A 3-wire connector with (at a minimum) connections for ground, microphone, and 1 speaker. Connecting the headset to the MX8 COM port turns off audio output to the MX8 speaker on the front of the mobile device. All sounds previously directed to the speaker are redirected to the headphone, including beeps. Bias voltage for an electric condenser microphone is available. External AC power is not available for this option. Power is drawn from the main battery pack.

Audio Support

Speaker

The speaker supplies audible verification signals normally used by the Window's operating system. The speaker is located on the front of the MX8, above the MX8 logo. The mobile device emits a Sound Pressure Level (loudness) of at least 102 dB measured as follows:

- Frequency: 2650 + 100 Hz
- Distance: 10 cm on axis in front of Speaker opening in front of unit.
- Duration : Continuous 2650 Hz tone.

The default is 1 beep for a good scan and 2 beeps for a bad scan.

Volume Control

Volume control is managed by Windows settings applet, an API and the Orange-Scan up/ down arrow key key sequence.

Voice

All Microsoft-supplied audio codecs are included in the OS image. The hardware codecs, the input and output analog voice circuitry and the system design are designed to support voice applications using a headset connected to the “Adapter, Audio” accessory cable and the MX8 I/O connector at the base of the device.

Scanner / Imager Port

The MX8 has one integrated bar code scanner/imager port. Only one scan engine is installed at a time. Scan engines are not “hot swappable”. The MX8 may have one of four scan engines:

- Intermec EV-15 linear imager
- Short Range Laser Scanner, 955I
- Base Laser Scanner, 955E
- Hand Held Products 2D Area Imager, 5300
- Honeywell Laser Scanner, N43XX

Note: Base Laser Scanner, 955E does not support aim mode. Any attempt to adjust the aiming beam using 955 programming bar codes will fail. The Base Laser scanner does not decode Codablock, Code93i or Telepen symbologies.

The integrated scan engine activates when the Scan button on the front of the MX8 is pressed or when the trigger on an installed trigger handle is pressed. A control panel applet is available to set scanner/imager options.

Functionality of the integrated scan engine driver is based on the decoder driver version installed in the MX8. Functions may include audible tones on good scan (at the maximum db supported by the speaker), failed scan, LED indication of a scan in progress, among other functions. If enabled, a vibration device provides a tactile response on a good scan event.

Note: Identify the Scan Engine: Open the Data Collection application panel on the MX8. Select the About tab. The type of integrated scan engine is shown in the Scanner segment.

Bluetooth

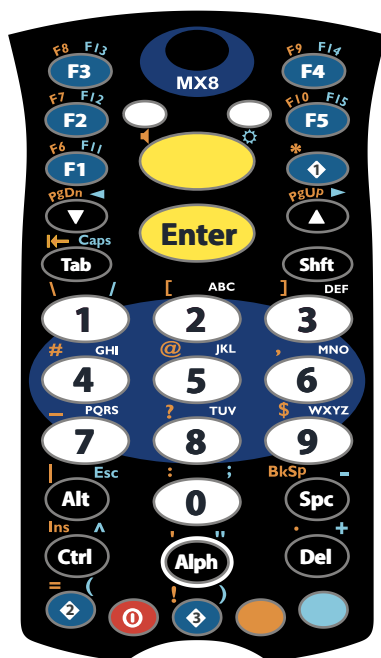
The MX8 contains Bluetooth version 2.0 with Enhanced Data Rate (EDR) up to 3.0 Mbit/s over the air. Bluetooth device connection (or pairing) can occur at distances up to 32.8 ft (10 meters) Line of Sight. The wireless client retains network connectivity while Bluetooth is active.

The user will not be able to select PIN authentication or encryption on connections from the MX8. However, the MX8 supports authentication requests from pairing devices. If a pairing device requests authentication or encryption, the MX8 displays a prompt for the PIN or passcode. Maximum encryption is 128 bit. Encryption is based on the length of the user's passcode.

The Bluetooth client can simultaneously connect to one Bluetooth scanner and one Bluetooth printer. Up to four Bluetooth devices can be paired and managed using a control panel (Start > Settings > Control Panel > Bluetooth).

- The MX8 does not have a Bluetooth managed LED.
- The LED on the Bluetooth scanner illuminates during a scanning operation; the Scan LED on the MX8 does not illuminate.
- Bar code data captured by the Bluetooth scanner is manipulated by the settings in the Bluetooth EZPair (or LX EZ Pairing) control panel.
- Multiple beeps may be heard during a bar code scan using the Bluetooth scanner; beeps from the Bluetooth scanner as the bar code data is accepted/rejected, and other beeps from the MX8 during final bar code data manipulation.

Keypads



Triple-Tap Keypad



Alpha-Mode Keypad

Using the Triple-Tap Keypad

- When using a sequence of keys that require an alpha key, first press the Alph key. Use the Shift sticky key or the Caps key sequence (Blue+Tab) for upper case alphabetic characters.
- Pressing the Alph key forces “Alpha” mode for the 2,3,4,5,6,7,8, and 9 keys. The 1 and 0 keys continue to place a 1 and 0 into the text field.
- To create a combination of numbers and letters before pressing Enter, remember to tap the Alph key to toggle between Alpha and Numeric mode.
- When using a sequence of keys that do not include the Alph key but does include a sticky key, press the sticky key first then the rest of the key sequence.

Using the Alpha-Mode Keypad

- When using a sequence of keys that require a lowercase alpha key, first press the Alph key. Use the Shift sticky key for upper case alphabetic characters.
- Pressing the Alph key forces “Alpha” mode for the numeric keys.
- To create a combination of numbers and letters before pressing Enter, remember to tap the Alph key to toggle between Alpha and Numeric mode.
- When using a sequence of keys that do not include the Alph key but does include a sticky key, press the sticky key first then the rest of the key sequence.
- Since letters are mapped to Alt, Ctl, Shift, these modifiers must be pressed before the Alph key is pressed. For example, for Alt T, press Alt, then Alpha, then Alt again.
- A modifier key pressed after itself toggles that modifier key off.
- Pressing Alph locks the keypad into Alpha mode. Pressing Alph a second time toggles alpha mode off.

Display

The touch screen display is an active color LCD unit capable of supporting VGA graphics modes. Display size is 240 x 320 pixels in portrait orientation. The covering is designed to resist stains. The touch screen allows signature capture and touch input. A pen stylus is included. The touch screen responds to an actuation force (touch) of 4 oz. of pressure (or greater). The color display is optimized for indoor lighting. The display appears black when the device is in Suspend Mode or when both batteries have expired and the unit is Off.

Display Backlight Timer

When the Backlight timer expires the display backlight is turned off. The default value for the battery power timer is 3 seconds. The default value for the external power timer is “never” and the checkbox is blank.

The backlight timer dims the backlight on the touch screen at the end of the specified time.

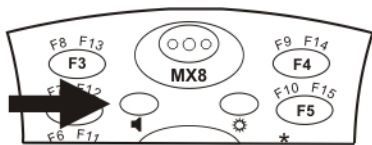
When the display wakes up, the Backlight timer begins the countdown again.

The keypad backlight can be synchronized with the display backlight activity.

Status LEDs

The MX8 does not have a Bluetooth managed LED. Any Bluetooth activity indicators are located in the Desktop taskbar.

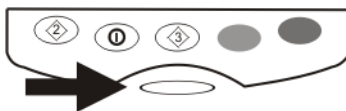
System Status LED



The System Status LED is located at the top left of the keypad, above the Scan button.

LED	Color - Activity	Indicates ...
System Status	Red - Blinking	Power fail. Replace the main battery with a fully charged main battery. Or Connect the MX8 to external AC power then replace the main battery with a fully charged main battery.
	Red - Steady	Main Battery Low. If the main battery is not replaced with a fully charged battery before the main battery fails, the MX8 is turned Off.
	Green - Blinking	Display Off. No user intervention required.
	No Color	Status is good. No user intervention required.

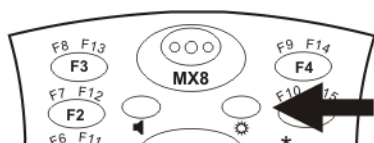
Scan Status LED



The Scan Status LED is located below the keypad.

LED	Color - Activity	Indicates ...
Scan Status	Green - Steady	Good scan.
	Red – Steady	Scan in progress.
	No color	Scanner / Imager ready for use.
	Amber - Steady	Decoder engine storing changed parameters.

Alpha Mode LED



The Alpha Mode LED is located next to the F5 key on the 32-key keypad (Numeric-Alphabetic keypad).

LED	Color - Activity	Indicates ...
Alpha Mode (Alpha LED)	Green - Steady	MX8 is in Alpha character input mode.
	No color	MX8 is in Numeric key input mode.

Power Modes and Batteries

Power Modes

On Mode

The Display

When the display is On:

- the keyboard, touch screen and all peripherals function normally
- the display backlight is on until the Backlight timer expires, then it dims

The MX8

After a new MX8 has been received, a charged main battery inserted, and the Power key tapped, the MX8 is always On until both batteries are drained completely of power.

When the main battery and backup battery are drained completely, the unit is in the Off mode. The unit transitions from the Off mode to the On mode when a charged main battery is inserted or external power is applied and the Power key is pressed.

Suspend Mode

The Suspend mode is entered when the unit is inactive for a predetermined period of time or the user taps the Power key. MX8 Suspend timers are set using Start > Settings > Control Panel > Power > Schemes tab.

A Power key tap wakes the unit and resets the display backlight timers. Primary Wake up events can be configured via a Power Management API call, e.g.; any key press, a trigger press, a touch screen tap, AC adapter insert, USB cable insert, or Serial cable CTS will also wake the unit and reset the display backlight timers. When the unit wakes up, the Display Backlight and the Power Off timers begin the countdown again.

The MX8 should be placed in Suspend mode before hotswapping the main battery.

Off Mode

The unit is in Off Mode when the main battery and the backup battery are depleted. Insert a fully charged main battery and press the Power key to turn the MX8 On.

Batteries

The MX8 is designed to work with a Lithium-Ion (Li-ion) battery. Under normal conditions it should last approximately eight to ten hours before requiring a recharge. The more you use the scanner or the wireless transmitter, the shorter the time required between battery recharges.

A suspended MX8 maintains the date and time for a minimum of two days using a main battery that has reached the Low Warning point and a fully charged backup battery. The MX8 retains data, during a main battery hot swap, for at least 5 minutes.

Note: New main battery packs must be charged prior to use. This process takes up to five hours in an MX8 Multi-Charger and five hours when the MX8 is connected to external power.

Checking Battery Status

Tap the Start > Settings > Power > Battery tab. Battery level, power status and charge remaining is displayed. Turbo setting can be enabled and disabled using this control panel.

Note: Power drain increases substantially in Turbo mode.

Main Battery Pack

The main battery pack has a rugged plastic enclosure that is designed to withstand the ordinary rigors of an industrial environment. Exercise care when transporting the battery pack making sure it does not come in contact with excessive heat or any power source other than the MX8 Multi-Charger or the MX8 unit. The battery pack enclosure functions as the protective cover for the battery well.

The main battery pack is properly installed in the unit it provides up to eight hours of operation depending upon use and accessories installed. The battery pack is resistant to impact damage and falls of up to four feet to a concrete surface. Under normal conditions it should last approximately eight hours before requiring a recharge. The more you use the scanner or the wireless transmitter, the shorter the time required between battery recharges.

Battery Hotswapping

Important: When the backup battery power is Low (Start > Settings > Power > Battery tab) connect the AC adapter to the MX8 before replacing the main battery pack.

When the main battery power level is low, the MX8 will signal the user with the low battery warning indicator (the Status LED remains a steady red) that continues until the main battery is replaced, the battery completely depletes, or external power is applied to the MX8 using an AC Adapter.

You can replace the main battery by first placing the MX8 in Suspend Mode then removing the discharged main battery and installing a charged main battery within a five minute time limit (or before the backup battery depletes). When the main battery is removed the MX8 enters Critical Suspend state, the MX8 remains in Suspend mode, the display is turned off and the backup battery continues to power the unit for at least five minutes.

Though data is retained, the MX8 cannot be used until a charged main battery pack is installed. After installing the new battery, press the Power key. Full operational recovery from Suspend can take several seconds while the client is reestablishing a network link. If the backup battery depletes before a fully charged main battery can be inserted, the MX8 will turn Off. Full operational recovery from Suspend can take several seconds while the wireless client connects to the network, authorization for Voxtel-enabled applications complete, Wavelink Avalanche management of the MX8 startup completes, and Bluetooth relationships establish or re-establish.

Low Battery Warning

It is recommended that the main battery pack be removed and replaced when its energy depletes. When the main battery Low Battery warning appears (the Status LED remains a steady red) perform an orderly shut down, minimizing the operation of any installed devices and insuring any information is saved that should be saved.

Note: Once you receive the main battery Low Battery warning, you have approximately 5 minutes to perform an orderly shutdown and replace the main battery pack before the device powers off. The Low Battery warning will transition the MX8 to Suspend before the MX8 powers off.

Backup Battery

The MX8 has a backup battery that is designed to provide limited-duration electrical power in the event of main battery failure. The backup battery is a 160 mAh Nickel Metal Hydride (Ni-MH) battery that is factory installed in the unit. The energy needed to maintain the backup battery near full charge at all times is drawn from the MX8 main battery. It takes several hours of operation before the backup battery is capable of supporting the operation of the MX8. The duration of backup battery life is dependent upon operation of the MX8, its features and any operating applications. The backup battery has a minimum service life of two years. The backup battery is replaced by Honeywell.

Handling Batteries Safely

- Never dispose of a battery in a fire. This may cause an explosion.
- Do not replace individual cells in a battery pack.
- Do not attempt to pry open the battery pack shell.
- Be careful when handling any battery. If a battery is broken or shows signs of leakage do not attempt to charge it. Dispose of it using proper procedures.

Caution

Nickel-based cells contain a chemical solution which burns skin, eyes, etc. Leakage from cells is the only possible way for such exposure to occur. In this event, rinse the affected area thoroughly with water. If the solution contacts the eyes, get immediate medical attention.

NiCd and Li-Ion batteries are capable of delivering high currents when accidentally shorted. Accidental shorting can occur when contact is made with jewelry, metal surfaces, conductive tools, etc., making the objects very hot. Never place a battery in a pocket or case with keys, coins, or other metal objects.

Software Configuration

Introduction

There are several different aspects to the setup and configuration of the MX8. Many of the setup and configuration settings are dependent upon the optional features such as hardware and software installed on the mobile device. The examples found in this section are to be used as examples only, because the configuration of your specific MX8 may vary. The following sections provide a general reference for the configuration of the MX8 and some of its optional features.

Note: Whenever possible, use the AC power adapter with the MX8 to conserve the main battery and to ensure the backup battery is charged.

Windows Mobile 6.1 Operating System

For general use instruction, refer to commercially available Windows Mobile user's guides or the Windows Mobile on-line Help application installed with the MX8.

This section's contents assumes the system administrator is familiar with Microsoft Windows options and capabilities loaded on most standard Windows XP desktop computers.

Therefore, the sections that follow describe only those Windows capabilities that are unique to the MX8 and its Windows Mobile environment.

Based on your installed software version and hardware options, your setup may not be exactly the same as those that are described in this guide. Contact [Customer Support](#) (page 15-1) for information on the latest upgrades for your MX8.

Software Development

The *CE API Programming Guide* documents Honeywell-specific API calls for the MX8. It is intended as an addition to Microsoft Windows CE API documentation.

A Software Developers Kit (SDK) and additional information about software development can be found on the Technical Assistance Portal.

Clearing Registry Settings

Use the Clean Boot process to return the registry to factory default values.

Installed Software

Note: Some standard Windows options require an external modem connection.

When you order an MX8 you receive the software files required by the separate programs needed for operation and wireless client communication. The files are pre-loaded and stored in folders in the mobile device.

This section lists the contents of the folders and the general function of the files. Files installed in each MX8 are specific to the intended function of the MX8.

Files installed in mobile devices that are configured for a wireless environment usually contain a radio specific driver – the driver for the radio is specific to the manufacturer of the radio installed in the wireless host environment and are not interchangeable.

Software Load

The software loaded on the MX8 computer consists of Windows Mobile 6.1 Operating System, hardware-specific OEM Adaptation Layer, device drivers, Internet Explorer for Windows Mobile browser and MX8-specific utilities. The software supported by the MX8 is summarized below:

Operating System

Full Operating System License: Includes all operating system components, including Windows Mobile 6.1 kernel, file system, communications, connectivity (for remote APIs), device drivers, events and messaging, graphics, keyboard and touch screen input, window management, and common controls.

Network and Device Drivers

Bluetooth (Option)

AppLock (Option)

RFTerm (VT220, TN5250, TN3270) Terminal Emulation (Option)

API Routines

Software Backup

Application programs and data that are normally RAM resident are backed up using ActiveSync.

Version Control

Version numbers are applied to the boot loader and the OS image independently. The version information stored consists of the build number, plus the date and time of compile (in lieu of a build number). These version numbers are stored in non-volatile storage, where the user cannot inadvertently modify them. A Settings panel and API are provided so the user can reference the version numbers for support purposes.

The MX8 has a unique 128-bit ID code as required by the Windows Mobile 6.1 specification. This ID number is generated by the boot loader. This ID code is available in the About MX8WM settings panel, and by a Win32 standard API.

In addition, an API is provided to return a standard Honeywell copyright string, so that applications may reference this to be sure they are running on a Honeywell mobile device for licensing purposes.

Boot Loader

The MX8 supports a proprietary boot loader. It is the responsibility of the boot loader to:

- Initialize all system hardware
- Initiate OS startup
- Handle wakeup from system suspend, loading saved state

The MX8 starts the OS every time during cold boot.

Startup Folders and Launch Sequences

The MX8 operating system uses two startup folders:

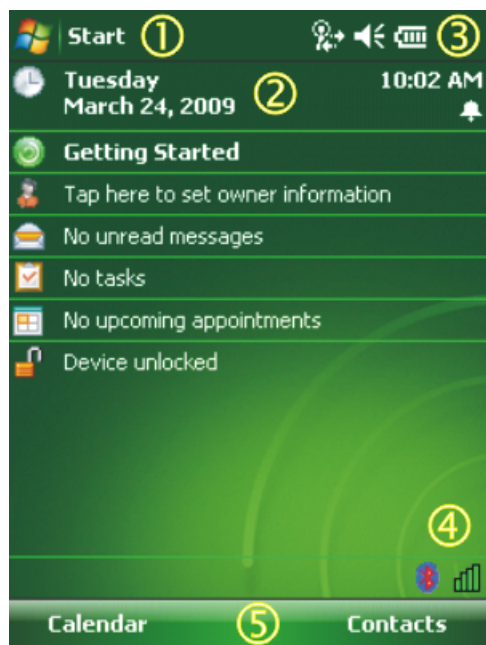
- User applications placed in the Windows\Startup folder automatically run during a cold boot. They are deleted upon a clean boot.
- User applications placed in the System\Startup folder automatically run during a cold boot.

Today Screen

For general use instruction, refer to commercially available Windows Mobile user's guides or the Windows Mobile on-line Help on the MX8.

Note: Whenever possible, use the AC power adapter with the MX8 to conserve the main battery and to ensure the backup battery is charged.

The main screen for the MX8 is known as the Today screen. The Today screen shows various options and status icons. The Today screen appearance is configurable by selecting **Start > Settings > Personal > Today**. Both the appearance of the Today screen and the items displayed may be configured.



1. Start menu
2. Configurable Today screen listing
3. Notification Bar
4. Status icons
5. Soft Keys

Start Menu

The Start menu consists of applications and folders.

- Selecting an application from the menu starts that application.
- Selecting a folder opens a window displaying the contents of the folder.
- Selecting Settings displays the Settings panels by category.
- Selecting Help displays context sensitive help. The contents displayed in the help window vary depending on the screen displayed before Help was accessed.

Programs not appearing on the Start menu can be accessed by using the File Explorer.

Configurable Today Screen Listing

The items displayed in the Today screen listing can be configured from **Start > Settings > Personal > Today > Items**.

Date

When the Date is enabled to display on the Today screen, the date is displayed on the left side of the screen and the time is displayed on the right side. If there are any alarms set, a bell icon is displayed under the current time.

Device Unlocked / Device Locked










When the MX8 is unlocked, clicking on Device unlocked locks the MX8.

When the MX8 is locked, clicking on Unlock at the bottom of the screen unlocks the MX8. Depending on the settings, a password may be required. The MX8 can also be configured to lock after a period of inactivity.

Notification Bar

The Notification Bar is displayed at the top of the Today screen. The notification bar remains visible even when other screens are selected, though the icons displayed may vary.








When the Notification bar is displayed on other screens there may be an X (close the current screen/program) or an ok (accept the current input and close the screen).

Category	Icon	Meaning
Network		The Windows Mobile Wireless Manager is managing the wireless connection and the MX8 is connected to a wireless network.
		The Summit Client Utility is managing the wireless connection -or- The Windows Mobile Wireless Manager is managing the wireless connection and the MX8 is not connected to a wireless network.
		The Windows Mobile Wireless Manager is managing the wireless connection and has detected one or more wireless networks in range.
		The Windows Mobile Wireless Manager is managing the wireless connection and has not detected a wireless network in range.
Volume		The speaker is on.
		The speaker is off.
		Vibrate is on.
Power		The MX8 is connected to external power.
		The MX8 is operating on battery power. The strength of the battery is indicated by the number of bars displayed: 0 (low battery) to 4 (fully charged battery).

Status Icons

Additional icons may be displayed at the lower edge of the Today screen.

Note: Summit signal strength icons are displayed only when the Summit Client Utility is controlling the radio.

	Bluetooth module is connected to one or more of the targeted Bluetooth device(s).
	MX8 is not connected to any Bluetooth device. MX8 is ready to connect with any Bluetooth device. MX8 is out of range of all paired Bluetooth device(s). Connection is inactive.
	Summit radio is not currently associated or authenticated to an Access Point.
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -80 dBm or weaker.
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is stronger than -80dBm but not stronger than -60 dBm.
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is stronger than -60 dBm but not stronger than -40 dBm.
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is stronger than -40 dBm.

Soft Keys

Soft Keys are displayed at the bottom of the Today screen. The keys displayed may vary by the active screen/application.

The soft keys generally provide menus for the selected application. By default, the left Soft Key can also be accessed by pressing F3 and the right Soft Key can be accessed by pressing F4. The assignments for the Soft Keys can be edited by selecting **Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons**.

Start and Program Menus

Start > Programs or Start

The following options represent the factory default program installation. Your system may be different based on the software and hardware options purchased. The location of the program may be in either the Start menu or the **Start > Programs** menu depending on the configuration in **Settings > Personal > Menus**.

Program		Description
ActiveSync		Basic ActiveSync configuration, including synchronization with an Exchange server.
Calculator		Calculator
Calendar		Calendar/date book application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook calendar using ActiveSync.
Contacts		Address book application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook address book using ActiveSync.
File Explorer		Displays a structured picture of files on the system.
Games		Access installed games.
Getting Started		This application provides several wizards to walk a user through device configuration.
Help		Access Windows Mobile help system.
Internet Explorer		Access web pages on the Internet.
Messaging		Email application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook email using ActiveSync or to synchronize with an Exchange server.
Notes		Notebook application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook notes using ActiveSync.
Office Mobile		
	Excel Mobile	Microsoft Excel for Windows Mobile
	OneNote Mobile	Microsoft OneNote for Windows Mobile
	PowerPoint Mobile	Microsoft PowerPoint for Windows Mobile
	Word Mobile	Microsoft Word for Windows Mobile
Pictures & Video		Picture/video viewer application. Can be synchronized with PC documents folder using ActiveSync.
RegEdit		Edit the system registry info.
Remote Desktop (Auto)		A shortcut to Remote Desktop Mobile with Connect activated.
Remote Desktop Mobile		Display remote desktop. Setup for computer, user name, password and domain required. Use Options to setup connected options for the remote desktop.
Search		Search function searches all storage units in the device. It can be filtered to look for running tasks.
Summit		
	scu	Wireless client management program.
Task Manager		View and cancel running tasks.
Tasks		Task list application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook task list using ActiveSync.
Windows Live		Interfaces with Microsoft Windows Live online service.
Windows Media		Audio visual management program.

Installed Programs

Additional information on some installed programs is listed below.

Internet Explorer

Start > Internet Explorer

This browser is IEMobile 8.12. Configuration options for Internet Explorer are accessed by clicking **Menu > Tools > Options** from an Internet Explorer window.

Configuration of Internet Explorer for the MX8 is similar to configuration of Internet Explorer for a desktop PC. For more information on general configuration options, see the Windows Mobile help system on the MX8 or other commercially available Internet Explorer configuration resources.

If an Internet Explorer web page is larger than the MX8 screen can display at one time, scroll bars are provided for horizontal and vertical scrolling. The scroll bars can be enabled or disabled using the MX8WM Options settings.

Internet Explorer for Windows Mobile includes an option to display web sites as a Mobile Device or a Desktop computer. The option can be accessed by selecting **Menu > Tools > Options > Other**.

For information on the version of Internet Explorer loaded on the MX8, click the Favorites soft key and select About Internet Explorer.

Office Mobile Applications

Start > Office Mobile

Office 2003 and Office 2007 formats are supported, though these are subset applications so not all objects may appear as expected.

ActiveSync handles all file format conversions for these files transferred between the MX8 and the host PC.

ActiveSync

Start > Programs > ActiveSync

ActiveSync can be setup to synchronize with an Exchange server. Contact your system administrator for configuration information.

AppLock (Option)

Start > Settings > System > Administration

The AppLock program is accessed by the user or the AppLock Administrator at bootup or upon completion of a suspend/resume. Set parameters using the Administration option in the Settings Panel.

Summit

SCU (Summit Client Utility)

Start > Programs > Summit

Summit automatically installs and runs after every cold boot. See Wireless Network Configuration for Summit Client Utility setup information and instruction.

Certs

Start > Programs > Summit > Certs

The Certs option displays a readme file containing details on how the Summit Configuration Utility (SCU) handles certificates for WPA authentication. See Wireless Network Configuration for directions for acquiring CA and user certificate files.

Windows Media Player

Start > Programs > Media Player

There are few changes in the Windows Mobile version of Media Player as it relates to the general desktop Windows PC Microsoft Media Player options. Codecs are included for WMA, WMV, MP3 and WAV files.

Bluetooth (Option)

Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth

Only installed on a Bluetooth equipped MX8. The System Administrator can Discover and Pair targeted Bluetooth devices for each MX8. The System Administrator can enable / disable Bluetooth settings and assign a Computer Friendly Name for each MX8. Bluetooth can be accessed by tapping **Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth**, or by tapping the Bluetooth icon on the Today screen.

RFTerm (Option)

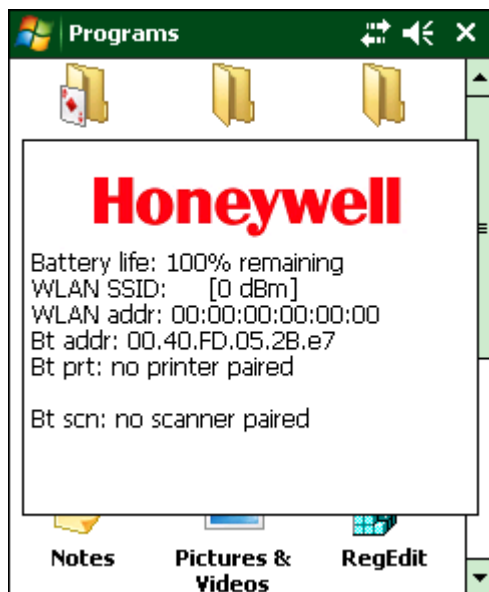
Start > Programs > RFTerm

The application can be accessed by tapping **Start > Programs > RFTerm**. Refer to the *RFTerm User's Guide* for complete information and instruction. WAV files added by the user should be stored in System\LXE\RFTerm\Sounds.

Status Popup

Start > Settings > System > MX8WM Options

The Status Popup provides real time information on several status icons when a specified keypress occurs.



To use the Status Popup, first map a key to the status window. Use the Buttons panel (**Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons**) to assign a key to Admin Statpop (for the Admin Popup) and StatPopup (for the User Popup). Use a Diamond key for the popup. If a Function key is used, that Function key is not available to other applications such as RFTerm.

Use the MX8 Options panel (**Start > Settings > System > MX8WM Options**) to configure other parameters including:

- Dismiss Status Popup on 5 second timeout
- Information to include in Admin or User Status Popup.

The Status Popup can be dismissed by the expiration of the timeout (if enabled), tapping the status window or pressing the key assigned to the popup.

For more information, refer to the Buttons and MX8WM Options settings.

HSM Connect

HSM Connect allows a user with an ActiveSync connection between a PC and the MX8 to display the MX8's display on the host PC. Any keystrokes on the host PC are passed to the MX8 as if they were keystrokes on the MX8 keypad.

HSM Connect for the MX8 is available on the *Getting Started Disc*.

GrabTime

GrabTime is a utility to synchronize the MX8 with a world-wide time server. GrabTime can be started as a service by setting it in the Launch option (see the following section for details on Launch).

Synchronize with a local time server

- Use ActiveSync to copy GrabTime.ini from the Windows folder on the MX8 to the host PC.
- Edit GrabTime.ini (on the host PC) to add the local time server's domain name to the beginning of the list of servers. You can then optionally delete the remainder of the list.
- Copy the modified GrabTime.ini to the Windows folder on the MX8.

Enhanced Launch

Launch is a utility that runs automatically at startup. A partial list of Enhanced Launch functions includes:

- Launch a .CAB file
- Run an .EXE or .BAT file
- Process a .REG file
- Manipulate files and directories
- Modify registry keys
- Perform conditional operations

The Enhanced Launch utility does not interact with or affect the AppLock Launch command.

For a complete list of Launch functions including commands and command structure, see Launch Utility.

RegLoad

Double-tapping a registry settings file (e.g., .REG) causes RegLoad to open the file and make the indicated settings in the registry. This is similar to the way RegEdit works on a desktop PC. The .REG file format is the same as on the desktop PC.

RegEdit

Before using RegEdit, refer to commercially available Microsoft Power Tools for Windows manuals. For example Microsoft Windows Registry Guide, Second edition.

The Registry Editor allows viewing, searching for items and changing settings in the registry (Launch.REG). The registry contains information about how the mobile device runs. Use caution when inspecting and editing the Registry as making incorrect changes can damage the mobile device operating system.

Remote Desktop

Start > Remote Desktop Mobile

Using Remote Desktop Mobile, you can log on to a remote computer running Terminal Services or Remote Desktop and use all the programs available on that computer from your mobile device. For example, instead of running Word Mobile on the MX8, you can run the desktop computer version of Word and access all of the .doc files on that computer from your device.

Set Remote Desktop Mobile Options

Before connecting to a remote computer, set Remote Desktop Mobile options to improve display and resource when connected, if desired. Tap Options in the taskbar. Tap OK when finished.

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Mobile' application window with the 'Options' dialog box open. The 'Display' tab is selected. The 'Colors' dropdown is set to '256 Colors'. Under 'Remote desktop display', there are two unchecked checkboxes: 'Full screen' and 'Fit remote desktop to screen'. At the bottom, the 'Display' tab is highlighted in the taskbar.

Remote Desktop Mobile [icons] ok

Options

Colors: 256 Colors

Remote desktop display

☐ Full screen

☐ Fit remote desktop to screen

Display Resources

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Mobile' application window with the 'Options' dialog box open. The 'Resources' tab is selected. The 'Device storage' dropdown is set to 'Do not map to the remote machine'. The 'Remote desktop sound' dropdown is set to 'Mute'. At the bottom, the 'Resources' tab is highlighted in the taskbar.

Remote Desktop Mobile [icons] ok

Options

Device storage

Do not map to the remote machine

Remote desktop sound

Mute

Display Resources

Connect to a Remote Server

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Mobile' application window with the 'Connect' dialog box open. The status is 'Not connected'. There are input fields for 'Computer', 'User name', 'Password', and 'Domain'. A checkbox for 'Save password' is unchecked. At the bottom, there are 'Connect' and 'Options' buttons, with a keyboard icon and an up arrow between them.

Remote Desktop Mobile [icons] X

Status: Not connected

Computer: [dropdown]

User name: [text box]

Password: [text box]

Domain: [text box]

☐ Save password

Connect [keyboard icon] [up arrow] Options

-
1. Configure the radio.
 2. Enter the name of the computer to which you want to connect. If needed, enter the port number at the end of the computer name (*remotecomputername:portnumber*).
 3. Enter the user name, password and domain.
 4. Tap the Save password checkbox if it is blank.
 5. Tap Connect to complete the connection and save the password.
 6. Select Disconnect from Remote Desktop connection.
 7. Create a folder titled Startup under the System folder.
 8. Copy Remote.exe from the Windows folder to the \System\Startup folder just created.
 9. Select **Start > Settings > System > MX8WM Options** and check Remote Desktop Autologon.
 10. Select **OK** and **yes** to reboot.
 11. Result: The unit will boot into the Remote Desktop Connection.

Installing Applications

Applications can be installed on the MX8 from CAB files or package files.

Package files have some unique characteristics:

- Package files patch the operating system so they become non-volatile. Even a Clean Boot does not remove the programs.
- CAB files are (re)installed after a cold boot, but not after a suspend/resume since the OS was not reset during a suspend/resume and the CAB files are still in use.
- Packages can contain registry settings which are installed at setup, similar to a CAB file.
- Package files cannot be uninstalled, reinstalled or reverted to an earlier version.
- Packages can be digitally signed.
- A super package file can be created containing multiple package files. Because the MX8 must reboot after every package installation, a super package may make the installation faster.
- Package files have a .PKG extension, super package files have a .PKS extension.
- The MX8 must be connected to AC power to install a package or super package file.

An unsigned executable (CAB or package file) prompts the user when executed:

The program is from an unknown publisher. Running it can possibly harm your device. Do you want to continue?

If you trust the program, tap Yes. Otherwise tap No.

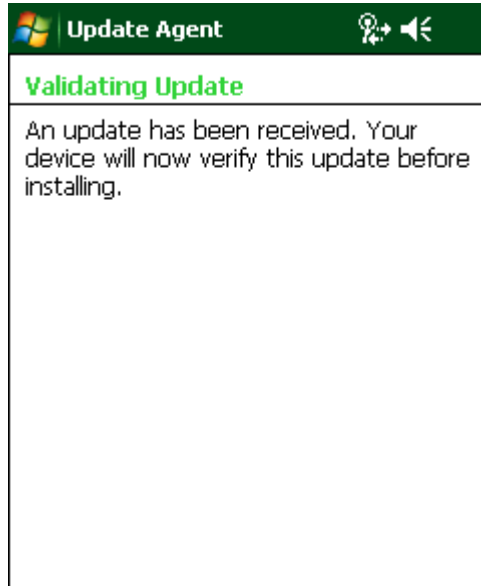
Preparation

Package files can be copied to the MX8 using ActiveSync or they can be installed from the Mini SD card.

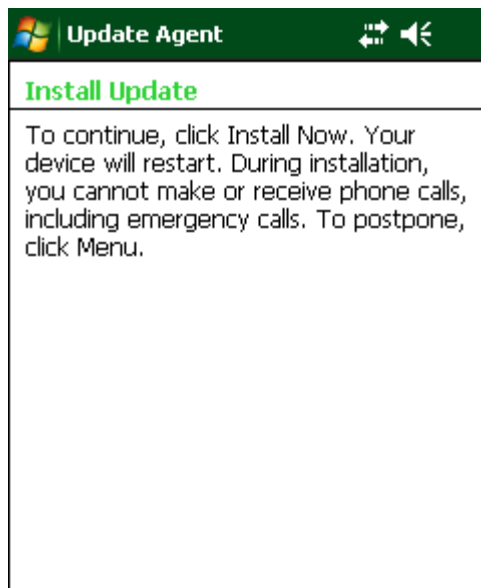
Package File Installation

The MX8 must be connected to external AC power. **IMPORTANT** – Because the package file installation actually rewrites portions of the operating system, it is important that the AC power is not interrupted during package file installation. If power is interrupted, the operating system may be damaged, requiring the MX8 to be returned to Honeywell for repair.

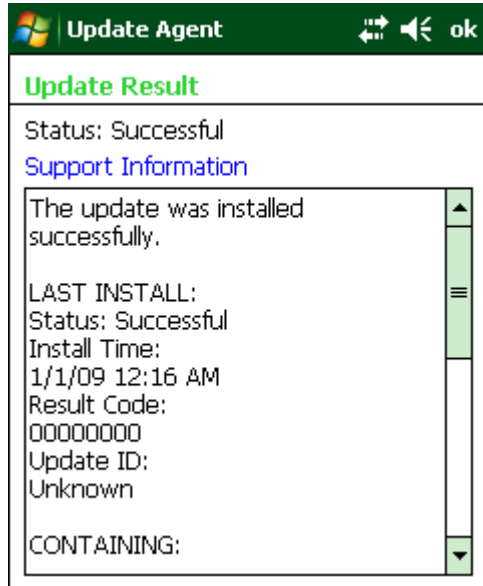
1. Use File Explorer to browse to the location of the package file.
2. Tap the package file. Note that by default the file extension is hidden. The package file can be either a single package file or a super package file.
3. The installation process begins.



4. Click Install Now to begin the installation.



5. MX8 reboots and displays an Update message while the package is being installed.
6. When the installation is completed, the MX8 reboots again and displays the summary screen.

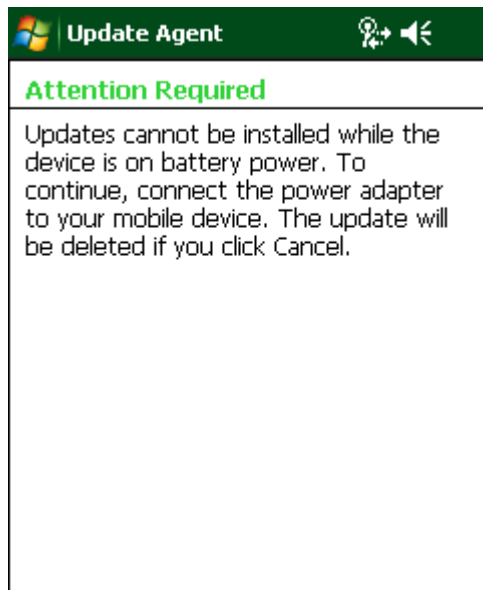


7. Refer to *Installing Applications Help* if there is a problem with the package installation.

Installing Applications Help

Issue:

Message: The MX8 isn't connected to AC power.



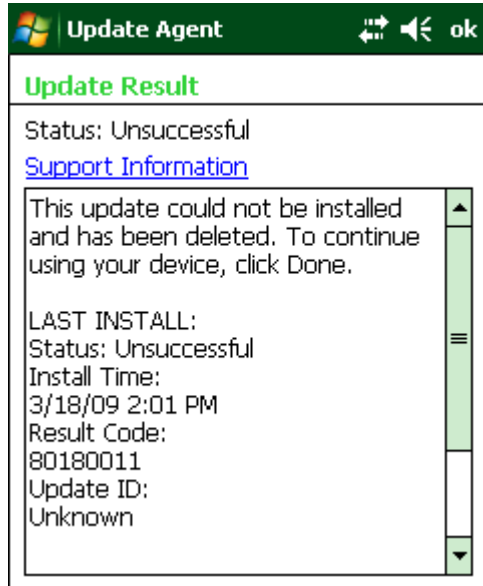
Solution:

Tap Cancel. Connect the MX8 to AC power and try the update again.

The message that the update will be deleted only means that the scheduled update was deleted. The package file IS NOT deleted and remains on the storage card.

Issue:

Message: The package is already installed or is an older version than installed.



Solution:

The update could not be installed because the update has already been installed or the package file is an earlier version than is already installed on the MX8.

Tap Done to exit the update process.

The message that the update could not be installed and is deleted only means that the scheduled update was deleted. The package file IS NOT deleted and remains on the storage card.

Contact [Customer Support](#) (page 15-1) or your system administrator for more information on package versions.

Settings Panels

Start > Settings

Tap **Start > Help** for context sensitive Windows Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Help.

The settings in Windows Mobile are divided into three tabs: Personal, System and Connections.

Personal	Function
Buttons (page 5-15)	Set functions of programmable buttons.
Input (page 5-16)	Set input options for keypad, touch screen and voice.
Lock (page 5-19)	Set password protection.
Menus (page 5-21)	Select Start menu items.
Owner Information (page 5-22)	Set the mobile device owner details (name, phone, etc). Enter notes. Enable / disable Owner display parameters.
Sounds & Notifications (page 5-24)	Enable / disable sounds and vibrations. Set volume parameters and assign sound (wav) files to OS events.
Today (page 5-26)	Configure the Today screen.
System	Function
About (page 5-27)	Display OS version information. Set device name.
About MX8WM (page 5-29)	Display hardware, software and version information.

System	Function
Administration	Use AppLock (Application Locking) (page 6-1) to set parameters for the MX8 when it is to be used as a dedicated, single or multiple application device. Only the applications or features specified in the AppLock configuration by the AppLock Administrator are available to the MX8 user.
Backlight (page 5-32)	Set the display backlight brightness and display/keypad backlight timeout. Each item may be configured for battery and external power.
Bluetooth (page 7-1)	Discover and manage Bluetooth devices.
Certificates (page 5-35)	Manage digital certificates used for secure communication.
Clock & Alarms (page 5-38)	Set Date, Time, Time Zone, and alarms.
Customer Feedback (page 5-40)	Enable feedback to Microsoft.
Data Collection (page 8-1)	Set scanner key wedge, internal scanner port, enable/disable internal scanner sounds, enable/disable illumination LEDs, and set vibration options. Assign baud rate, parity, stop bits and data bits for COM1 port.
Encryption (page 5-41)	Enable file encryption on removable storage cards.
Error Reporting (page 5-42)	Enable sending error reports to Microsoft.
External GPS (page 5-43)	Configure serial GPS access.
License Manager (page 5-44)	Displays license information for installed licensed applications.
Managed Programs (page 5-45)	Display install history for .NET programs.
Memory (page 5-46)	Display current state of virtual memory.
MX8WM Options (page 5-47)	Set the MX8 specific configuration options.
Power (page 5-49)	Set Power scheme properties. Review device status and properties.
Regional Settings (page 5-51)	Set appearance of numbers, currency, time and date based on country region and language settings.
Remove Programs (page 5-52)	Remove user installed programs.
Screen (page 5-53)	Calibrate touch screen, adjust text options.
Task Manager (page 5-55)	Display running tasks and cancel running tasks.
Wi-Fi	Configure Wi-Fi access using the Summit Client Utility (page 10-1).
Windows Update (page 5-56)	Configure and run Windows Update.

Connections	Function
Beam (page 5-57)	Enable receiving IR and Bluetooth beams.
Connections (page 5-58)	Configure connections to a host PC, network, etc.
Domain Enroll (page 5-59)	Enroll in Active Directory domain.
Wi-Fi (Network Adapters) (page 5-60)	Set the parameters for a wireless network using the utility included in Windows Mobile. See Wireless Network Configuration for details on using this utility. The label for this option may be either "Network Card" or "Wi-Fi" depending on radio configuration.
Wi-Fi (Network Access) (page 5-61)	
Wireless Manager (page 5-63)	Display the status of currently connected wireless networks.

Personal Panels

Buttons

Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons

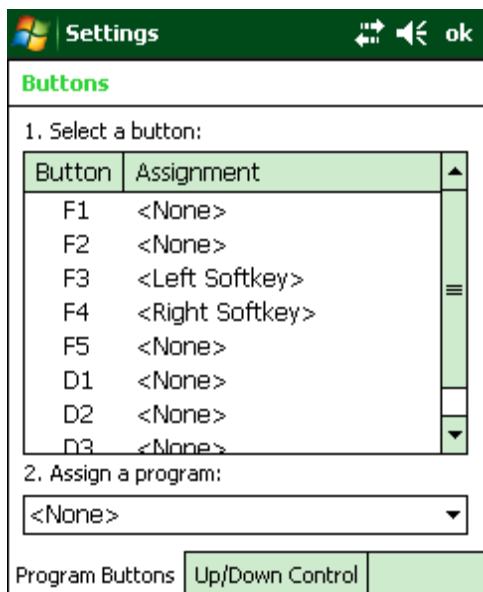
Program buttons can be used to assign functions to certain keys such as F1-F5 and the three diamond keys. Buttons can only be assigned to programs that have an icon in the Start menu or the Programs folder (including sub-folders). A program that is not in the above mentioned locations does not show up in the list here.

The button links to the shortcut to the program, not the executable file.

The System Administrator uses the Buttons setting panels to assign a Status User key and a Status Admin key on the Status Popup panel.

Setting	Default
F1, F2, F5, D1, D2, D3	<None>
F3	Left Softkey
F4	Right Softkey

Program Buttons

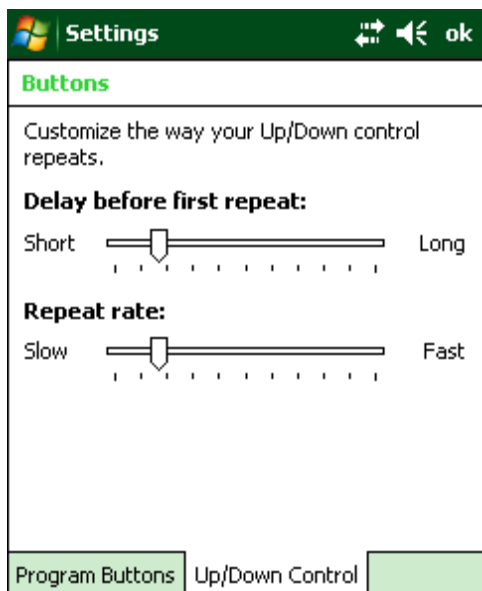


To assign a button:

1. Tap the desired button.
2. Select the program or shortcut from the Assign a program pulldown box.
3. Tap ok.

Up/Down Control

Customize the delay before repeating and the repeat rate for the up/down controls.



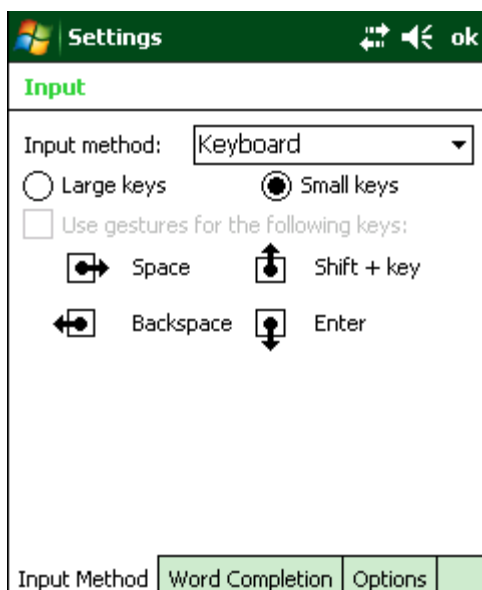
Input

Start > Settings > Personal > Input

Input Method

Select the preferred method of input.

Setting	Default
Input Method	Keyboard
Small keys	Enabled



The default method of input is the keyboard or input panel. When the cursor is located in a field allowing text input, the input panel may automatically be displayed. If not automatically displayed, the input panel can be accessed by clicking on the keyboard icon at the bottom center of the screen.

If a different input method is active, the icon for that input method is displayed instead of the keyboard icon.

Tap ok to save any changes.

Word Completion

Setting	Default
Suggest words when entering text	Enabled
Suggest after entering	A space
Suggest _ word(s)	4
Add a space after word	Enabled
Enable auto correct	Enabled

Settings [Back] [Volume] [OK]

Input

☒ Suggest words when entering text

Suggest after entering [a space ▼]

Suggest [4 ▼] word(s)

☒ Add a space after word

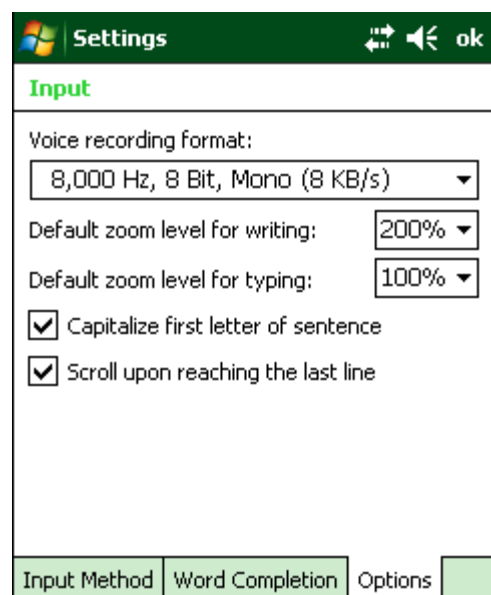
Clear Stored Entries

☒ Enable Auto Correct

Input Method | Word Completion | Options

Options

Setting	Default
Voice recording format	8000 Hz, 8 Bit, Mono
Default zoom level for writing	200%
Default zoom level for typing	100%
Capitalize first letter of sentence	Enabled
Scroll upon reaching the last line	Enabled



The screenshot shows the Windows Settings application with the 'Input' tab selected. The 'Voice recording format' is set to '8,000 Hz, 8 Bit, Mono (8 KB/s)'. The 'Default zoom level for writing' is set to '200%' and the 'Default zoom level for typing' is set to '100%'. Both 'Capitalize first letter of sentence' and 'Scroll upon reaching the last line' are checked. At the bottom, there are tabs for 'Input Method', 'Word Completion', 'Options', and a partially visible 'Voice Recognition' tab.

Settings [Navigation icons] **ok**

Input

Voice recording format:
8,000 Hz, 8 Bit, Mono (8 KB/s) ▼

Default zoom level for writing: 200% ▼

Default zoom level for typing: 100% ▼

☒ Capitalize first letter of sentence

☒ Scroll upon reaching the last line

Input Method | Word Completion | Options | Voice Recognition

Lock

Start > Settings > Personal > Lock

Password

Set the lock / unlock behavior of the MX8.

Setting	Default
Prompt if device unused for	Unchecked
Timer	0 minutes
Password type	Simple PIN
Password	blank
Confirm	blank

Prompt if device is unused for – Check/enable the checkbox and set the inactivity timeout before the MX8 locks. Then the screen displays a numeric keypad or the input panel depending on the type of password selected.

Once a password has been entered, the password must be used to access the Lock panels again.

Select the Password type, Simple PIN (numeric) or strong alphanumeric. Enter the desired password and confirm. Note that Windows Mobile places restrictions on what it considers a valid password. If the chosen password is not strong enough, a warning is displayed and a new password should be entered and confirmed.

Hint

If the password entry isn't successful after a predefined number of attempts, the password hint is displayed.

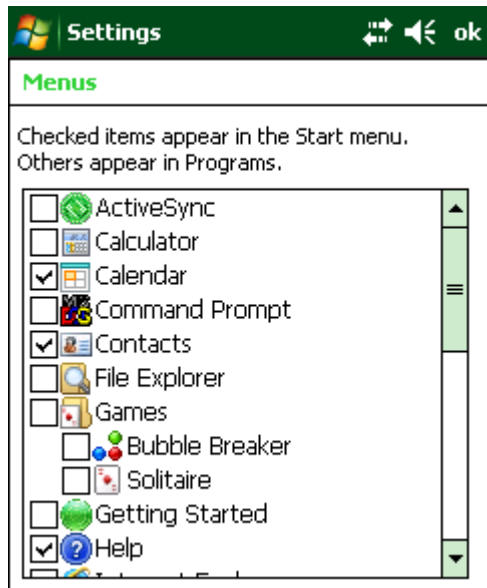


The image shows a 'Settings' dialog box with a green title bar. The title bar contains the Windows logo, the word 'Settings', and icons for window management and an 'ok' button. The main content area is titled 'Password' in green. Below the title, there is a text prompt: 'Provide a password hint in case you forget your password. This hint may be visible by others.' Below this text is a large, empty rectangular text input field. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two tabs: 'Password' and 'Hint'. The 'Hint' tab is currently selected, and its content area is highlighted in light green.

Menus

Start > Settings > Personal > Menus

Use this panel to select the programs to appear in the Start menu.



Owner Information

Start > Settings > Personal > Owner Information

Set the MX8 owner details.

Setting	Default
Identification	
Name, Company, Address, Telephone, E-mail	Blank
Notes	
Notes	Blank
Options	
When the device is turned on, display:	
Identification information	Disabled
Notes	Disabled

Settings

Owner Information

Name:

Company:

Address:

Telephone:

E-mail:

Identification Notes Options

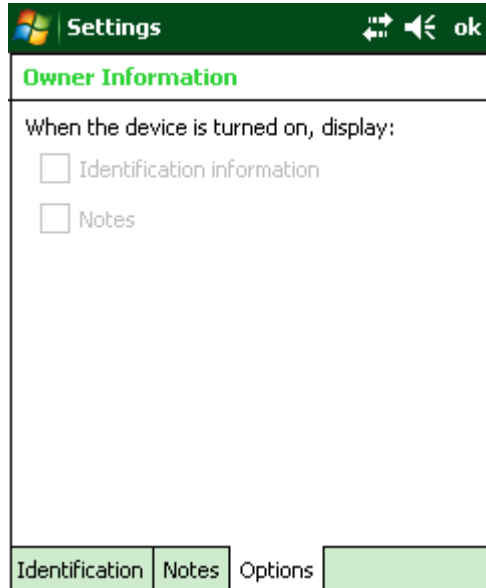
Settings

Owner Information

Notes:

Identification Notes Options

Enter the information and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.



The image shows a 'Settings' screen with a green header bar containing a Windows logo, the word 'Settings', and navigation icons (back, forward, and a speaker icon) followed by an 'ok' button. Below the header, the title 'Owner Information' is displayed in green. The main content area contains the text 'When the device is turned on, display:' followed by two unchecked checkboxes: 'Identification information' and 'Notes'. At the bottom, there is a row of four buttons: 'Identification', 'Notes', 'Options', and an empty green button.

Settings			
Owner Information			
When the device is turned on, display:			
<input type="checkbox"/> Identification information			
<input type="checkbox"/> Notes			
Identification	Notes	Options	

If owner information and notes are entered, use the options on this screen to enable the owner information or notes to be displayed at startup.

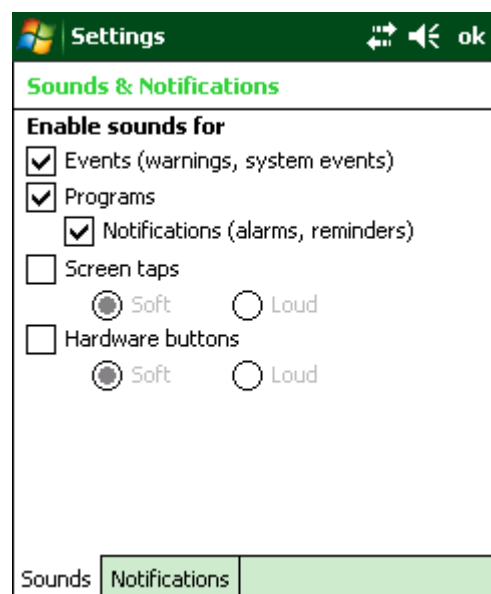
Sounds & Notifications

Start > Settings > Personal > Sounds & Notifications

Set volume parameters and assign sound wav files to Windows Mobile events.

Sounds

Setting	Default
Volume	
Events	Enabled
Programs	Enabled
Notifications	Enabled
Screen taps	Disabled
Hardware buttons	Disabled



Follow the instructions on the screen and tap ok to save the changes. Changes take effect immediately.

Notifications

Settings

Sounds & Notifications

Event: ActiveSync: Begin sync

☒ Play sound Infbeg

☐ Repeat ▶ ■

☐ Display message on screen

☐ Flash light for No limit

☐ Vibrate

Sounds Notifications

The Event box lists several events that can have an associated notification. The notification, depending on the event selected, may consist of playing a sound, displaying a screen message, flashing a light or triggering the vibration motor.

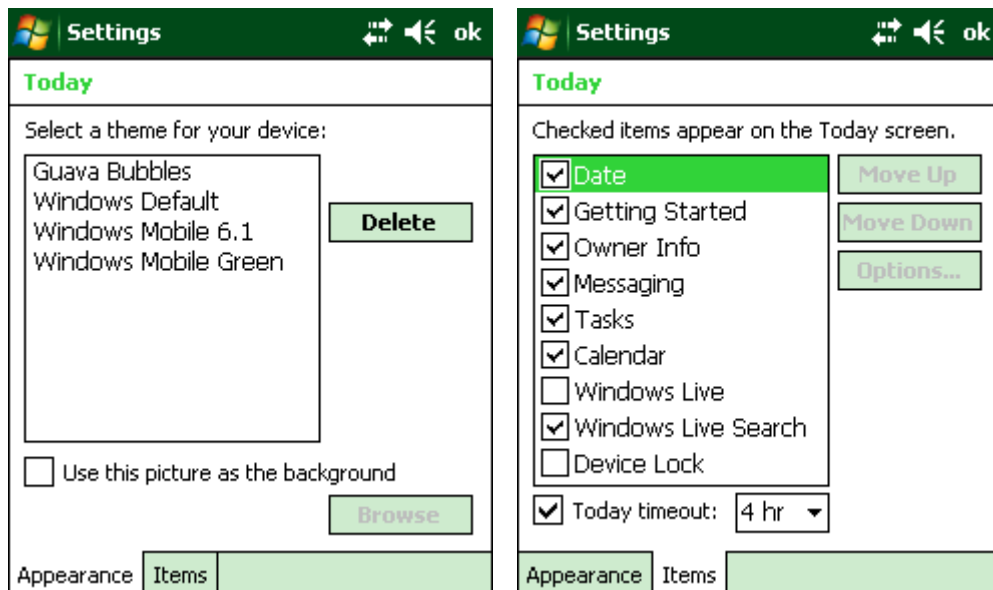
When the flash light option is selected, the MX8 flashes the Alpha LED.

When you have finished changing the settings, tap ok to save the changes.

Today

Start > Settings > Personal > Today

Select a theme and the items to display on the Today screen.



Use the Appearance panel to assign a theme for the device. The default theme is Windows Mobile 6.1. Any user installed themes are included in the list.

Use the Items panel to select the items to be displayed on the Today screen.

System Panels

About

Start > Settings > System > About

The About panels show OS versions, allow device name and description input and display copyright information.

Version



This screen displays information on the installed operating system and the hardware.

Note that Windows Mobile is based on a Windows CE engine. The underlying version of Windows CE is displayed on this panel.

Device ID

Setting	Default
Device Name	MX8001
Device Description	HSM_MX8WM

Settings [Back] [Volume] [ok]

About

Your device uses this information to identify itself to other computers. Enter a name that starts with a letter and contains the characters _ A-Z, or 0-9.

Device name:

Description:

Version | Device ID | Copyrights |

The device name and description can be changed. Enter the name and description using either the keypad or the Input Panel and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

The Device Name listed in **Start > Settings > System > About > Device ID** is not used during Bluetooth operation.

Copyrights

Settings [Back] [Volume] [ok]

About

Portions of this software are based on NCSA Mosaic. NCSA Mosaic(TM) was developed by the National Center for Supercomputing Applications at the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign. Distributed under a licensing agreement with Spyglass, Inc.

Contains security software licensed from RSA Data Security, Inc.

Portions of this software are based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Portions of IPSec and related services jointly developed by Microsoft Corporation and Cisco Systems, Inc.

Version | Device ID | Copyrights |

This screen is presented for information only. The Copyrights information cannot be changed by the user.

About MX8WM

Start > Settings > Personal > About MX8WM

Displays hardware and software details.

Tab Title	Contents
Software	GUID, Windows CE Version, OAL Version, Bootloader Version, Language. Note:“Windows CE Version” refers to the version of Windows CE on which Windows Mobile was built. Windows Mobile 6.1 is built on Windows CE 5.2.
Hardware	CPU Type, Codec Type, Display, Flash memory, and DRAM memory
Versions	Utilities such as the Data Collection (DC) Wedge, EZPair, Summit radio driver, etc.
Network IP	Lists the adapters with MAC, IP and Gateway addresses for each as appropriate.

Software



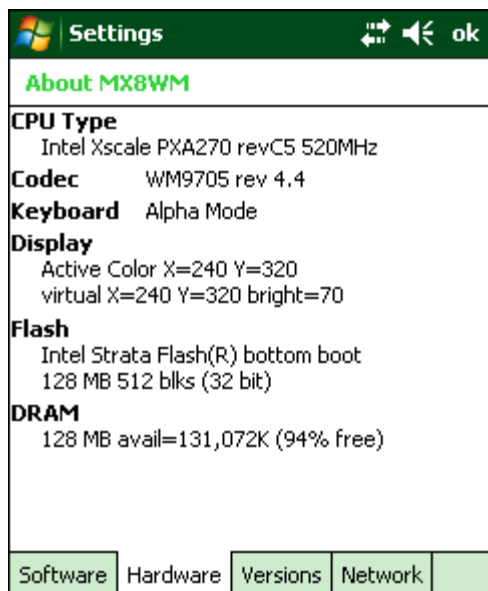
User application version information can be shown in the Version window. Version window information is retrieved from the registry.

Modify the Registry using the Registry Editor (see section titled “Utilities”). Use caution when editing the Registry and make a backup copy of the registry before any changes are made.

The registry settings for the Version window are under HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE \ Software \ LXE \ Version in the registry.

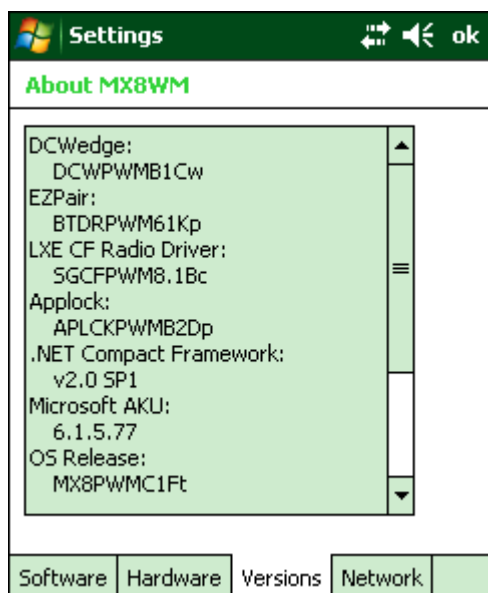
Create a new string value under this key. The string name should be the Application name to appear in the Version window. The data for the value should be the version number to appear in the Version window.

Hardware

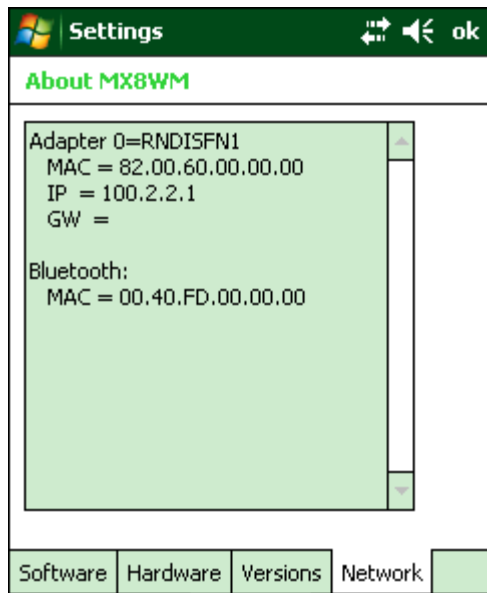


*Note: The integrated bar code reader is identified by selecting **Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > About** tab.*

Versions



Network IP



Backlight

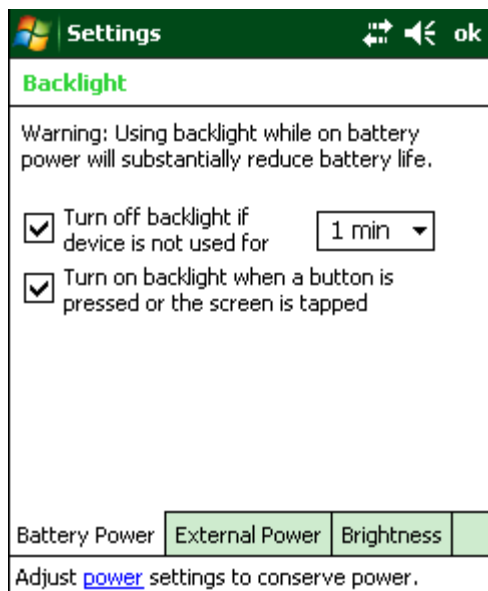
Start > Settings > System > Backlight

Set the power management timers for the display and keyboard backlights. Set the display brightness for battery and external power.

IMPORTANT – When the backlight timer expires, the display backlight and the display are OFF, as is the keypad backlight. This is the System Idle state, there is no separate User Idle state.

Battery Power

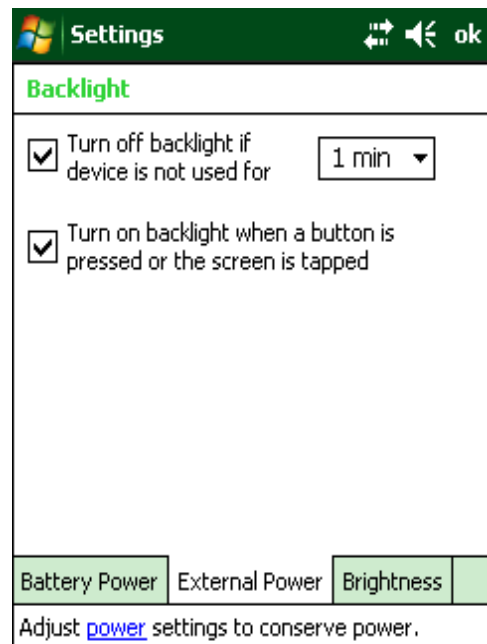
Setting	Default
Turn off backlight if device not used for	Enabled
Timer	1 min
Turn on backlight when a button is pressed or the screen is tapped	Enabled <i>Note: Note: This option is always Enabled, unchecking this option has no effect.</i>



When the MX8 is on battery power and the backlight timer expires, the display and the backlights for the display and keypad are turned off. Default value is 1 minute and both the check boxes are enabled. Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

External Power

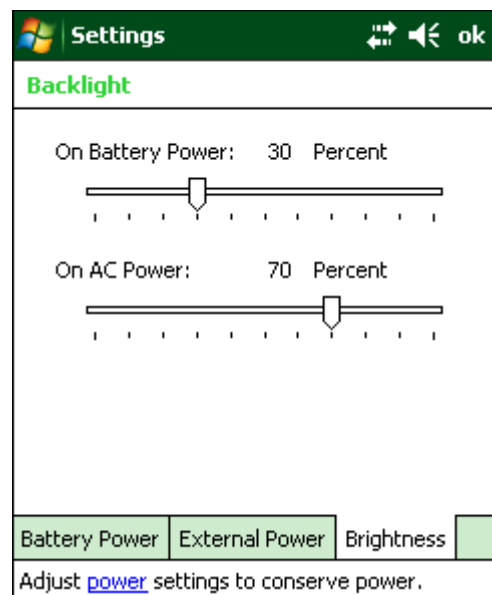
Setting	Default
Turn off backlight if device not used for	Enabled
Timer	1 min
Turn on backlight when a button is pressed or the screen is tapped	Enabled <i>Note: This option is always Enabled, unchecking this option has no effect.</i>



When the MX8 is on external power and the backlight timer expires, the display and the backlights for the display and keypad are turned off. Default value is 1 minute and both the check boxes are enabled. Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

Brightness

Setting	Default
On Battery Power	30 Percent
On AC Power	70 Percent



Adjust the brightness of the display when the MX8 is on battery and AC power. Use the slider bars to adjust the brightness level and tap **ok** to save.

Certificates

Start > Settings > System > Certificates

Manage digital certificates used for secure communication.

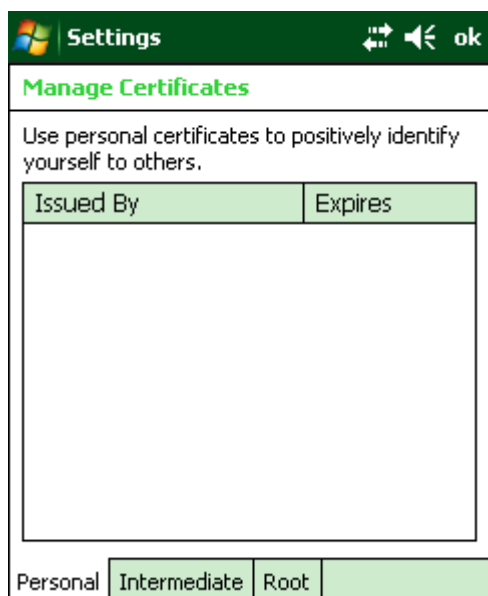
View – displays details of the certificate. Personal certificates may be extended from the view screen.

Delete – removes the certificate from the device. Delete is not available if the certificate was installed by a device administrator.

Certificates are divided into three types: Personal, Intermediate and Root.

in the Wireless Network Configuration section for detailed instruction on generating certificates.

Personal

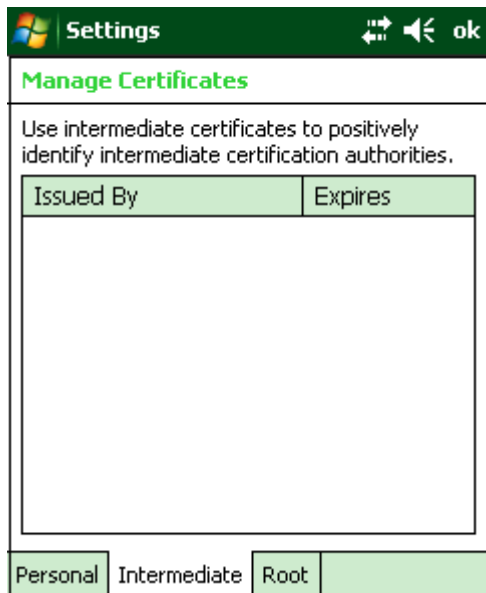


This panel lists any installed Personal certificates. Personal certificates are used to identify the user of the device.

To install a User certificate:

1. Copy the .pfx or .p12 file to a folder on the MX8.
2. Use File Explorer to browse to the location of the file and open the file by tapping the file name.
3. Type in the password to unlock the certificate and tap Done.
4. The new certificate is copied to the Personal certificate store on the MX8.

Intermediate

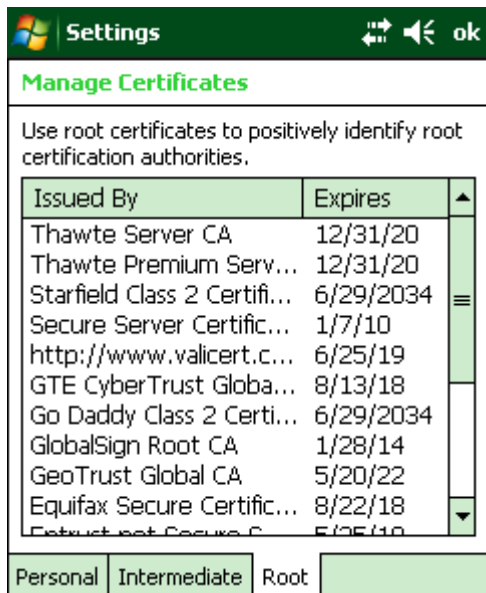


This panel lists any installed Intermediate certificates. Intermediate certificates are used to help authenticate certificates received from other hosts.

To install an Intermediate certificate:

1. Copy a DER-encoded .cer file, a base64-encoded .cer file or a .pfx file to a folder on the MX8.
2. Use File Explorer to browse to the location of the file and open the file by tapping the file name.
3. The new certificate is copied to the Intermediate certificate store on the MX8.

Root



This panel lists any installed Root certificates. Root certificates are used to authenticate certificates received from other hosts.

To install a Root certificate:

1. Copy a DER-encoded .cer file, a base64-encoded .cer file or a .pfx file to a folder on the MX8.
2. Use File Explorer to browse to the location of the file and open the file by tapping the file name.
3. The new certificate is copied to the Root certificate store on the MX8.

Clock & Alarms

Start > Settings > System > Clock & Alarms

Time

The screenshot shows the 'Clock & Alarms' settings screen with the 'Time' tab selected. The screen has a green header bar with the Windows logo, 'Settings', and navigation icons. Below the header, the title 'Clock & Alarms' is in green. There are two radio buttons: 'Home' (selected) and 'Visiting'. For the 'Home' location, the time zone is 'GMT-5 Eastern US', the time is '10:47:19 AM', and the date is '3 / 5 /2009'. For the 'Visiting' location, the time zone is 'GMT+1 Paris,Madrid', the time is '4:47:19 PM', and the date is '3 / 5 /2009'. At the bottom, there are four tabs: 'Time' (selected), 'Alarms', 'More', and an empty tab.

Location	Time Zone	Time	Date
Home	GMT-5 Eastern US	10:47:19 AM	3 / 5 /2009
Visiting	GMT+1 Paris,Madrid	4:47:19 PM	3 / 5 /2009

Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately. The Time can be set for both a Home and Visiting location.

Alarms

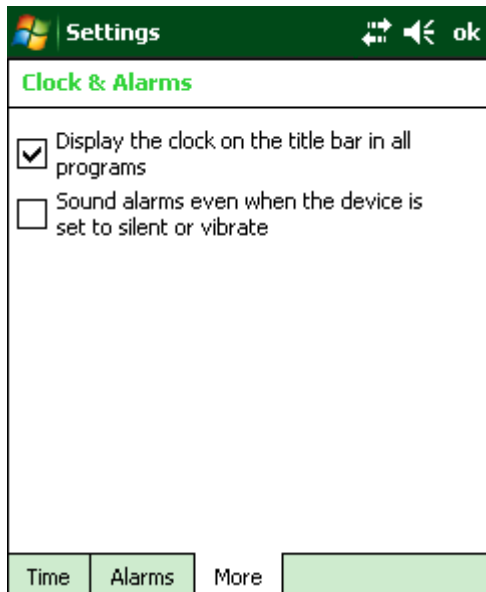
The screenshot shows the 'Clock & Alarms' settings screen with the 'Alarms' tab selected. The screen has a green header bar with the Windows logo, 'Settings', and navigation icons. Below the header, the title 'Clock & Alarms' is in green. There are three alarm entries, each with a checkbox, a description field, a day-of-the-week selector (S M T W T F S), and a time field (6:00 AM). The first two entries have checkboxes that are unchecked, and the third entry has a checked checkbox. At the bottom, there are four tabs: 'Time', 'Alarms' (selected), 'More', and an empty tab.

Alarm	Description	Day of Week	Time
<input type="checkbox"/>	< Description >	S M T W T F S	6:00 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	< Description >	S M T W T F S	6:00 AM
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	< Description >	S M T W T F S	6:00 AM

To set an alarm:

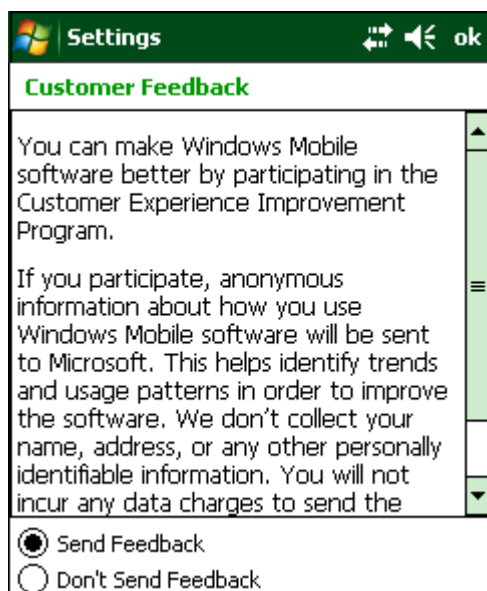
1. Tap the checkbox to enable the alarm.
2. Tap <Description> and enter a description. The description is limited to 63 characters.
3. Tap the day (or days) to play the alarm.
4. Tap the time to set the time to play the alarm. Set the time and tap ok to return to the Alarms panel.
5. Tap the Bell icon to set the notification. Notifications may include sound, light flash (the Alpha LED flashes) and vibration. Set the desired options and tap **ok** to return to the Alarms panel.
6. Tap **ok** when finished to dismiss the Alarms panel.

More



Customer Feedback

Start > Settings > System > Customer Feedback



Elect to send or not send feedback as part of Microsoft's Customer Experience Improvement Program. The default is Send Feedback.

In order to send feedback, the MX8 must have Internet access.

Encryption

Start > Settings > System > Encryption

This panel enables or disables encryption of data files on removable storage cards. The default is Disabled.



Error Reporting

Start > Settings > System > Error Reporting

This panel enables or disables error reporting to Microsoft.



An Internet connection is required for error reporting.

External GPS

Start > Settings > System > External GPS

Setting	Default
GPS Program Port	None
GPS Hardware Port	None
Baud Rate	4800
Access	Automatic

This panel configures for serial GPS access over hardware serial ports using the Microsoft GPS manager. The port used, baud rate and sharing of the port must be specified. In order to use the configuration items on these panels, applications must use the Microsoft GPS API interface rather than reading the serial port directly. If the application reads the serial port directly, these settings are not necessary.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'GPS Settings' panel selected. The 'Programs' tab is active. The text reads: 'Choose the port that programs will use to obtain GPS data. Any program that uses GPS will need to communicate with this port.' Below this, 'GPS program port:' is followed by a dropdown menu showing '(None)'. At the bottom, there are four tabs: 'Programs', 'Hardware', 'Access', and an unlabeled tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'GPS Settings' panel selected. The 'Hardware' tab is active. The text reads: 'Specify the hardware port to which your GPS device is connected. For more information, see the GPS device manufacturer's documentation.' Below this, 'GPS hardware port:' is followed by a dropdown menu showing '(None)'. Below that, 'Baud rate:' is followed by a dropdown menu showing '4800'. At the bottom, there are four tabs: 'Programs', 'Hardware', 'Access', and an unlabeled tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'GPS Settings' panel selected. The 'Access' tab is active. The text reads: 'Windows Mobile manages access to your GPS device and allows multiple programs to obtain GPS data simultaneously. If you clear this check box, some programs may not be able to obtain GPS data.' Below this, there is a checked checkbox labeled 'Manage GPS automatically (recommended)'. At the bottom, there are four tabs: 'Programs', 'Hardware', 'Access', and an unlabeled tab.

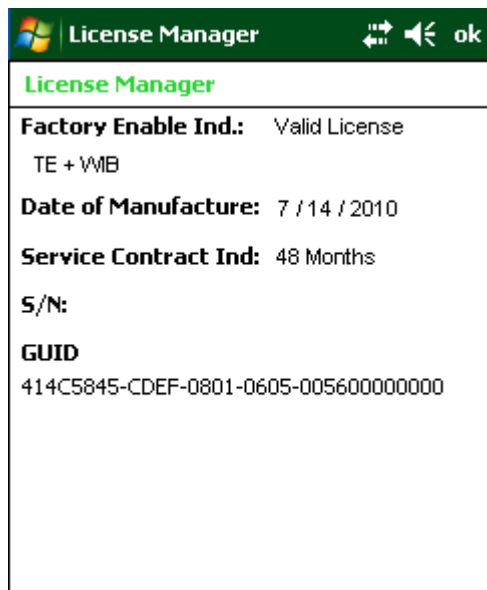
License Manager

Start > Settings > System > License Manager

Use this option to view software license registration details, and service contract length for a MX8. Information on the License Viewer tabs is unique for each MX8.

Note: Following image is a sample screen.

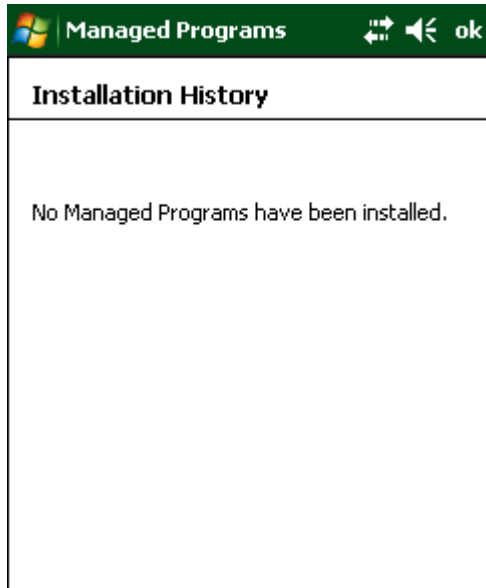
Your License Manager control panel may show more tabs, e.g., RFTerm, depending on the number of software applications running on the MX8 that require a license.



Managed Programs

Start > Settings > System > Managed Programs

This panel displays the install history for .NET managed programs. The list is read only.



Memory

Start > Settings > System > Memory

These panels report the current state of virtual memory. The Find prompt at the bottom of the screen launches the Search utility. The split between Storage memory and Program memory is not adjustable.

Main

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'Memory' panel selected. The panel is divided into two columns: 'Storage' and 'Program'. The 'Storage' column shows 'Total: 19.38 MB', 'In use: 5.24 MB', and 'Free: 14.14 MB'. The 'Program' column shows 'Total: 108.41 MB', 'In use: 47.22 MB', and 'Free: 61.19 MB'. At the bottom, there are three tabs: 'Main', 'Storage Card', and a third empty tab. Below the tabs is a 'Find' button and the text 'large files using storage memory.'

Settings	
Memory	
Storage	Program
Total: 19.38 MB	Total: 108.41 MB
In use: 5.24 MB	In use: 47.22 MB
Free: 14.14 MB	Free: 61.19 MB

Main Storage Card

[Find](#) large files using storage memory.

Storage Card

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'Memory' panel selected. The panel displays 'Total storage card memory: 40.91 MB', 'In use: 0.03 MB', and 'Free: 40.88 MB'. Below this is a green progress bar. At the bottom, there is a dropdown menu currently showing 'System'. Below the dropdown are three tabs: 'Main', 'Storage Card', and a third empty tab. Below the tabs is a 'Find' button and the text 'large files using storage memory.'

Total storage card memory: 40.91 MB

In use: 0.03 MB Free: 40.88 MB

System

Main Storage Card

[Find](#) large files using storage memory.

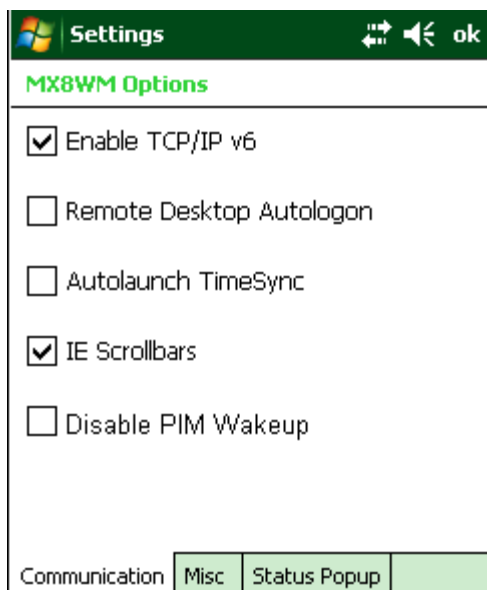
The pop-up list shows all mounted storage, both fixed and removable.

MX8WM Options

Start > Settings > System > MX8WM Options

Set MX8 specific device options.

Communication



The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application window with the 'MX8WM Options' section selected. The 'Communication' tab is active, displaying five checkboxes: 'Enable TCP/IP v6' (checked), 'Remote Desktop Autologon' (unchecked), 'Autolaunch TimeSync' (unchecked), 'IE Scrollbars' (checked), and 'Disable PIM Wakeup' (unchecked). At the bottom, there are four tabs: 'Communication', 'Misc', 'Status Popup', and an unlabeled tab.

By default, TCP/IP version 6 is enabled. Check this checkbox to disable (unchecked) TCP/IP version 6.

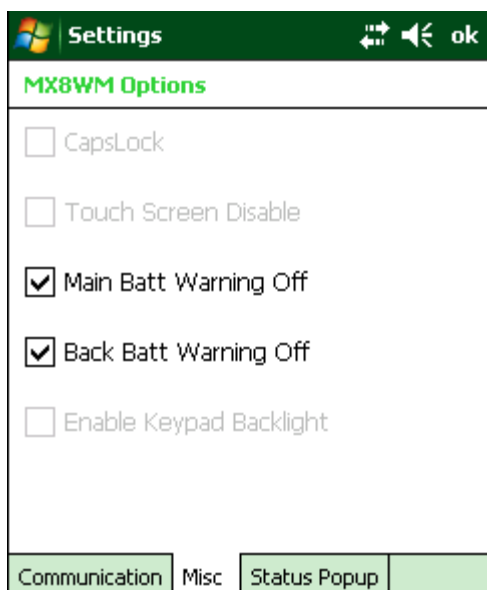
By default, Remote Desktop Autologin is disabled. Check this checkbox to enable Remote Desktop Autologin.

Autolaunch TimeSync enables time synchronization when the MX8 boots.

IE Scrollbars allows the scrollbars in Internet Explorer to be turned off when the check box is unchecked.

Check the checkbox to enable Disable PIM Wakeup. When Disable PIM Wakeup is enabled, the next time the MX8 is in Suspend mode, the MX8 does not wake up to synchronize Outlook.

Misc.



The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application window with the 'MX8WM Options' section selected. The 'Misc' tab is active, displaying five checkboxes: 'CapsLock' (unchecked), 'Touch Screen Disable' (unchecked), 'Main Batt Warning Off' (checked), 'Back Batt Warning Off' (checked), and 'Enable Keypad Backlight' (unchecked). At the bottom, there are four tabs: 'Communication', 'Misc', 'Status Popup', and an unlabeled tab.

Low battery warnings for the Main Battery and the Backup Battery are not presented to the user until their check boxes are unchecked. The default setting is both warnings are turned off. CapsLock, Touch Screen Disable and Enable Keypad Backlight are dimmed and cannot be edited by the user.

Status Popup

MX8WM Options		
5 sec timeout	<input type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input type="checkbox"/> User
RFTerm secID's	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User
A/C power	<input type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input type="checkbox"/> User
CapsLock	<input type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input type="checkbox"/> User
ActiveSync	<input type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input type="checkbox"/> User
Network status	<input type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input type="checkbox"/> User
WLAN radio	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User
Battery meter	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User
Key modifiers	<input type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input type="checkbox"/> User
Bluetooth status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Admin	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User

Communication Misc Status Popup

When the Status popup window is displayed, it is placed on top of the window in focus and hides any data beneath it. The Status Popup window is closed by pressing the assigned Status User or Status Admin key sequence.

Note: Select a Diamond key for the assigned key sequence to use when opening and closing the popup. If a Function key is used, that Function key is not available to applications that generally use Function keys such as RFTerm.

Using the Buttons settings panel (**Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons > Program Buttons**), the System Administrator must first assign a Status User key for the end-user when they want to toggle the Status Popup Window on or off. Select the desired key (F1-F5, D1-D3) and assign that key to StatPopup.

Similarly the System Administrator must also assign a Status Admin key to perform the same function for the Admin popup. Select the desired key (F1-F5, D1-D3) and assign that key to Admin StatPop.

Status popup window display options (taskbar icons) are assigned on the Status Popup tab. E.g., Network status, WLAN status, Bluetooth status, RFTerm secID's (Secondary ID), etc.

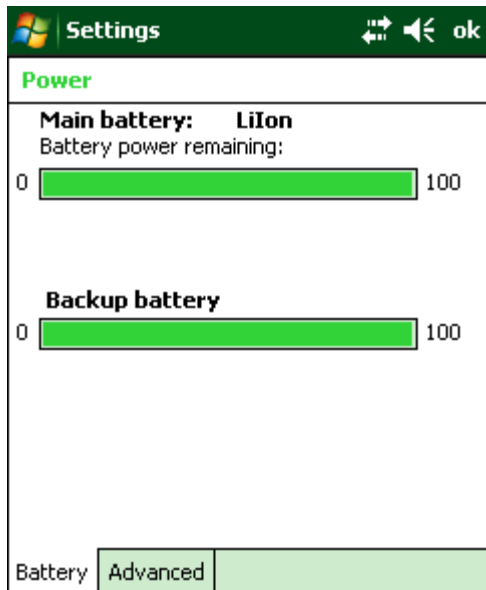
The default setting for the User and Admin status popup windows is to show all status information. The 5-second timeout to remove the status popup from the display is disabled (unchecked) by default for the User and Admin status popup windows.

Power

Start > Settings > System > Power

Reports the current battery state and allows the user to set suspend timeouts.

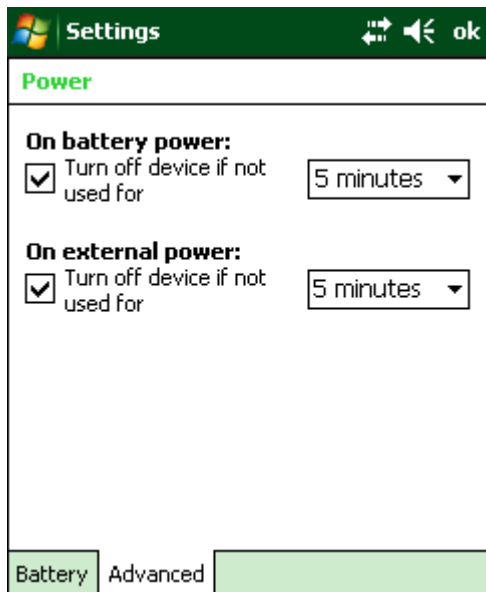
Battery



Battery power is displayed for both the main and backup batteries.

Advanced

Setting	Default
On battery power:	
Turn off device if not used for	Enabled
Timer setting	5 minutes
On external power:	
Turn off device if not used for	Enabled
Timer setting	5 minutes



Settings

Power

On battery power:

☒ Turn off device if not used for 5 minutes ▼

On external power:

☒ Turn off device if not used for 5 minutes ▼

Battery Advanced

Select the inactivity timeout period before the MX8 goes into suspend. The settings on this panel are for the suspend timers only. Backlight timers are set using the Backlight settings panel.

Regional Settings

Start > Settings > System > Regional Settings

Settings [Navigation icons] ok

Regional Settings

English (United States) ▼

Appearance samples

Positive numbers: 123,456,789.00
Positive currency: \$123,456,789.00
Time: 8:51:59 AM
Short date: 8/8/12
Long date: Wednesday, August 08, 2012

Region | Number | Currency | Time | Date |

Settings [Navigation icons] ok

Regional Settings

Decimal symbol: . ▼
No. of decimal places: 2 ▼
Digit grouping symbol: , ▼
No. of digits in group: 3 ▼
List separators: , ▼
Negative sign symbol: - ▼
Negative number format: -1.1 ▼
Display leading zero: 0.7 ▼
Measurement system: U.S. ▼

Region | Number | Currency | Time | Date |

Settings [Navigation icons] ok

Regional Settings

Currency symbol: \$ ▼
Currency symbol position: ¤1.1 ▼
Decimal symbol: . ▼
No. of decimal places: 2 ▼
Digit grouping symbol: , ▼
No. of digits in group: 3 ▼
Negative number format: (¤1.1) ▼
¤ = Universal currency symbol

Region | Number | Currency | Time | Date |

Settings [Navigation icons] ok

Regional Settings

Time sample: 10:57:06 AM

Time style: h:mm:ss tt ▼
Time separator: : ▼
AM symbol: AM ▼
PM symbol: PM ▼

Region | Number | Currency | Time | Date |

Settings [Navigation Icons] ok

Regional Settings

Short date: 8/8/12
 Long date: Wednesday, August 08, 2012

Short date: M/d/yy
 Date separator: /
 Long date: dddd, MMMM dd, y
 Calendar type: Gregorian Calendar

Region | Number | Currency | Time | Date |

Remove Programs

Start > Settings > System > Remove Programs

This panel is used to uninstall programs. The Remove Program listing is for all programs installed by ActiveSync or a CAB file. Programs installed by a package file are not included in this list.

Settings [Navigation Icons] ok

Remove Programs

Programs in storage memory:

[Empty List Box]

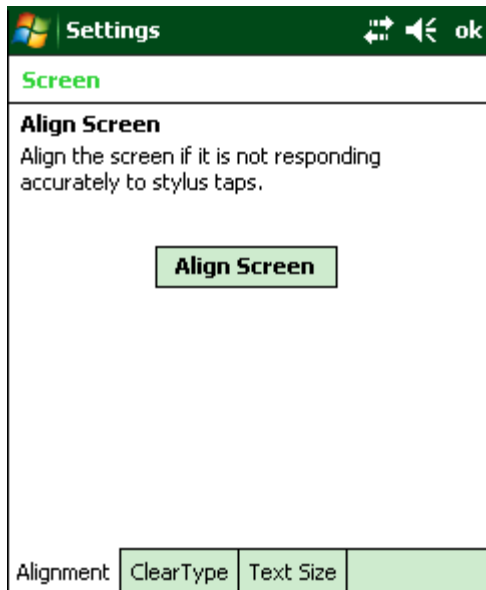
Remove

Total storage memory available: 13195K

Screen

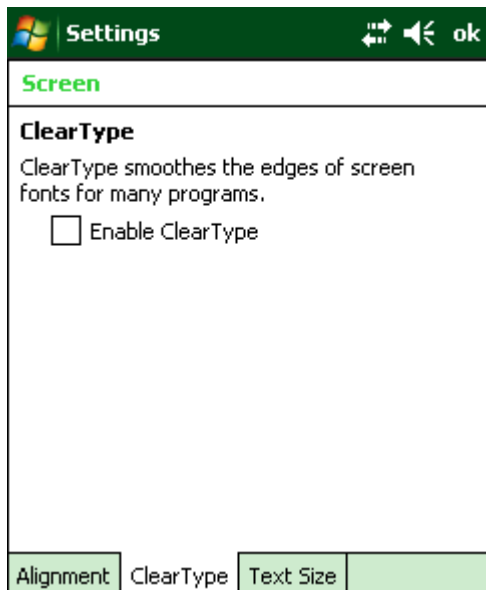
Start > Settings > System > Screen

Alignment



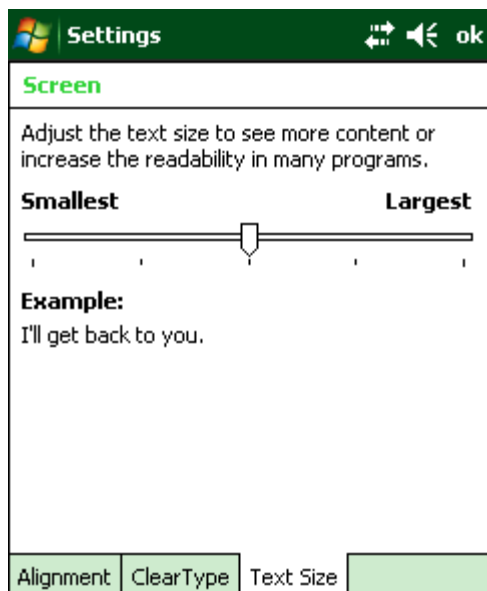
Tap the Align Screen button. The align screen opens and displays a large cross-hair in the middle of the screen. Tap the middle of the cross-hair as it moves around the screen. When the process is complete, the Align Screen is displayed. Tap ok and the changes are saved. The new alignment is in effect immediately.

Clear Type



Tap the Enable ClearType checkbox to enable this option. The default setting is Disabled (unchecked).

Text Size



Tap the marker and slide it across the bar. As the marker moves, the example text increases or decreases. Tap ok and the change is saved. The new text size is in effect immediately.

Task Manager

Start > Settings > System > Task Manager

This panel displays all running tasks as well as the CPU bandwidth being used by each task.

Application	Mem	CPU
ActiveSync	436K	0 %
Word Mobile	236K	0 %
Calendar	144K	0 %
File Explorer	108K	0 %
Task Manager	76.0K	0 %

Clicking on the column headings at the top of the screen sorts the tasks by the contents of that column. Clicking the same heading a second time reverses the sort order of that column.

Right-clicking on an application name displays a popup menu with the following choices:

- Switch To – Switch to the highlighted task. Double-clicking on the task name also performs this function.
- End Task – End the selected task only.
- End All Tasks – End all tasks.

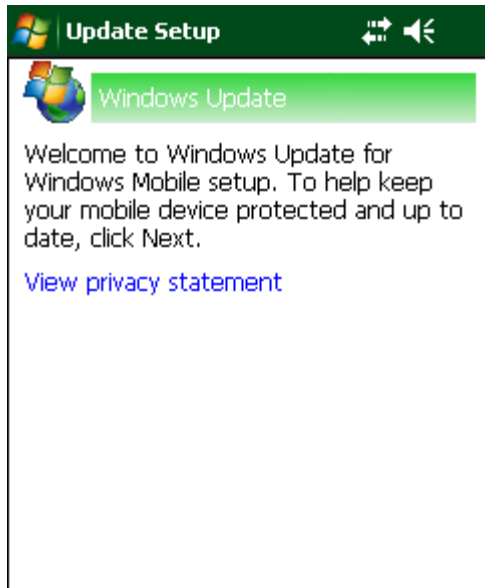
The list is reset by cold boot.

IMPORTANT – Any Windows Mobile program that has been run, even if the program has been exited, remains in memory ready to run again. If memory runs out, the programs are released from memory. However, to avoid out of memory operational problems, it is best to manually terminate unwanted tasks using this option.

Windows Update

Start > Settings > System > Windows Update

Configure Windows Update to check for updates to the Windows Mobile operating system. Requires an active Internet connection.



Click Next to configure Windows Update.

The default setting is "Manual", manually download and install important updates.

Automatic checking for updates is available.

Click Finish to end the Windows Update setup wizard. Click ok to close Windows Update.

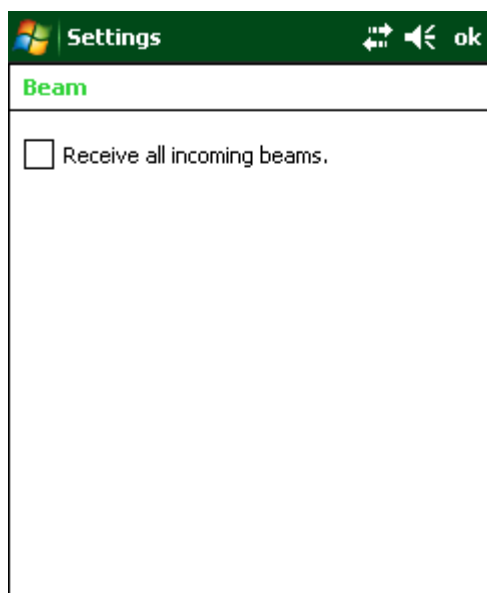
Connections Panel

Beam

Start > Settings > Connections > Beam

Enable or disable receiving OBEX (oBject EXchange) data beams, either by IrDA (Infrared Data Association) or Bluetooth.

Note: The MX8 does not support beaming.

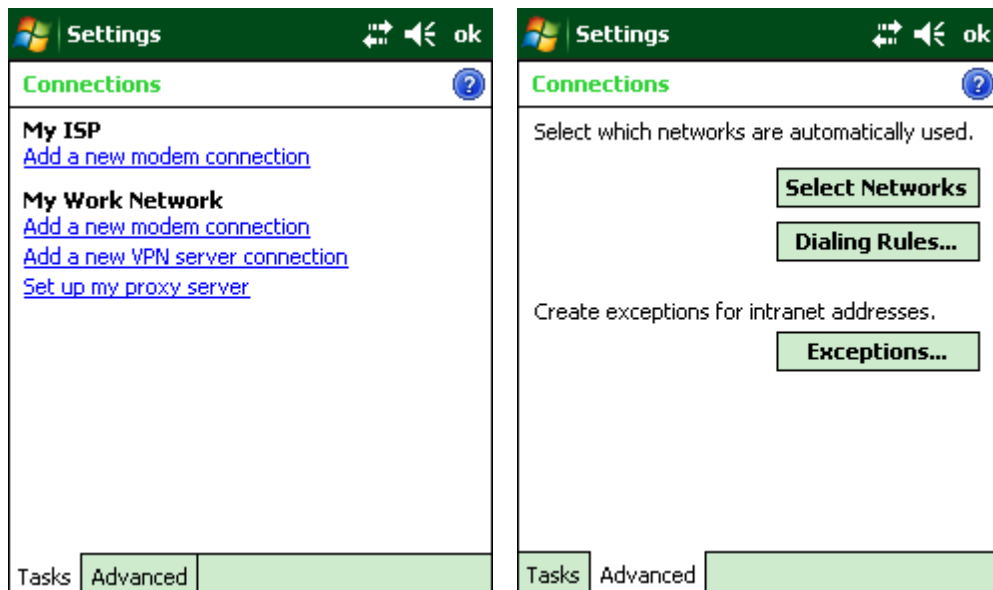


The default setting for Beam Settings is Disabled as the MX8 does not support beaming.

Connections

Start > Settings > Connections > Connections

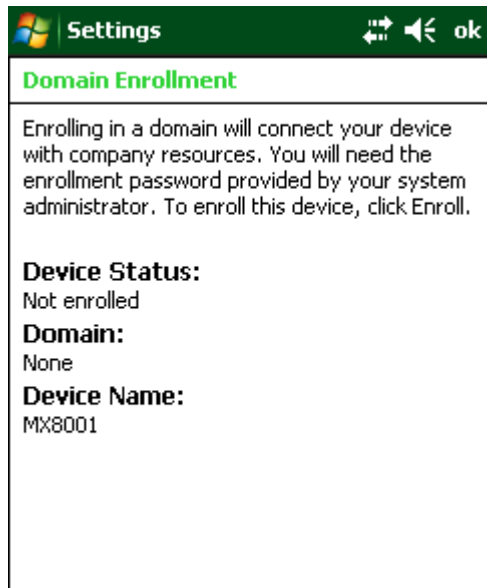
Configure connections to a host PC.



Domain Enroll

Start > Settings > Connections > Domain Enroll

Enroll in Active Directory.

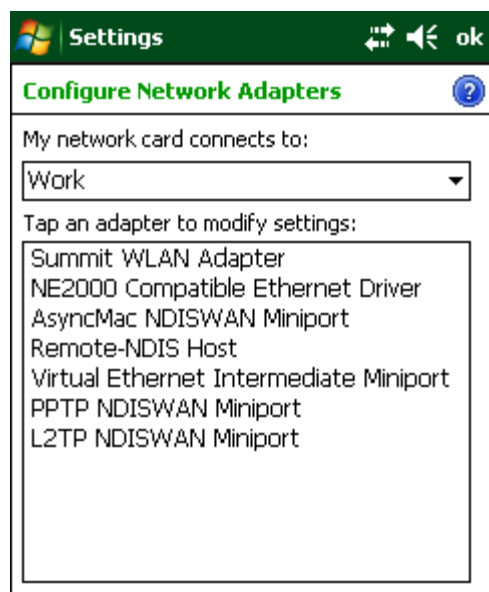


To begin enrollment, click on Enroll in the Status bar. Contact your system administrator for the applicable information to complete the screens.

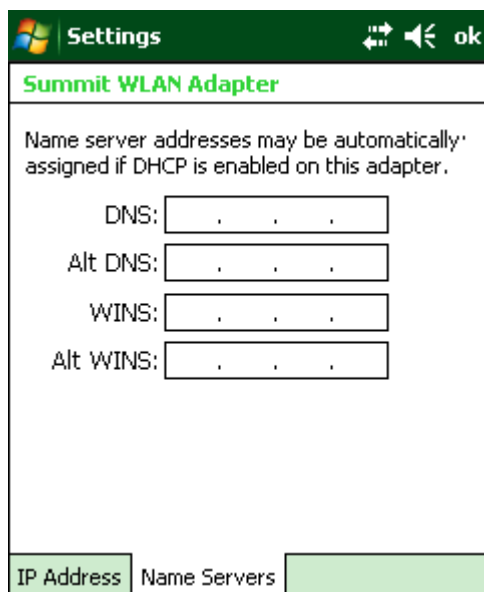
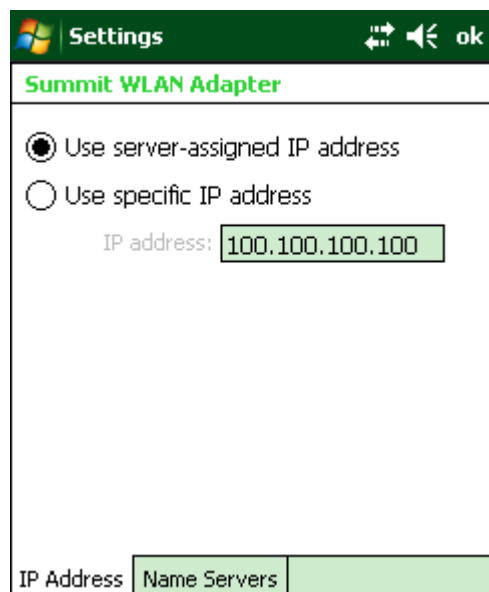
Wi-Fi (Network Adapters)

Start > Settings > Connections > Wi-Fi

When the Summit Configuration Utility is managing network connections, this panel displays a list of network adapters. The list is based on drivers installed in the registry whether the adapter is actually supported by the hardware or not.



To configure a network card, click on the adapter name. Enter the IP address (or select server assigned IP address) and the name server addresses.



Wi-Fi (Network Access)

Start > Settings > Connections > Wi-Fi

The Wi-Fi icon is not always displayed. When the Summit Client Utility (SCU) is controlling wireless settings (**Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi**), the Wi-Fi icon is not displayed in Connections.

When the Summit Client Utility is set for Third Party Config, the Wi-Fi icon is displayed.

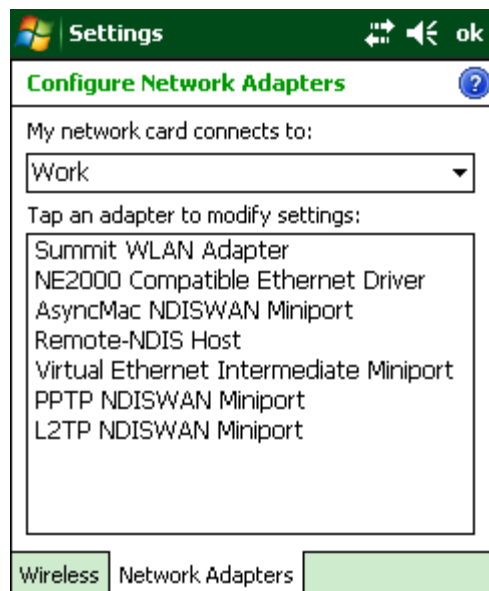
Wireless

For details on the Wireless Manager, see [Wireless Network Configuration](#) (page 10-1).



Network Adapters

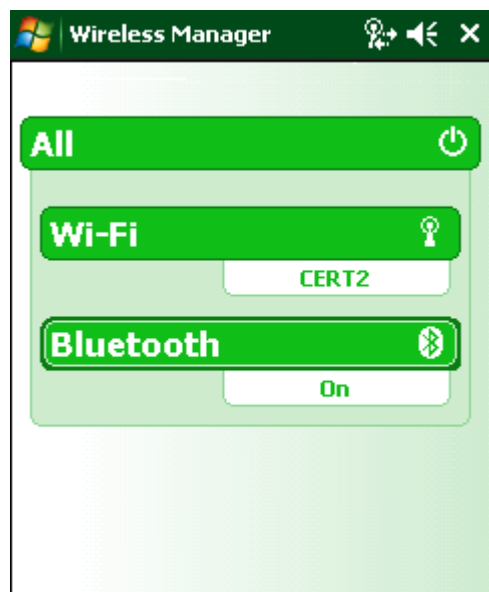
See the previous Network Adapters section for more details.



Wireless Manager

Start > Settings > Connections > Wireless Manager

Provides information on the currently connected wireless network(s).



If more than one wireless device is being managed, the All bar is displayed. Tap the All bar to disable/enable all wireless devices at once.

Wi-Fi

If a Wi-Fi (802.11) radio is present, the Wi-Fi bar indicates the status of the Wi-Fi connection, such as:

Off	The Wi-Fi radio is off
On	The Wi-Fi radio is on (the default setting)
Unavailable	No Wi-Fi networks are available
Available	Wi-Fi networks are available but not connected
Connecting	The radio is connecting to a Wi-Fi network
SSID	The SSID of the connected Wi-Fi network when managed by Wireless Manager
Network Card	When the radio is connected and managed by the Summit Client Utility

If the Wi-Fi radio is Off, tapping the Wi-Fi bar turns the radio On. Once the radio is On, the status may cycle through other states such as Available and Connecting before reporting a connection status such as the SSID.

If the Wi-Fi radio is in any other state than Off, tapping the Wi-Fi bar turns the radio Off.

Bluetooth

If Bluetooth is present, the Bluetooth bar indicates the status of the connections, such as:

Off	The Bluetooth radio is off (the default setting)
On	The Bluetooth radio is on
Visible	The MX8 is discoverable

If the Bluetooth radio is Off, tapping the Bluetooth bar turns the radio On. Once the radio is On, it may cycle to Visible if the MX8 is discoverable.

If the Bluetooth radio is in any other state than Off, tapping the Bluetooth bar turns the radio Off.

*Note: Tap **Start > Help** for context sensitive Windows Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Help.*

Using ActiveSync

Once a relationship (partnership) has been established with Connect (on a desktop computer), ActiveSync will synchronize using the wireless link, serial port, or USB on the MX8.

Requirement : ActiveSync (version 4.5 or higher for Windows XP host computers) must be resident on the host (desktop/laptop) computer. Windows Mobile Device Center is required for a Windows Vista or higher host computer. ActiveSync/Windows Mobile Device Center for the host computer is available from the Microsoft website. Follow their instructions to locate, download and install ActiveSync/Windows Mobile Device Center on your host computer.

Note: For readability in this section, ActiveSync will be used in instructions and explanations. If you have a Windows Vista or greater operating system on your host computer, replace ActiveSync with Windows Mobile Device Center.

Using Microsoft ActiveSync version 4.5 or higher, you can synchronize information on your computer with the MX8 and vice versa. Synchronization compares the data on your mobile device with your host computer and updates both with the most recent data.

For example, you can:

- Synchronize Microsoft Word and Microsoft Excel files between your mobile device and PC. Your files are automatically converted to the correct format.
- Back up and restore your device data.
- Copy (rather than synchronize) files between your mobile device and host computer.
- Control when synchronization occurs by selecting a synchronization mode. For example, you can synchronize continually while connected to your host computer or only when you choose the synchronize command.
- Select which information types are synchronized and control how much data is synchronized.

By default, ActiveSync does not automatically synchronize all types of information. Use ActiveSync Options to specify the types of information you want to synchronize. The synchronization process makes the data (in the information types you select) identical on your desktop computer and your device.

If an information type is selected that does not exist on the MX8, the data appears to transfer, but it is ignored by the MX8 and not loaded

When installation of ActiveSync is complete on your desktop computer, the ActiveSync Setup Wizard begins and starts the following processes:

- connect your device to your desktop computer,
- set up a partnership so you can synchronize information between your device and your desktop computer, and
- customize your synchronization settings.

Because ActiveSync is already installed on your mobile device, your first synchronization process begins automatically when you finish setting up your desktop computer in the ActiveSync wizard. For more information about using ActiveSync on your host computer, open ActiveSync, then open ActiveSync Help.

Initial Install

Initial installation / relationship must be established using serial RS232 or USB cable connection between the MX8 and the PC. Once a relationship has been established, tap **Start > Help > ActiveSync** for help.

Install ActiveSync on Host Computer

1. Install ActiveSync (or Windows Mobile Device Center) using the Getting Started Disc. The Getting Started screen should automatically display when the CD is inserted in the PC. If it does not, browse to the CD and click on Start.exe.
2. Select Setup and Installation. Click on ActiveSync to install ActiveSync on your PC.
3. Alternatively, you can go to the Microsoft Windows website and locate the ActiveSync download.
4. Follow the instructions in the ActiveSync Wizard.
5. Check that **Start > Programs > ActiveSync > Connections** has the correct connection selected. Refer to "Serial Connection" or "USB Connection". Note that USB is the default connection type.
6. When installation of ActiveSync is complete on your PC, the ActiveSync Setup Wizard on the PC begins and it begins searching for a connected device.
7. Because ActiveSync is already installed on your mobile device, your first synchronization process begins automatically when you finish setting up your PC in the ActiveSync wizard and, using the USB cable, connect your mobile device to the PC.

Serial Connection

Tap the **Start > Settings > ActiveSync > Connections** on the MX8. From the popup list, choose 57600 Default.

Note: The default is USB. Using serial ActiveSync at 115 Kb/s is not recommended.

This will set up the MX8 to use COM 1. Tap ok to save and exit.

USB Connection

Tap the **Start > Settings > ActiveSync > Connections** on the MX8. From the popup list, choose USB.

This will set up the MX8 to use the USB configuration. Tap ok to save and exit.

Connect -- Initial Install Process

Connect the correct** cable to the PC (the host) and the MX8 (the client). The MX8 attempts to connect as soon as the cable connection is made.

** USB Client to PC/Laptop	MX8051CABLE
** Serial Client to PC/Laptop	MX8055CABLE

When the desktop/laptop computer and the MX8 successfully connect, the initial ActiveSync process is complete.

Synchronize Files

Use the following information to backup data files from the mobile device to a desktop or laptop PC using the appropriate cables and Microsoft's ActiveSync.

MX8 and PC Partnership

- An ActiveSync partnership between the PC and MX8 has been established.
- Make sure the checkbox is checked for Synchronize all PCs using this connection (**Start > Settings > ActiveSync > Connections**).

Serial Port Transfer

- A PC with an available serial port. The PC must be running Windows XP or greater.
- "Allow connections to one of the following" is checked and COM1 (or other appropriate PC COM port) is selected from the list on the ActiveSync Connections Settings screen on the PC.
- For best results use the MX8 multipurpose RS232 and Power cable.

USB Transfer

- A PC with an available USB port. The PC must be running Windows XP or greater.
- “Allow USB connections” is checked on the ActiveSync Connections Settings screen on the PC.
- For best results use the MX8 multipurpose USB and Power cable.
- “Allow USB connection with this desktop computer” is checked.

Explore

From the ActiveSync Dialog on the Desktop PC, tap the Explore button, which allows you to explore the mobile device from the PC side, with some limitations.

You can copy files to or from the mobile device using Windows drag-and-drop.

You will not be allowed to delete files or copy files out of the \Windows folder on the mobile device. (Technically, the only files you cannot delete or copy are ones marked as system files in the original build of the Windows image. This, however, includes most of the files in the \Windows folder).

Disconnect

USB Connection

- Disconnect the USB cable from the MX8.
- Tap the status bar icon in the lower right hand corner of the PC's status bar. Then tap the Disconnect button.

IMPORTANT – Do not put the mobile device into Suspend while connected via USB. The device will be unable to connect to the host PC when it resumes operation.

Serial Connection

- Disconnect the RS232 cable from the MX8.
- Put the MX8 into Suspend by tapping the red Power button.
- Tap the status bar icon in the lower right hand corner of the PC's status bar. Then tap the Disconnect button.

Cold Boot and Loss of Host Re-connection

ActiveSync assigns a partnership between a client and a host computer. A partnership is defined by two objects – a unique computer name and a random number generated when the partnership is first created. An ActiveSync partnership between a unique client can be established to two hosts.

When the mobile device is cold booted, the random number is deleted – and the partnership with the last one of the two hosts is also deleted. The host retains the random numbers and unique names of all devices having a partnership with it. Two clients cannot have a partnership with the same host if they have the same name. If the cold booted mobile device tries to reestablish the partnership with the same host PC, a new random number is generated for the mobile device and ActiveSync will insist the unique name of the mobile device be changed. If the mobile device is associated with a second host, changing the name will destroy that partnership as well. This can cause some confusion when re-establishing partnerships with hosts.

ActiveSync Help

Issue:

ActiveSync on the host says that a device is trying to connect, but it cannot identify it.

Solution:

One or more control lines are not connected. This is usually a cable problem, but on a laptop or other device, it may indicate a bad serial port.

If the MX8 is connected to a PC by a cable, disconnect the cable from the MX8 and reconnect it again.

Check that the correct connection is selected (Serial or USB "Client" if this is the initial ActiveSync installation).

Issue:

ActiveSync indicator on the host (disc in the toolbar tray) turns green and spins as soon as you connect the cable, before tapping the Connect icon (or REPLLOG.EXE in the Windows directory).

Solution:

One or more control lines are tied together incorrectly. This is usually a cable problem, but on a laptop or other device, it may indicate a bad serial port.

ActiveSync indicator on the host turns green and spins, but connection never occurs.

Baud rate of connection is not supported or detected by host. Check that the correct connection is selected (Serial or USB "Client" if this is the initial ActiveSync installation).

-or-

Incorrect or broken data lines in cable.

Issue:

ActiveSync indicator on the host remains gray

Solution 1: ActiveSync icon on the PC does not turn green after connecting USB cable from MX8.

1. Disconnect MX8 USB cable from PC.
2. Suspend/Resume the MX8.
3. In **ActiveSync > File > Connection Settings** on PC disable **Allow USB Connections** and click **OK**.
4. Re-enable 'Allow USB Connections' on the PC and click **OK**.
5. Reconnect USB cable from MX8 to PC.

Solution 2: The host doesn't know you are trying to connect. May mean a bad cable, with no control lines connected, or an incompatible baud rate. Try the connection again, with a known good cable.

Testing connection with a terminal emulator program, or a serial port monitor:

You can use HyperTerminal or some other terminal emulator program to do a rough test of ActiveSync. Set the terminal emulator to 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bits, and the same baud rate as the connection on the mobile device. After double-tapping REPLLOG.EXE on the mobile device, the word "CLIENT" appears on the display in ASCII format. When using a serial port monitor, you see the host echo "CLIENT", followed by "SERVER". After this point, the data stream becomes straight (binary) PPP.

Configuring with HSM Connect

HSM Connect allows a user to view the MX8 screen remotely from a PC using an ActiveSync connection:

Requirement : ActiveSync (version 4.5 or higher for Windows XP host computers) must be resident on the host (desktop/laptop) computer. Windows Mobile Device Center is required for a Windows Vista or higher host computer. ActiveSync/Windows Mobile Device Center for the host computer is available from the Microsoft website. Follow their instructions to locate, download and install ActiveSync/Windows Mobile Device Center on your host computer.

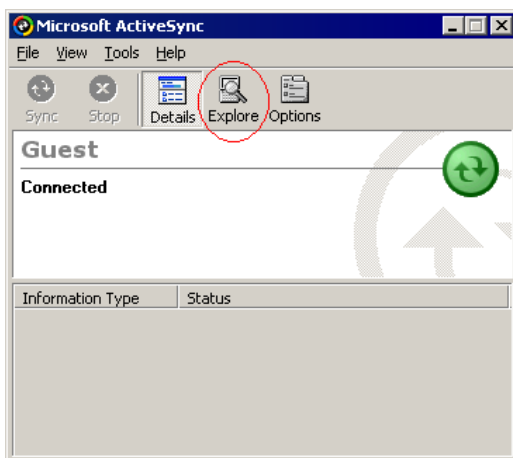
Note: For readability in this section, ActiveSync will be used in instructions and explanations. If you have a Windows Vista or greater operating system on your host computer, replace ActiveSync with Windows Mobile Device Center.

ActiveSync is already installed on the MX8. HSM Connect is available for download from the *Getting Started Disc*. The MX8 is preconfigured to establish a USB ActiveSync connection to a PC when the proper cable is attached to the MX8 and the PC.

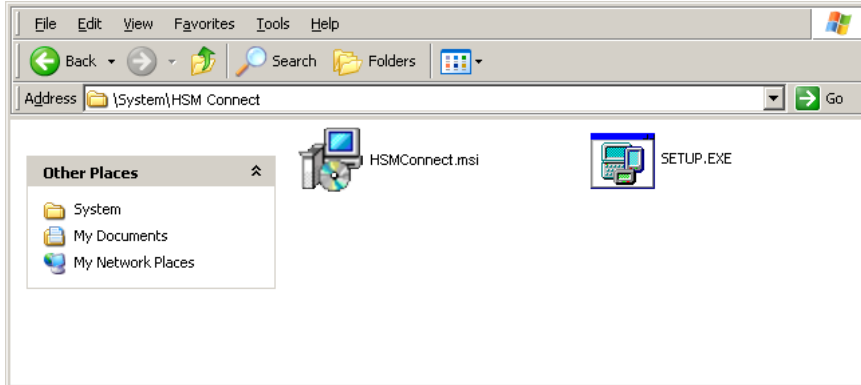
If the MX8 uses a serial port for ActiveSync, it will be necessary to configure the MX8 to use the serial port.

Install HSM Connect

1. Install Microsoft ActiveSync on a PC with a USB port.
2. Power up the MX8.
3. Connect the MX8 to the PC using the proper connection cable. Once connected, the ActiveSync dialog box appears. If using the USB connection, the ActiveSync connection is automatically established. If using a serial connection, it is necessary to initiate the connection from the MX8.
4. Select "No" for partnership when prompted. Dismiss any ActiveSync dialog boxes warning a partnership is not set up. It is not necessary to establish a partnership to use HSM Connect. However, if a partnership is desired for other reasons, one may be established now. More details on partnerships are included in ActiveSync Help.
5. When the ActiveSync screen appears, select Explore.



6. An explorer window is displayed for the MX8. Browse to the \System\HSM Connect folder. HSM Connect is available on the *Getting Started Disc*.



7. Select and copy the HSMConnect.msi and Setup.exe files from the MX8 to the user PC. Note the location chosen for the files.
8. Close the ActiveSync explorer dialog box. Do not disconnect the MX8 ActiveSync connection.
9. Execute the Setup.exe file that was copied to the user PC. This setup program installs the HSMConnect utility.



10. Follow the on screen installation prompts. The default installation directory is C:\Program Files\Honeywell Inc\HSM Connect.
11. When the installation is complete, create a desktop shortcut to the following file: C:\Program Files\Honeywell Inc\HSM Connect\HSMConnect.exe. If a different directory was selected during installation, substitute the appropriate directory.
12. HSMConnect is now installed and ready to use.

Using HSM Connect

1. If an ActiveSync connection has not been established, connect the MX8 to the PC.
2. Double-click the HSMConnect icon that was created on the desktop.
3. HSM Connect launches.



4. Click the OK button to dismiss the About CERDisp dialog box on the desktop by clicking the OK button in the HSM Connect window on the PC desktop. The dialog box automatically times out and disappears after approximately 30 seconds.
5. The MX8 can now be configured from the HSMConnect window. Input from the PC's mouse and keyboard are recognized as if they were attached to the MX8.
6. When the remote session is completed, terminate the HSMConnect program by selecting **File > Exit** or clicking on the **X** in the upper right hand corner to close the application, then disconnect the ActiveSync cable.

Note: After using HSM Connect, the MX8 cannot go into Suspend mode until after a warmboot. If using Power Management on a MX8, always warmboot the MX8 when finished using HSM Connect.

AppLock (Application Locking)

Introduction

Start > Settings > System > Administration

AppLock is designed to be run on Honeywell certified Windows based devices only. The AppLock program is pre-loaded.

Configuration parameters are specified by the AppLock Administrator for the mobile device end-user. AppLock is password protected by the Administrator.

End-user mode locks the end-user into the configured application or applications. The end user can still reboot the mobile device and respond to dialog boxes. The administrator-specified applications are automatically launched in the specified order and run in full screen mode when the device boots up.

When the mobile device is reset to factory default values, for example after a cold reset, the Administrator may need to reconfigure the AppLock parameters.

The assumption, in this section, is that the first user to power up a new MX8 is the system administrator.

AppLock Administrator panel file Launch option does not inter-relate with similarly-named options contained in other MX8 System Panels.

Note: A few applications do not follow normal procedures when closing. AppLock cannot prevent this type of application from closing, but is notified that the application has closed. For these applications, AppLock immediately restarts the application (see Auto Re-Launch) which causes the screen to flicker. If this type of application is being locked, the administrator should close all other applications before switching to end-user mode to minimize the screen flicker.

AppLock is updated periodically as new options become available. Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) for help, downloads and update availability.

Setup a New Device

Before you begin setting up a new device assign a default input method (Input Panel, Transcriber, or custom input method).

Devices ordered with the AppLock feature are shipped to boot in Administration mode with no default password, thus when the device is first booted, the user has full access to the device and no password prompt is displayed. After the administrator specifies applications to lock, a password is assigned and the device is rebooted or the hotkey is pressed, the device switches to end-user mode.

The process to configure a new device is as follows:

1. Insert a fully charged battery and press the Power button.
2. Connect an external power source to the device (if required).
3. Adjust screen display, audio volume and other parameters if desired. Install accessories (e.g., handstrap, stylus).
4. Tap **Start > Settings > System > Administration** icon.
5. Assign a Switch Key (hotkey) sequence for AppLock. See Security Panel.
6. Assign an application on the Application tab screen. More than one application can be assigned.
7. Assign a password on the Security tab screen.
8. Select a view level on the Status tab screen, if desired.
9. Tap OK.
10. Press the Switch Key sequence to launch AppLock and lock the configured application(s).

The device is now in end-user mode.

Administration Mode

Administration mode gives full access to the mobile device, hardware and software configuration options.

The administrator must enter a valid password (when a password has already been assigned) before access to Administration mode and configuration options are allowed. The administrator can configure the following options:

- Create/change the keystroke sequence to activate administrator access.
- Create/change the password for administrator access.
- Assign the name of the application, or applications, to lock.
- Select the command line of the application to lock.

In addition to these configuration options, the administrator can view and manage the status logs of AppLock sessions.

Administrator default values for this device:

- Administrator Hotkey: Shift+Ctrl+A
- End-User Switching Hotkey: Ctrl+Space
- Password: none
- Application path and name: none
- Application command line: none

End User Mode

End-user mode locks the end-user into the configured application or applications. The end user can still reboot and respond to dialog boxes. Each application is automatically launched and runs in full screen mode when the device boots up.

The user cannot unintentionally or intentionally exit the application nor can the end user execute any other applications. Normal application exit or switching methods and all Microsoft OS key combinations, such as close (X) icon, File Exit, File Close, Alt-F4, Alt-Tab, etc. are disabled. The Microsoft OS desktop icons, menu bars, task bar and system trays are not visible or accessible. Task Manager is not available.

If the end-user selects File/Exit or Close from the applications menu bar, the menu is cleared and nothing else happens; the application remains active. Nothing happens when the end-user clicks on the Close icon on the application's title bar and the application remains active.

Note: A few applications do not follow normal procedures when closing. AppLock cannot prevent this type of application from closing, but is notified that the application has closed. For these applications, AppLock immediately restarts the application which causes the screen to flicker. If this type of application is being locked, the administrator should close all other applications before switching to end user mode to minimize the screen flicker.

Windows accelerator keys such as Alt-F4 are disabled.

Passwords

A password must be configured. If the password is not configured, a new device switches into Administration mode without prompting for a password. In addition to the Administrator hotkey press, a mode switch occurs if inaccurate information has been configured or if mandatory information is missing in the configuration.

There are several situations that display a password prompt after a password has been configured.

If the configured hotkey is pressed, the password prompt is displayed. In this case the user has 30 seconds (and within three attempts) to enter a password. If a valid password is not entered within 30 seconds, the password prompt is dismissed and the device returns to end-user mode.

All other situations that present the password prompt do not dismiss the prompt -- this is because the other situations result in invalid end-user operation.

These conditions include:

- If inaccurate configuration information is entered by the administrator, i.e., an application is specified that does not exist.
- If the application name, which is mandatory for end-user mode, is missing in the configuration.
- Invalid installation of AppLock (e.g., missing DLLs).
- Corrupted registry settings.

To summarize, if an error occurs that prevents AppLock from switching to user mode, the password will not timeout and AppLock will wait until the correct password is entered.

End-User Switching Technique



A checkmark indicates applications currently active or available for Launching by the user. When Keyboard is selected, the MX8 default input method (Input Panel, Transcriber, or custom input method) is activated.

The check to the left of the application name indicates that the application is active.

If the application is listed but does not have a checkmark to the left of the application name, this means the application is configured in AppLock and can be manually launched by clicking on the application name in the list.

Using a Stylus Tap

When the mobile device enters end-user mode, a Switchpad icon (it looks like three tiny windows one above the other) is displayed in the lower right corner of the display. The Switchpad is always visible on top of the application in focus. However, if only one application is configured in AppLock and the Input Panel is disabled the Switchpad is not visible.

When the user taps the Switchpad icon, a menu is displayed showing the applications available to the user. The user can tap an application name in the popup menu and the selected application is brought to the foreground. The previous application continues to run in the background. Stylus taps affect the application in focus only. When the user needs to use the Input Panel, they tap the Keyboard option. Input Panel taps affect the application in focus only.

See [Manual \(Launch\)](#) (page 6-7) and [Allow Close](#) (page 6-7).

Using the Switch Key Sequence

One switch key sequence (or hotkey) is defined by the administrator for the end-user to use when switching between locked applications. This is known as the **Activation key**. The Activation key is assigned by the Administrator using the Global Key parameter.

When the switch key sequence is pressed on the keypad, the next application in the AppLock configuration is moved to the foreground and the previous application moves to the background. The previous application continues to run in the background. End-user key presses affect the application in focus only.

Hotkey (Activation hotkey)

The default Activation key is **Ctrl+Spc**. The key sequence switches the focus between one application and another. entry affects the application running in the foreground only. Note that the system administrator may have assigned a different key sequence to use when switching applications.

End User Internet Explorer (EUIE)

AppLock supports applications that utilize Internet Explorer, such as .HTML pages and JAVA applications. The end user can run an application by entering the application name and path in Internet Explorer's address bar.

To prevent the end user from executing an application using this method, the address bar and Options settings dialog are restricted in Internet Explorer. This is accomplished by creating an Internet Explorer that is used in end user mode: End-user Internet Explorer (EUIE.EXE). The EUIE executes the Internet Explorer application in full screen mode which removes the address bar and status bar. The Options Dialog is also removed so the end user cannot re-enable the address bar.

The administrator specifies the EUIE by checking the Internet checkbox in the Application tab of the Administrator applet. The internet application should then be entered in the Application text box.

When the Internet checkbox is enabled, the Menu and Status check boxes are available.

Enabling the Menu checkbox displays the EUIE menu which contains navigation functions like Back, Forward, Home, Refresh, etc., functions that are familiar to most Internet Explorer users. When the Menu checkbox is blank, the EUIE menu is not displayed and Navigation functions are unavailable.

When the Status checkbox is enabled, the status bar displayed by EUIE gives feedback to the end-user when they are navigating the Internet.

If the standard Internet Explorer that is shipped with the mobile device is desired, it should be treated like any other application. This means that IEXPLORER.EXE should be specified in the Application text box and the internet application should be entered in the command line. In this case, do not check the Internet checkbox.

Application Configuration

The default Administrator Hotkey sequence is Shift+Ctrl+A.

Administrator mode allows access to all features on the device. When the hotkey is pressed to switch into Administrator mode, a password prompt is displayed (if a password has been configured). A password must be entered within 30 seconds (and within three tries) or the password prompt is removed and the device remains in end-user mode with the focus returned to the locked application. Without entry of a valid password, the switch into Administrator mode will not occur.

The password prompt is displayed if a password has been configured. When the valid password is entered, the Administration panel is displayed. When a valid password is not entered within 30 seconds, the user is returned to the System Panel.

If a password has not been configured, the Administrator panel is displayed.

Important: Before setting up multiple instances of the same application, make sure the targeted software application will allow two instances to run at the same time.

Application Panel

Use the Application tab options to select the applications to launch when the device boots up in End-user Mode.

If no application is specified when the Administrator Panel is closed, the MX8 reboots into Administrator mode. If a password has been set, but an application has not been specified, the user will be prompted for the password before entering administration mode. The password prompt remains on the display until a valid password is entered.

Option	Explanation
Filename	Default is blank. Move the cursor to the Filename text box and either type the application path or tap the Browse button (the ... button). The standard Windows Browse dialog is displayed. After selecting the application from the Browse dialog, tap OK.
Title	Default is blank. Enter the Title to be associated with the application. The assumption is that multiple copies of the same application may need unique titles in order to differentiate them in the Switchpad.
Arguments	Default is blank. Enter the command line parameters for the application in the Arguments text box.
Order	Default is 1. Enter the Order in which the application is to be loaded or presented to the end-user. Applications are launched in lowest to highest number order and do not need to be sequential.
Internet	Default is Disabled. Enable the Internet checkbox to use the End-user Internet Explorer (EUIE.EXE). When the checkbox is enabled, the Internet Menu and Internet Status are available. See the section titled End-user Internet Explorer (EUIE) for more details.
Launch Button	See following section titled Launch Button (page 6-6).
Global Key	Default is Ctrl+Spc. Select the Global Key key sequence the end-user is to press when switching between applications. The Global Key default key sequence must be defined by the AppLock Administrator. The Global key is presented to the end-user as the Activation key.
Global Delay	Default is 10 seconds. Enter the number of seconds that Applications must wait before starting to run after reboot. Note: Delay (Global) may not be available in all versions of AppLock. You can simulate a Global Delay function by setting a delay for the first application (lowest Order) launched and setting the delay to 0 for all other applications. See Boot Options.
Input Panel	Default is Disabled. Enable (check) to show the Keyboard option on the Switchpad menu. When enabled the input panel cannot be enabled or disabled for each individual application, and is available to the user for all configured applications.
Clear Button	Tap the Clear button to clear all currently displayed Filename or Application information. The Global settings are not cleared.

Option	Explanation
Scroll Buttons	Use the left and right scroll buttons to move from application setup screen to application setup screen. The left and right buttons update the information on the screen with the previous or next configured application respectively.

Launch Button

When clicked, displays the Launch options panel for the Filename selected on the Administration panel.

Launch order is determined by the Order specified in the Application tab. The Order value does not have to be sequential.

Auto At Boot

Default is Enabled.

Auto At Boot

When enabled, automatically launches (subject to the specified Delay in seconds) the application after the unit is rebooted. If a Delay in seconds is specified, AppLock waits for the specified period of time to expire before launching the application. The Delay default value is 10 seconds; valid values are between 0 “no delay” and a maximum of 999 seconds.

Retries

This is the number of times the application launch will be retried if a failure occurs when the application is automatically launched at bootup. Valid values are between 0 (no tries) and 99 tries or -1 for infinite. Infinite tries ends when the application successfully launches. The default is 0 retries.

Delay

This timer is the time that AppLock waits prior to the initial launch of the selected application when it is automatically launched at bootup. Delay default is 10 seconds. Valid values are between 0 seconds (no delay) and 999 seconds.

The Auto At Boot delay is associated for each application; it will be either a value specified by the Administrator or it will be the delay default value. At startup, when a delay has been assigned for each application, AppLock waits for the delay associated with the first application to expire before launching the first application then AppLock waits for the delay associated with the second application to expire before launching the second application. AppLock continues in this manner until all applications are launched.

Note: A “Global Delay” can be accomplished by setting a timed delay for the first application to be launched (by lowest Order number) and no delay (0 seconds) for all other applications.

Note: Launch order is determined by the Order specified in the Application tab. The Order value does not have to be sequential.

Auto Re-Launch

Default is Enabled.

When enabled for a specific application, automatically re-launches it (subject to the specified Auto Re-Launch Delay in seconds) after it terminates. This option allows the Administrator to disable the re-launch operation. AppLock cannot prevent all applications from closing. When an application that AppLock cannot prevent from closing terminates, perhaps because of an error condition, AppLock re-launches the application when this option is enabled.

Note: If Allow Close is enabled and both Auto Re-launch and Manual (Launch) are disabled, the application cannot be restarted for the end-user or by the end-user after the application terminates.

Retries

Default is 0 tries. Retries is the number of times AppLock will try to re-launch the application. The retry count is reset after an application is successfully launched and controlled by AppLock. Valid values are between 0 (no tries) and 99 tries or -1 for infinite. Infinite tries ends when the application successfully launches.

Delay

Default is 0 seconds (no delay). Delay is the amount of time AppLock waits prior to re-launching an application that has terminated. The delay is specified in seconds. Valid values are between 0 (no delay) and 99 seconds.

AppLock must also be configured to automatically re-launch an application. To AppLock, application termination by the end-user is indistinguishable from application termination for any other reason.

Manual (Launch)

Default is Disabled. Enabling this option allows the end-user to launch the specified application(s). Upon bootup completion an application with Manual enabled is listed on the Switchpad accompanied by a checkmark that indicates the application is currently active or available for Launching. When an application name is tapped by the end-user, the application is launched (if inactive) and brought to the foreground.

Applications set up with Manual (Launch) enabled may or may not be launched at bootup. This function is based on the application's Auto At Boot setting. The applications have been listed as approved applications for end-user manual launch using the Switchpad menu structure. The approved applications are listed on the Switchpad. A checkmark indicates the applications active status.

When Manual (Launch) is disabled for an application, and Allow Close is enabled for the application, when the end-user closes the specific application it is no longer available (shown) on the Switchpad.

When Auto At Boot and Manual (Launch) are both disabled for a specific application, the application is 1) not placed on the list of approved applications for end-user manual launch and 2) never launched, and 3) not displayed on the Switchpad.

Match

Default is blank (Match is not used).

AppLock works by associating display windows with the launched process ID. If an application uses different process IDs for windows it creates, the Match field must be used.

Use the Match field to specify up to 32 characters of the class name for the application.

- DOS applications using a standard DOS display box should specify *condev_appcls* in the Match textbox.
- Remote Desktop (remote.exe) should specify *TSSHELLWND* in the Match textbox.

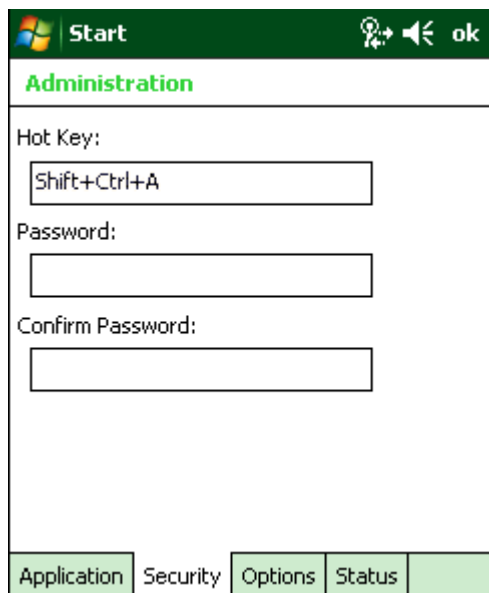
Note: An update may be required to support locking remote.exe.

Allow Close

Default is Disabled. When enabled, the associated application can be closed by the end-user.

This option allows the administrator to configure applications that consume system resources to be terminated if an error condition occurs or at the end-user's request. Error conditions may generate a topmost popup requiring an end-user response, memory resource issues requiring an end-user response, etc. Also at the administrator's discretion, these types of applications can be started manually (see Manual [Launch]) by the end-user.

Security Panel



The screenshot shows a window titled "Start" with a green header bar. Below the header, the word "Administration" is displayed in green. The main area contains three text input fields: "Hot Key:" with the text "Shift+Ctrl+A", "Password:", and "Confirm Password:". At the bottom, there is a tabbed interface with four tabs: "Application", "Security", "Options", and "Status". The "Security" tab is currently selected and highlighted in green.

Setting an Activation Hotkey

Specify the hotkey sequence that triggers AppLock to switch between administrator and user modes and the password required to enter Administrator mode. The default hotkey sequence is Shift+Ctrl+A.

A 2nd key keypress is an invalid keypress for a hotkey sequence.

Move the cursor to the Hot Key text box. Enter the new hot key sequence by first pressing the Shift state key followed by a normal key. The hotkey selected must be a key sequence that the application being locked does not use. The hotkey sequence is intercepted by AppLock and is not passed to the application.

Input from the keyboard or Input Panel is accepted with the restriction that the normal key must be pressed from the keyboard when switching modes. The hotkey sequence is displayed in the Hot key text box with Shift, Alt, and Ctrl text strings representing the shift state keys. The normal keyboard key completes the hotkey sequence. The hotkey must be entered using the keypad. Some hotkeys cannot be entered using the Input Panel. Also, hotkeys entered using the Input Panel are not guaranteed to work properly when switching operational modes.

For example, if the Ctrl key is pressed followed by A, Ctrl+A is entered in the text box. If another key is pressed after a normal key press, the hotkey sequence is cleared and a new hotkey sequence is started.

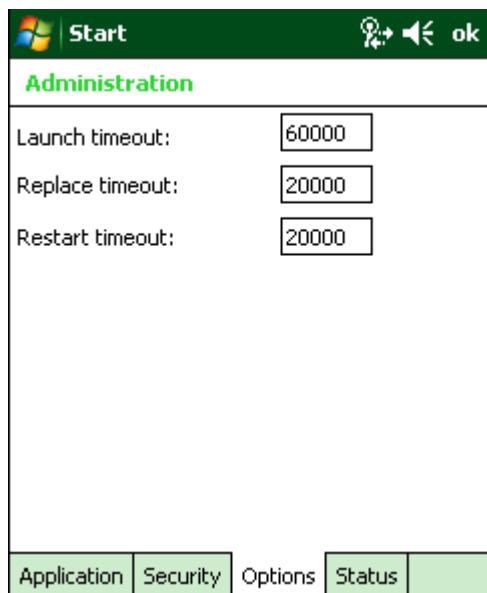
A normal key is required for the hotkey sequence and is unlike pressing the normal key during a mode switch; this key can be entered from the SIP when configuring the key. However, when the hotkey is pressed to switch user modes, the normal key must be entered from the keypad; it cannot be entered from the SIP.

Setting a Password in the Security Panel

Move the cursor to the Password text box. The passwords entered in the Password and Confirm Password fields must match. Passwords are case sensitive.

When the user exits the Administrator panel, the two passwords are compared to verify that they match. If they do not match, a dialog box is displayed notifying the user of the error. After the user closes the dialog box, the Security Panel is displayed and the password can then be entered and confirmed again. If the passwords match, the password is encrypted and saved.

Options Panel



The screenshot shows a window titled 'Start' with a green header bar. Below the header, the word 'Administration' is displayed in green. The main area contains three labels with corresponding input boxes: 'Launch timeout:' with '60000', 'Replace timeout:' with '20000', and 'Restart timeout:' with '20000'. At the bottom, there is a tabbed interface with five tabs: 'Application', 'Security', 'Options' (which is selected), 'Status', and an empty tab.

Administration	
Launch timeout:	60000
Replace timeout:	20000
Restart timeout:	20000

Application Security Options Status

AppLock uses 3 timeout values when locking applications:

Launch timeout -- the time to wait for an application to initially launch before timing out. Default value is 60000 milliseconds (60 seconds).

Replace timeout -- the time to wait for an application to replace the current window with another one before timing out. Default value is 20000 milliseconds (20 seconds).

Restart timeout -- the time to wait for an application to restart itself before timing out. Default value is 20000 milliseconds (20 seconds).

Status Panel

Use the Status panel to view the log of previous AppLock operations and to configure which messages are to be recorded during AppLock operation.

Status information is stored in a specific location on the storage device and in a specific logfile specified by the Administrator. For this reason, the administrator can configure the type of status information that is logged, as well as clear the status information.

Move the cursor to the Filename text box and either type the logfile path or tap the Browse button (the ... button). The standard Windows CE Browse dialog is displayed. After selecting the logfile from the Browse dialog, tap OK.

View

Error

Error status messages are logged when an error occurs and is intended to be used by the administrator to determine why the specified application cannot be locked.

Process

Processing status shows the flow control of AppLock components and is mainly intended for Customer Service when helping users troubleshoot problems with their AppLock program.

Extended

Extended status provides more detailed information than that logged by Process Logging.

All

All messages are displayed.

Note: Tap the Refresh button after changing from one view level to another. The filtered records are displayed, all others are not displayed.

Log

If a level higher than Error is selected, the status should be cleared frequently by the administrator.

In addition to the three view levels the administrator can select that all status information be logged or turn off all status information logging completely. The system default is 'None'; however to reduce registry use, the administrator may want to select 'None' after verifying the configuration. Tap the Clear button to clear the status information from the registry.

- None
- Error
- Processing
- Extended
- All

Save As

When the 'Save As'... button is selected, a standard 'Save As' dialog screen is displayed. Specify the path and filename. If the filename exists, the user is prompted whether the file should be overwritten. If the file does not exist, it is created.

AppLock Help

Issue:

The mobile device won't switch from Administration mode to end-user mode.

Solution:

- If the configuration is valid for one application but not the other, the switch to end-user mode fails. AppLock stays in Administration mode and is stopped until the Administrator password is entered.
- If two copies of the same application are configured, but the application only allows one copy to run at a time, for example Microsoft Pocket Word and RFTerm, the switch to end-user fails. AppLock stays in Administration mode and is stopped until the Administrator password is entered.

Issue:

The hotkey sequence needed is not allowed. What does this mean?

Solution:

When the Administrator is selecting a hotkey sequence to use when switching user modes, they are not allowed to enter key combinations that are reserved by installed software applications. Honeywell has validated RFTerm key combinations ONLY.

When RFTerm is installed on the mobile device and an RFTerm restricted key sequence is specified as a hotkey sequence by the Administrator, the following error message is displayed in a message box:

Selected hotkey is not allowed. Please reenter.

When RFTerm is not installed on the mobile device, the RFTerm keys are not restricted from use.

Issue:

Can't locate the password that has been set by the administrator?

Solution:

Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) for password help.

AppLock Error Messages

Any messages whose first word is an 'ing' word is output prior to the action described in the message. For example, "Switching to admin-hotkey press" is logged after the administrator has pressed the hotkey but prior to starting the switch process.

For all operations that can result in an error, an Error level message is displayed when a failure occurs. These messages contain the word "failure". These messages have a partner Extended level message that is logged which contains the word "OK" if the action completed successfully rather than with an error.

For processing level messages, "Enter..." is logged at the beginning of the function specified in the message and "Exit..." is logged at the end (just before the return) of the function specified in the message.

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Error reading hotkey	The hotkey is read but not required by AppLock.	LOG_EX
Error reading hotkey; using default	A hotkey is required. If there is a failure reading the hotkey, the internal factory default is used.	LOG_ERROR
App Command Line= <Command line>	Command line of the application being locked	LOG_PROCESSING
App= <Application name>	Name of the application being locked	LOG_PROCESSING
dwProcessID= <#>	Device ID of the application being locked	LOG_EX
Encrypt exported key len <#>	Size of encrypt export key	LOG_EX
Encrypt password length= <#>	The length of the encrypted password.	LOG_EX
Encrypted data len <#>	Length of the encrypted password	LOG_EX
hProcess= <#>	Handle of the application being locked	LOG_EX
Key pressed = <#>	A key has been pressed and trapped by the hotkey processing.	LOG_EX
*****	The status information is being saved to a file and the file has been opened successfully.	LOG_EX
Address of keyboard hook procedure failure	AppLock found the kbdhook.dll, but was unable to get the address of the initialization procedure. For some reason the dll is corrupted. Look in the \Windows directory for kbdhook.dll. If it exists, delete it. Also delete AppLock.exe from the \Windows directory and reboot the unit. Deleting AppLock.exe triggers the AppLock system to reload.	LOG_ERROR
Address of keyboard hook procedure OK	AppLock successfully retrieved the address of the keyboard filter initialization procedure.	LOG_EX
Alt pressed	The Alt key has been pressed and trapped by the HotKey processing.	LOG_EX
Alt	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Application handle search failure	The application being locked did not complete initialization.	LOG_ERROR
Application handle search OK	The application initialized itself successfully	LOG_ERROR
Application load failure	The application could not be launched by AppLock; the application could not be found or is corrupted.	LOG_ERROR
Backdoor message received	The backdoor keys have been pressed. The backdoor hotkeys provide a method for customer service to get a user back into their system without editing the registry or reloading the device.	LOG_PROCESSING
Cannot find kbdhook.dll	The load of the keyboard filter failed. This occurs when the dll is missing or is corrupted. Look in the \Windows directory for kbdhook.dll. If it exists, delete it. Also delete AppLock.exe from the \Windows directory and reboot the unit. Deleting AppLock.exe triggers the AppLock system to reload.	LOG_ERROR
Converted Pwd	Converted password from wide to mbs.	LOG_EX

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Could not create event EVT_HOTKEYCHG	The keyboard filter uses this event at the Administrator panel. The event could not be created.	LOG_ERROR
Could not hook keyboard	If the keyboard cannot be controlled, AppLock cannot process the hotkey. This failure prevents a mode switch into user mode.	LOG_ERROR
Could not start thread Hot-KeyMon	The keyboard filter must watch for hot key changes. The watch process could not be initiated.	LOG_ERROR
Ctrl after L or X	Processing the backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Ctrl pressed	The Ctrl key has been pressed and trapped by the HotKey processing.	LOG_EX
Ctrl	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Decrypt acquire context failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt acquired context OK	Decryption process ok.	LOG_EX
Decrypt create hash failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt created hash OK	Decryption process ok.	LOG_EX
Decrypt failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt import key failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt imported key OK	Decryption process ok.	LOG_EX
Encrypt acquire context failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt acquire encrypt context failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt acquired encrypt context OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt create hash failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt create key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt created encrypt hash OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt export key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt export key length failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt exported key OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt failure	The password encryption failed.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt gen key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt generate key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt get user key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt get user key ok	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt hash data failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt hash data from pwd OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt length failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt out of memory for key	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypted data OK	The password has been successfully encrypted.	LOG_EX

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Enter AppLockEnumWindows	In order for AppLock to control the application being locked so it can prevent the application from exiting, AppLock launches the application and has to wait until it has created and initialized its main window. This message is logged when the function that waits for the application initialization is entered.	LOG_EX
Enter DecryptPwd	Entering the password decryption process.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter EncryptPwd	Entering the password encryption processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter FullScreenMode	Entering the function that switches the screen mode. In full screen mode, the taskbar is hidden and disabled.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter GetAppInfo	Processing is at the beginning of the function that retrieves the application information from the registry.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter password dialog	Entering the password dialog processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter password timeout	Entering the password timeout processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter restart app timer	Some application shut down before AppLock can stop it. In these cases, AppLock gets notification of the exit. When the notification is received, AppLock starts a timer to restart the application. This message logs that the timer has expired and the processing is at the beginning of the timer function.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter TaskbarScreenMode	Entering the function that switches the screen to non-full screen mode and enable the taskbar.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter ToAdmin	Entering the function that handles a mode switch into admin mode.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter ToUser	Entering the function that handles the mode switch to user mode	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter verify password	Entering the password verification processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit AppLockEnumWindows-Found	There are two exit paths from the enumeration function. This message denotes the enumeration function found the application.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit AppLockEnumWindows-Not found	There are two exit paths from the enumeration function. This message denotes the enumeration function did not find the application.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit DecryptPwd	Exiting password decryption processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit EncryptPwd	Exiting password encryption processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit FullScreenMode	Exiting the function that switches the screen to full screen.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit GetAppInfo	Processing is at the end of the function that retrieved the application information from the registry.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit password dialog	Exiting password prompt processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit password dialog-cancel	Exiting password prompt w/cancel.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit password dialog-OK	Exiting password prompt successfully.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit password timeout	Exiting password timeout processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit restart app timer	Processing is at the end of the timer function	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit TaskbarScreenMode	Exiting the function that switches the screen mode back to normal operation for the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit ToAdmin	Exiting the function that handles the mode switch into admin mode.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit ToUser	Exiting the user mode switch function.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit ToUser-Registry read failure	The AppName value does not exist in the registry so user mode cannot be entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit verify password-no pwd set	Exiting password verification.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit verify password-response from dialog	Exiting password verification.	LOG_PROCESSING

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Found taskbar	The handle to the taskbar has been found so that AppLock can disable it in user mode.	LOG_PROCESSING
Getting address of keyboard hook init procedure	AppLock is retrieving the address of the keyboard hook.	LOG_PROCESSING
Getting configuration from registry	The AppLock configuration is being read from the registry. This occurs at initialization and also at entry into user mode. The registry must be re-read at entry into user mode in case the administration changed the settings of the application being controlled.	LOG_PROCESSING
Getting encrypt pwd length	The length of the encrypted password is being calculated.	LOG_EX
Hook wndproc failure	AppLock is unable to lock the application. This could happen if the application being locked encountered an error after performing its initialization and shut itself down prior to being locked by AppLock.	LOG_ERROR
Hook wndproc of open app failure	The application is open, but AppLock cannot lock it.	LOG_ERROR
Hot key event creation failure	The Admin applet is unable to create the hotkey notification.	LOG_ERROR
Hot key pressed	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Hot key pressed	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Hot key set event failure	When the administrator changes the hotkey configuration the hotkey controller must be notified. This notification failed.	LOG_ERROR
Hotkey press message received	The user just pressed the configured hotkey.	LOG_PROCESSING
In app hook:WM_SIZE	In addition to preventing the locked application from exiting, AppLock must also prevent the application from enabling the taskbar and resizing the application's window. This message traps a change in the window size and corrects it.	LOG_EX
In app hook:WM_WINDOWPOSCHANGED	In addition to preventing the locked application from exiting, AppLock must also prevent the application from enabling the taskbar and resizing the application's window. This message traps a change in the window position and corrects it.	LOG_EX
Initializing keyboard hook procedure	AppLock is calling the keyboard hook initialization.	LOG_PROCESSING
Keyboard hook initialization failure	The keyboard filter initialization failed.	LOG_ERROR
Keyboard hook loaded OK	The keyboard hook dll exists and loaded successfully.	LOG_EX
L after Ctrl	Processing the backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Loading keyboard hook	When AppLock first loads, it loads a dll that contains the keyboard hook processing. This message is logged prior to the load attempt.	LOG_PROCESSING
Open failure	The status information is being saved to a file and the file open has failed. This could occur if the file is write protected. If the file does not exist, it is created.	LOG_ERROR
Open registry failure	If the Administration registry key does not exist, the switch to user mode fails because the AppName value in the Administration key is not available.	LOG_ERROR
Opened status file	The status information is being saved to a file and the file has been opened successfully.	LOG_EX
Out of memory for encrypted pwd	Not enough memory to encrypt the password.	LOG_ERROR
pRealTaskbarWndProc already set	The taskbar control has already been installed.	LOG_EX
Pwd cancelled or invalid-remain in user mode	The password prompt was cancelled by the user or the maximum number of failed attempts to enter a password was exceeded.	LOG_EX

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Read registry error-hot key	The hotkey registry entry is missing or empty. This is not considered an error. The keyboard hook uses an embedded default if the value is not set in the registry.	LOG_ERROR
Read registry failure-app name	AppName registry value does not exist or is empty. This constitutes a failure for switching into user mode.	LOG_ERROR
Read registry failure-Command Line	AppCommandLine registry entry is missing or empty. This is not considered an error since command line information is not necessary to launch and lock the application.	LOG_ERROR
Read registry failure-Internet	The Internet registry entry is missing or empty. This is not considered an error since the Internet value is not necessary to launch and lock the application.	LOG_ERROR
Registering Backdoor MSG	The AppLock system communicates with the keyboard hook via a user defined message. Both AppLock.exe and Kbdhook.dll register the message at initialization.	LOG_PROCESSING
Registering Hotkey MSG	The AppLock system communicates with the keyboard hook via a user defined message. Both Applock.exe and Kbdhook.dll register the message at initialization.	LOG_PROCESSING
Registry read failure at re-enter user mode	The registry has to be read when entering user mode is the AppName is missing. This user mode entry is attempted at boot and after a hotkey switch when the administrator has closed the application being locked or has changed the application name or command line.	LOG_ERROR
Registry read failure at re-enter user mode	The registry has to be read when switching into user mode. This is because the administrator can change the settings during administration mode. The read of the registry failed which means the Administration key was not found or the AppName value was missing or empty.	LOG_ERROR
Registry read failure	The registry read failed. The registry information read when this message is logged is the application information. If the Administration key cannot be opened or if the AppName value is missing or empty, this error is logged. The other application information is not required. If the AppName value is not available, AppLock cannot switch into user mode.	LOG_ERROR
Reset system work area failure	The system work area is adjusted when in user mode to cover the taskbar area. The system work area has to be adjusted to exclude the taskbar area in administration mode. AppLock was unable to adjust this area.	LOG_ERROR
Shift pressed	The Shift key has been pressed and trapped by the HotKey processing.	LOG_EX
Shift	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Show taskbar	The taskbar is now being made visible and enabled.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-backdoor	The system is currently in user mode and is now switching to admin mode. The switch occurred because of the backdoor key presses were entered by the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-hotkey press	The system is currently in user mode and is now switching to admin mode. The switch occurred because of a hotkey press by the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-kbd-hook.dll not found	The keyboard hook load failed, so AppLock switches to admin mode. If a password is specified, the password prompt is displayed and remains until a valid password is entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-keyboard hook initialization failure	If the keyboard hook initialization fails, AppLock switches to admin mode. If a password is specified, the password prompt is displayed and remains until a valid password is entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-registry read failure	See the explanation of the "Registry read failure" above. AppLock is switching into Admin mode. If a password has been configured, the prompt will be displayed and will not be dismissed until a valid password is entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to Taskbar-ScreenMode	In administration mode, the taskbar is visible and enabled.	LOG_EX
Switching to user mode	The registry was successfully read and AppLock is starting the process to switch to user mode.	LOG_PROCESSING

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Switching to user-hotkey press	The system is currently in admin mode and is now switching to user mode. The switch occurred because of a hotkey press by the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING
Taskbar hook failure	AppLock is unable to control the taskbar to prevent the locked application from re-enabling it.	LOG_ERROR
Taskbar hook OK	AppLock successfully installed control of the taskbar.	LOG_EX
Timeout looking for app window	After the application is launched, AppLock must wait until the application has initialized itself before proceeding. The application did not start successfully and AppLock has timed out.	LOG_ERROR
ToUser after admin, not at boot	The user mode switch is attempted when the device boots and after the administrator presses the hotkey. The mode switch is being attempted after a hotkey press.	LOG_EX
ToUser after admin-app still open	The switch to user mode is being made via a hotkey press and the administrator has left the application open and has not made any changes in the configuration.	LOG_EX
ToUser after admin-no app or cmd line change	If user mode is being entered via a hotkey press, the administrator may have left the configured application open. If so, AppLock does not launch the application again unless a new application or command line has been specified; otherwise, it just locks it.	LOG_EX
Unable to move desktop	The desktop is moved when switching into user mode. This prevents them from being visible if the application is exited and restarted by the timer. This error does not affect the screen mode switch; processing continues.	LOG_ERROR
Unable to move taskbar	The taskbar is moved when switching into user mode. This prevents them from being visible if the application is exited and restarted by the timer. This error does not affect the screen mode switch; processing continues.	LOG_ERROR
Unhook taskbar wndproc failure	AppLock could not remove its control of the taskbar. This error does not affect AppLock processing	LOG_ERROR
Unhook wndproc failure	AppLock could not remove the hook that allows monitoring of the application.	LOG_ERROR
Unhooking taskbar	In administration mode, the taskbar should return to normal operation, so AppLock's control of the taskbar should be removed.	LOG_EX
Unhooking wndproc	When the administrator leaves user mode, the device is fully operational; therefore, AppLock must stop monitoring the locked application.	LOG_EX
WM_SIZE adjusted	This message denotes that AppLock has readjusted the window size.	LOG_EX
X after Ctrl+L	Processing the backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Ret from password <#>	Return value from password dialog.	LOG_EX
Decrypt data len <#>	Length of decrypted password.	LOG_EX
Window handle to enum-windows=%x	The window handle that is passed to the enumeration function. This message can be used by engineering with other development tools to trouble shoot application lock failures.	LOG_EX
WM_WINDOWPOSCHG adjusted=%x	Output the window size after it has been adjusted by AppLock	LOG_EX

Introduction

Note: Bluetooth panels may be titled LXEZ Pairing or EZPair. Functions are the same on both.

Discover and manage pairing with nearby Bluetooth devices.

Setting	Default
	None
Settings	
	Default value is Off (at initial startup)
Computer is connectable	Enabled
Computer is discoverable	Disabled
Prompt if devices request to pair	Enabled
Continuous search	Disabled
Filtered Mode	Enabled (checked)
Printer Port on COM9:	Disabled (unchecked) by default in both Filtered and Non Filtered Modes. The option is dimmed in Non Filtered Mode.
Logging	Disabled
Computer Friendly Name	[System Name]
Reconnect	
Report when connection lost	Enabled
Report when reconnected	Disabled
Report failure to reconnect	Enabled
Clear Pairing Table on boot	Disabled
Auto Reconnect on Boot	Enabled
Auto Reconnect	Enabled

Bluetooth icon state and Bluetooth device icon states change as Bluetooth devices are discovered, paired, connected and disconnected. There may be audible or visual signals as paired devices re-connect with the mobile device.

- The default Bluetooth setting is Off. If the Discover button is not active, check the Bluetooth button status on the Settings tab.
- The MX8 cannot be discovered by other Bluetooth devices when the Computer is discoverable option is disabled (unchecked) on the Settings panel.
- Other Bluetooth devices cannot be discovered if they have been set up to be Non-Discoverable or Invisible.
- When Filtered Mode is enabled, the MX8 can pair with one Bluetooth scanner and one Bluetooth printer.
- When Filtered Mode is disabled, the MX8 can pair with up to four Bluetooth devices, with a limit of one scanner, one printer, two HID (one Mouse, one Keyboard), one PAN device and one DUN device connected at the same time.
- It is not necessary to disconnect a paired scanner and printer before a different scanner or printer is paired with the MX8.
- The target Bluetooth managed device should be as close as possible (line of sight - no more than 32.8 feet or 10 meters) to the MX8 during the pairing process.

Assumptions:

- The System Administrator has Discovered and Paired targeted Bluetooth devices for the MX8.
- The MX8 operating system has been upgraded to the revision level required for Bluetooth client operation.

-
- An application (or API) is available that will accept data from serial Bluetooth devices.

HID	Human Interface Device	HID profiles used by Bluetooth keyboards, mice, pointing devices and remote monitoring devices.
PAN	Personal Area Networking	PAN profiles, unmodified Ethernet payloads (using BNEP) can exchange packets between Bluetooth devices. PANU is a PAN User service that uses either the NAP or the GN service.
DUN	Dial-Up Networking	DUN provides access to the Internet and other dial-up services using Bluetooth technology.

Initial Configuration

1. Select **Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth** or tap the Bluetooth icon on the Start screen. The EZPair application opens.
2. Tap the Settings Tab.
3. Tap the Turn On Bluetooth button. The button name changes to Turn Off Bluetooth.
4. Change the Computer Friendly Name at the bottom of the Settings display. The Bluetooth MX8 default name is determined by the factory installed software version. Best practice is to assign every MX8 a unique name (up to 32 characters) before Bluetooth Discovery is initiated.
5. Check or uncheck the MX8 Bluetooth options on the Settings tab.
6. Tap the OK button to save your changes.

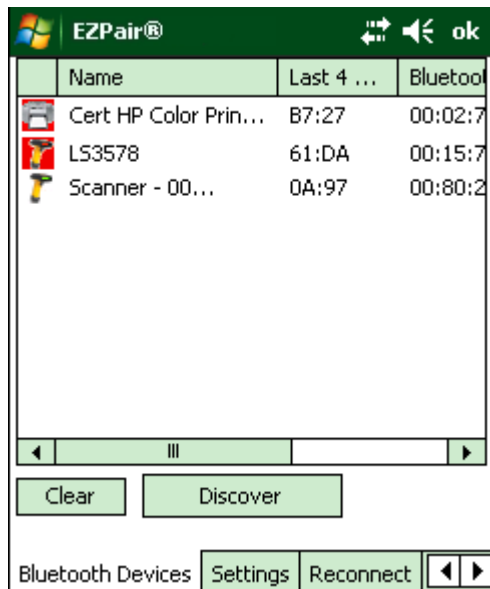
Subsequent Use

Start screen and Bluetooth device Icon states change as Bluetooth devices are discovered, pair, connect and disconnect. A Start page Bluetooth icon with a red background indicates Bluetooth is active and not paired with any device. A Bluetooth managed device icon with a red background indicates a disconnected paired device.

1. Tap the Bluetooth icon on the Start screen desktop to open the EZPair application.
2. Tap the Bluetooth Devices tab.
3. Tap the Discover button. When the Bluetooth module begins searching for in-range Bluetooth devices, the button name changes to Stop. Tap the Stop button to cancel the Discover function at any time.
4. The discovered devices are listed in the Bluetooth Devices window.
5. Tap to highlight a Bluetooth device in the Discovered window and double-tap to open the device properties menu.
6. Tap Pair as Scanner to set up the MX8 to receive scanner data.
7. Tap Serial Device to set up the MX8 to communicate with a Bluetooth serial device.
8. Tap Pair as Printer to set up the MX8 to send data to the printer.
9. Tap Disconnect to stop pairing with the device. Once disconnected, tap Delete to remove the device name and data from the MX8 Bluetooth Devices list, if desired. The device is deleted from the list after the OK button is clicked.
10. Upon successful pairing, the selected device may react to indicate a successful connection. The reaction may be an audio signal from the device, flashing LED on the device, or a dialog box is placed on the MX8 display.
11. Whenever the MX8 is turned On, all previously paired, active, Bluetooth devices in the vicinity are paired, one at a time, with the MX8. If the devices cannot connect to the MX8 before the re-connect timeout time period expires (default is approximately 20 seconds for each paired device) there is no indication of the continuing disconnect state if Report Failure to Reconnect is disabled.

Bluetooth Devices Panel

A device previously discovered and paired with the MX8 is shown in the Bluetooth Devices panel.



Note: When an active paired device, not the MX8, enters Suspend Mode, is turned Off or leaves the MX8 Bluetooth scanning range (approximately 32 feet or 10 meters), the Bluetooth connection between the paired device and the MX8 is lost. There may be audible or visual signals as paired devices disconnect from the MX8.

The discovered paired devices may or may not be identified with an icon. Discovered devices without an icon can be paired; the Bluetooth panel assigns an icon to the device name.

An icon with a red background indicates the device's Bluetooth connection is inactive.

An icon with a white background indicates the device is connected to the MX8 and the device's Bluetooth connection is active.

Doubletap a device in the list to open the device properties menu. The target device does not need to be active.

Clear Button

Deletes all devices from the Device table that are not currently paired. A dialog box is presented, "Delete *all disconnected devices*? Yes/No". Tap the Yes button to remove disconnected or deleted devices from the device table. The devices are removed from the Device table after any reboot sequence and when EZPair is re-launched without a reboot sequence. Tap the No button to make no changes.

Discover Button

Note: Change the Computer Friendly Name at the bottom of the Settings display. The Bluetooth MX8 default name is determined by the factory installed software version. Best practice indicates assigning every MX8 a unique name (up to 32 characters) before Bluetooth Discovery is initiated.



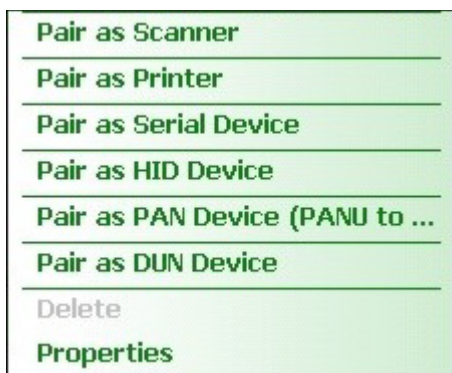
Tap the Discover button to locate all discoverable Bluetooth devices in the vicinity. The Discovery process also queries for the unique identifier for each device discovered. It may be necessary to tap the Turn on Bluetooth button on the Settings tab before beginning discovery as Bluetooth is Off by default.

Stop Button

Tap Stop at any time to end the Discover and Query for Unique Identifier functions. Devices not paired are not shown after a Suspend/Resume function.

Bluetooth Device Menu

Click on a device in the Discover list to highlight it. Doubletap the highlighted device to display the Bluetooth Device right click menu. The Bluetooth device does not need to be active.



Filtered Mode Disabled



Filtered Mode Enabled

Right Click Menu Options

Pair as Scanner

Receive data from the highlighted Bluetooth scanner or Bluetooth imager.

Pair as Printer

Send data to the highlighted Bluetooth printer.

Pair as Serial Device

Communicate with the highlighted serial Bluetooth device. This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.

Pair as HID Device

Communicate with the highlighted HID (Human Interface Device). This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.

Pair as PAN Device

Communicate with the highlighted PAN (Personal Area Networking) device. This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.

Pair as DUN Device

Communicate with the highlighted DUN (Dial-Up Networking) device. This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.

Disconnect

Stop the connection between the MX8 and the highlighted paired Bluetooth device.

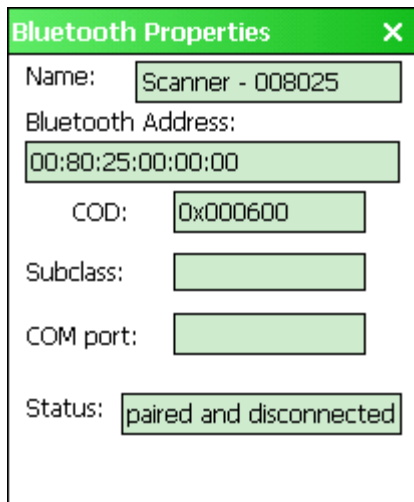
Delete

Remove an unpaired device from the Bluetooth device list. The highlighted device name and identifier is removed from the MX8 Bluetooth Devices panel after the user taps OK.

Properties

More information on the highlighted Bluetooth device.

Bluetooth Properties



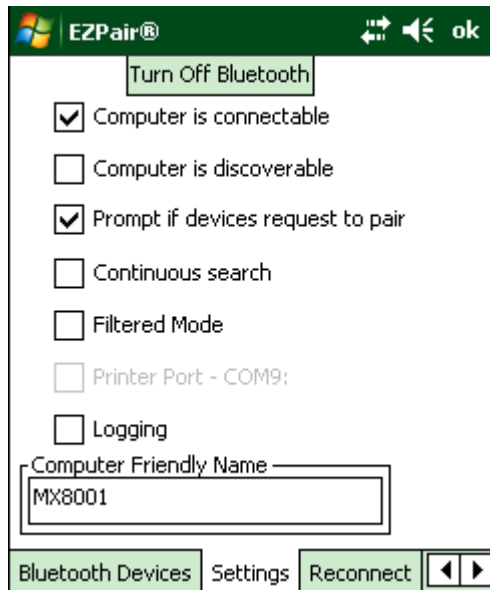
Bluetooth Properties	
Name:	Scanner - 008025
Bluetooth Address:	00:80:25:00:00:00
COD:	0x000600
Subclass:	
COM port:	
Status:	paired and disconnected

Data on the Bluetooth Properties panel cannot be changed by the user. The data displayed is the result of the device Query performed during the Discovery process.

The Status dialog box reflects the current state of the highlighted device.

Settings Panel

Note: These options can still be checked or unchecked whether Bluetooth connection is enabled or disabled



Turn On Bluetooth (Button)

Tap the button to toggle the Bluetooth client On or Off. The button title changes from Turn Off Bluetooth to Turn On Bluetooth.

The default value is Disabled (Bluetooth client is Off).

Options

Computer is connectable

This option is Enabled (checked) by default.

Disable (uncheck) this option to inhibit MX8 connection with all Bluetooth devices.

Computer is discoverable

This option is Disabled by default.

Enable this option to ensure other devices can discover the MX8. When this option is enabled the Windows Mobile Wireless Manager displays Bluetooth status as “Visible”.

Prompt if devices request to pair

This option is Enabled by default.

A dialog box appears on the MX8 screen notifying the user a Bluetooth device requests to pair with the MX8.

The requesting Bluetooth device does not need to have been Discovered by the MX8 before the pairing request is received. Tap the Accept button or the Decline button to remove the dialog box from the screen.

In some cases, if a Bluetooth device is already paired this setting cannot be changed. If this is the case, an error message is displayed and the option is not changed. The Bluetooth device must be disconnected before changing this setting.

Continuous Search

This option is Disabled by default.

When enabled, the Bluetooth connection never stops searching for a device it has paired with when the connection is broken (such as the paired device entering Suspend mode, going out of range or being turned off). When disabled, after being enabled, the MX8 stops searching after 30 minutes. This option draws power from the MX8 Main Battery.

Filtered Mode

This option is Disabled by default.

Determines whether the Bluetooth client discovers and displays all serial Bluetooth devices in the vicinity (Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked) or the discovery result displays Bluetooth scanners and printers only (Filtered Mode is enabled/checked).

When Filtered Mode is disabled, the MX8 can pair with up to four Bluetooth devices, with a limit of one Bluetooth scanner, one Bluetooth printer, one PAN, and one DUN. More than one HID device can be connected but only one Bluetooth mouse and one Bluetooth keyboard.

A Restart is required every time Filtered Mode is toggled on and off.

Printer Port - COM9

This option is Disabled by default. This option assigns Bluetooth printer connection to COM9 instead of COM19. To enable this option, Filtered Mode must be enabled.

Logging

This option is Disabled by default.

When logging is enabled, the MX8 creates bt_log.txt and stores it in the \System folder. Bluetooth activity logging is added to the text file as activity progresses. A bt_log_bak.txt file contains the data stored by bt_log.txt prior to reboot.

During a reboot process, the MX8 renames bt_log.txt to bt_log_bak.txt. If a file already exists with that name, the existing file is deleted, the new bt_log_bak.txt file is added and a new bt_log.txt is created.

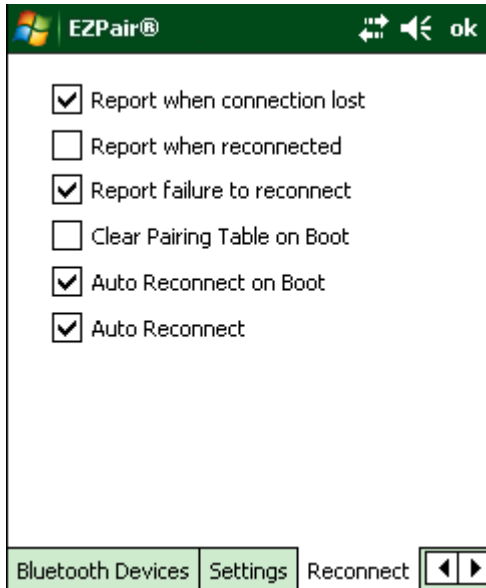
Computer Friendly Name

Default: Computer System Name (**System Panel > Device Name** tab).

The name, or identifier, entered in this space by the System Administrator is used exclusively by Bluetooth devices and during Bluetooth communication.

Reconnect Panel

Note: These options can still be checked or unchecked whether Bluetooth connection is enabled or disabled.



Options

Report when connection lost

This option is Enabled (checked) by default.

There may be an audio or visual signal when a connection between a paired, active device is lost.

A visual signal may be a dialog box placed on the display notifying the user the connection between one (or all) of the paired Bluetooth devices has stopped. Tap the ok button to remove the dialog box from the screen.

Report when reconnected

This option is Disabled (unchecked) by default.

There may be an audio or visual signal when a connection between a paired, active device is made.

A visual signal may be a dialog box placed on the display notifying the user the connection between one (or all) of the paired Bluetooth devices has resumed. Tap the ok button to remove the dialog box from the screen.

Report failure to reconnect

This option is Enabled (checked) by default.

The default time delay is 30 minutes. This value cannot be changed by the user.

There may be an audio or visual signal when a connection between a paired, active device fails to re-connect. A visual signal may be a dialog box placed on the display notifying the user the connection between one (or all) of the previously paired Bluetooth devices has failed.

Tap the X button or ok button to close the dialog box.

Possible reasons for failure to reconnect: Timeout expired without reconnecting; attempted to pair with a device that is currently paired with another device; attempted to pair with a known device that moved out of range or was turned off; attempted to pair with a known device but the reason why reconnect failed is unknown.

Clear Pairing Table on Boot

This option is Disabled (unchecked) by default.

When enabled (checked), all previous paired information is deleted upon any reboot sequence and no devices are reconnected.

When enabled (checked) Auto Reconnect on Boot is automatically disabled (dimmed).

Auto Reconnect on Boot

This option is Enabled (checked) by default. All previously paired devices are reconnected upon any reboot sequence. When disabled (unchecked), no devices are reconnected upon any reboot sequence.

Auto Reconnect

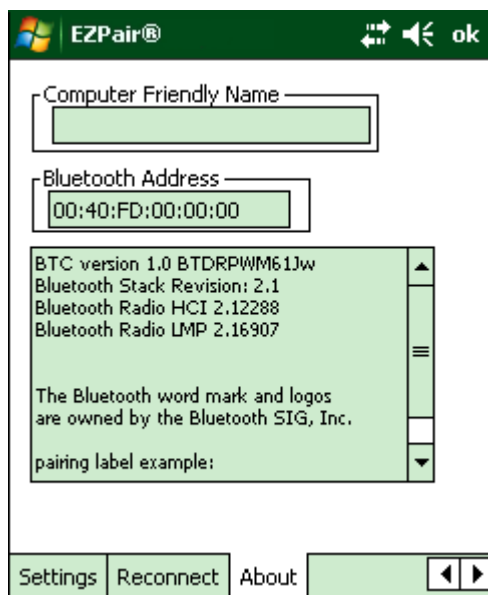
This option is Enabled (checked) by default. This option controls the overall mobile Bluetooth device reconnect behavior. When Auto Reconnect is disabled (unchecked), Auto Reconnect on Boot is automatically disabled and dimmed.

When Auto Reconnect is disabled (unchecked), no devices are reconnected in any situation. The status of Auto Reconnect on Boot is ignored and no devices are reconnected on boot. The status of Clear Pairing Table on Boot controls whether the pairing table is populated on boot.

When Auto Reconnect is enabled (checked) and Auto Reconnect on Boot is disabled (unchecked), devices are not reconnected on boot, but are reconnected in other situations (example: return from out-of-range).

When Auto Reconnect is enabled (checked) and Clear Pairing Table on Boot is enabled (checked), devices are not reconnected on boot, but are reconnected in other situations (example: return from out-of-range). The pairing table is cleared on boot. The status of *Auto Reconnect on Boot* is ignored and the option is automatically disabled (unchecked) and dimmed.



About Panel



This panel lists the assigned Computer Friendly Name (that other Bluetooth devices may discover during their Discovery and Query process), the Bluetooth device MAC address, and software version levels. The data cannot be edited by the user.

Easy Pairing and Auto-Reconnect

The Bluetooth module can establish relationships with new devices after the user taps the Discover button. It can auto-reconnect to devices previously known but which have gone out of range and then returned within range.

Taskbar Icon	Legend
	MX8 is connected to one or more of the targeted Bluetooth device(s).
	MX8 is not connected to any Bluetooth device. MX8 is ready to connect with any Bluetooth device. MX8 is out of range of all paired Bluetooth device(s). Connection is inactive.

Note: Configuration elements are persistent and stored in the registry.

Setup the Bluetooth module to establish how the user is notified by easy pairing and auto-reconnect events.

AppLock, if installed, does not stop the end-user from using the Bluetooth application, nor does it stop other Bluetooth-enabled devices from pairing with the MX8 while AppLock is in control.

The Windows Mobile Wireless Manager also indicates the status of the Bluetooth radio:

- On – The Bluetooth radio is on.
- Off – The Bluetooth radio is off
- Visible – “Computer is discoverable” is checked on the Settings tab.

Bluetooth Bar Code Reader Setup

Refer to the mobile Bluetooth scanner manufacturer's User Guide; it may be available on the manufacturer's web site.

This section describes the interaction and setup for a mobile Bluetooth laser scanner or laser imager connected to the MX8 using Bluetooth functions.

- The MX8 must have the Bluetooth hardware and software installed. An MX8 operating system upgrade may be required.
- If the MX8 has a Bluetooth address identifier bar code label affixed, then Bluetooth hardware and software are installed.
- The mobile Bluetooth laser scanner / laser imager battery is fully charged.
- The MX8 batteries are fully charged. Alternatively, the MX8 may be cabled to AC/DC power.
- *Important:* The bar code numbering examples in this segment are not real and should not be created or scanned with a Bluetooth scanner.
- To open the EZPair program, tap **Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth** or tap the Bluetooth icon on the Today screen.

Lnk800440fd01020 - Sample



Locate the bar code label, similar to the one shown above, attached to the MX8. The label is the Bluetooth address identifier for the MX8.

The mobile Bluetooth scanner / imager requires this information before discovering, pairing, connecting or disconnecting can occur.

Note: The MX8 Bluetooth address identifier label should be protected from damage (rips, tears, spills, soiling, erasure, etc.) at all times. It may be required when pairing, connecting, and disconnecting new Bluetooth bar code readers.

MX8 with Label

If the MX8 has a Bluetooth address bar code label attached, follow these steps:

1. Scan the Bluetooth address bar code label, attached to the MX8, with the Bluetooth mobile scanner.
2. If this is the first time the Bluetooth scanner has scanned the MX8 Bluetooth label, the devices are paired. If the devices do not pair successfully, go to the next step.
3. Open the EZPair panel.
4. Tap Discover. Locate the Bluetooth scanner in the Discovery panel.
5. Doubletap the Bluetooth scanner until the right-mouse-click menu appears.
6. Select Pair as Scanner to pair the MX8 with the Bluetooth mobile scanner.

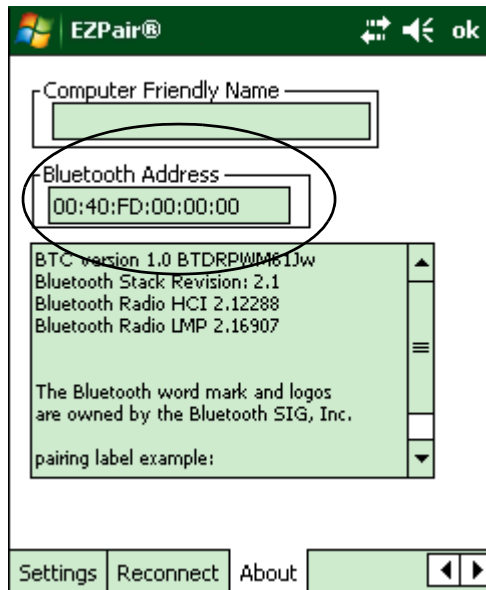
The devices are paired. The Bluetooth bar code reader responds with a series of beeps and LED flashes.

After scanning the MX8 Bluetooth label, if there is no beep and no LED flash from the Bluetooth device, the devices are currently paired.

MX8 without Label

If the MX8 Bluetooth address bar code label does not exist, follow these steps to create a unique Bluetooth address bar code for the MX8:

1. First, locate the MX8 Bluetooth address on the About tab.



2. Next, create a Bluetooth address bar code label for the MX8. Free bar code creation software is available for download on the world wide web. Search using the keywords "bar code create".

The format for the bar code label is as follows:

- Bar code type must be Code 128.
- FNC3 character followed by string Uppercase L, lowercase n, lowercase k, uppercase B and then the Bluetooth address (12 hex digits, no colons). For example, LnkB0400fd002031.

3. Create and print the label.
4. Scan the MX8 Bluetooth address bar code label with the mobile Bluetooth bar code reader.

The devices are paired. The Bluetooth bar code reader responds with a series of beeps and LED flashes. Refer to the following section titled [Bluetooth Reader Beep and LED Indications](#) (page 7-13). After scanning the MX8 Bluetooth label, if there is no beep and no LED flash from the mobile Bluetooth device, the devices are currently paired.

Bluetooth Reader Beep and LED Indications

Bluetooth Remote Device Beep Type

Beep Type from Mobile Bluetooth Device	Beep Pattern
Acknowledge label	1 beep
Label rejected	2 beeps at low frequency
Transmission error	Beep will sound high-low-high-low
Link successful	Beep will sound low-medium-high
Link unsuccessful	Beep will sound high-low-high-low

Bluetooth Remote Device LED

LED on Mobile Bluetooth Device	Behavior
Yellow LED blinks at 2 Hz	Linking in progress
Off	Disconnected or unlinked
Yellow LED blinks at 50 Hz	Bluetooth transmission in progress
Yellow LED blinks at the same rate as the paging beep (1 Hz)	Paging
Green LED blinks once a second	Disabled indication

Upon startup, if the mobile Bluetooth device sounds a long tone, this means the device has not passed its automatic Selftest and has entered isolation mode. If the device is reset, the sequence is repeated. Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) for help with a Bluetooth device.

Bluetooth Printer Setup

The Bluetooth managed printer should be as close as possible, in direct line of sight, with the MX8 during the pairing process.

1. Open the EZPair Panel (**Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth** or tap the Bluetooth icon on the Today screen).
2. Tap Discover. Locate the Bluetooth printer in the Discovery panel.
3. Tap and hold the stylus (or doubletap) on the Bluetooth printer until the right-mouse-click menu appears.
4. Select Pair as Printer to pair the MX8 with the Bluetooth managed printer.

The devices are paired. The Bluetooth managed printer may respond with a series of beeps or LED flashes.

Refer to the Bluetooth managed printer manufacturer's User Guide; it may be available on the manufacturer's web site.

If there is no beep or no LED flash from the Bluetooth managed printer, the MX8 and the Bluetooth managed printer are currently paired.

Introduction

This software component is the interface between data collection devices such as bar code scanners, or imagers, integrated into your MX8, bar code scanners externally connected to a COM port or bar code scanners wirelessly connected via Bluetooth to your MX8. This software component collects the data from the varied sources and presents it to applications on your MX8 in a transparent manner.

Use the options on the control panels to set data collection keyboard wedge parameters, enable or disable allowed symbologies, set the active scanner port, and assign scan key settings. Assign baud rate, parity, stop bits and data bits for available COM ports. Parameters on the Main tab and the COM tab(s) apply to this device only.

Bar code manipulation parameter settings on the Data Options tab are applied to the incoming data resulting from successful bar code scans received by the MX8 for processing. The successful bar code scan data may be sent by an integrated scanner in the endcap, a wireless Bluetooth Handheld Scanner, or a tethered serial scanner.

Scanner configuration can be changed using the Data Collection settings panels or by the API functions. While the changed configuration is being read, the Scanner LED is solid amber. The scanner is not operational during the configuration update.

Bar Code Readers

Your MX8 may have any of the following integrated bar code readers:

- 1D Linear Imager, EV-15 (identified as Intermec)
- 2D Area Imager, 5300 (identified as HHP or Hand Held Products)
- Short Range Laser Scanner, 955I
- Base Laser Scanner, 955E
- Honeywell Laser Scanner, N43XX

Note: If the SPN number on the label on the back of your MX8 ends in Rev B, your device has an integrated N43XX scan engine. For example, SPN: MX8X9X9X9X9X9X Rev B.

Note: Base Laser Scanner, 955E does not support aim mode. Any attempt to adjust the aiming beam using 955 programming bar codes will fail. The Base Laser scanner does not decode Codablock, Code93i or Telepen symbologies.

Return to Factory Default Settings

After scanning the scanner-engine-specific bar code to reset all scanner parameters to factory default settings (i.e., Reset All, Set Factory Defaults, Default Settings, etc.), the next step is to open the Data Collection settings panel. Tap ok and close the Data Collection panel. This action will synchronize all scanner formats for your device. Another option you can use to reset the Data Collection panel is to scan the LXEReset bar code (for Symbol and Hand Held Products scan engines) or the Reset bar code (for the Honeywell Laser Scanner N43XX) located in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*. The MX8 will beep twice when a configuration bar code is successfully scanned.

Using Programming Bar Codes

Engine specific configuration bar codes are contained in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*. They can be used to set or reset scan engine parameters by scanning a bar code, then saving the change. Honeywell, Symbol and Intermec scan engines can be programmed using programming bar codes. The MX8 will beep twice when a configuration bar code is successfully scanned.

Hand Held Products Imager

There are no configuration bar codes for this imager. Use the HHP Properties button on the Data Options tab and the Advanced button available on many of the individual Symbology Settings screens to configure the Hand Held Products Imager.

Data Processing Overview

Bar code data processing involves several steps. Some steps may be skipped during the processing depending on user selections on the Symbology Settings panels. The steps are presented below in the order they are performed on the scanned data.

1. Scanned data is tested for a code ID and length (Min/Max). If it matches, it is processed per the rules in place for that symbology. If the scan does not meet the criteria for that symbology, it is processed based on the settings for All. If a code ID is not found, the bar code data is processed based on the settings for All.
2. If the symbology is disabled, the scan is rejected.
3. Strip leading data bytes unconditionally.
4. Strip trailing data bytes unconditionally.
5. Parse for, and strip if found, Data Options strings.
6. Replace any control characters with string, as configured.
7. Add prefix string to output buffer.
8. If Code ID is not stripped, add saved code ID from above to output buffer.
9. Add processed data string from above to output buffer.
10. Add suffix string to output buffer.
11. Add a terminating NUL to the output buffer, in case the data is processed as a string.
12. If key output is enabled, start the process to output keys. If control characters are encountered:
 - If Translate All is set, key is translated to CTRL + char, and output.
 - If Translate All is not set, and key has a valid VK code, key is output.
 - Otherwise, key is ignored (not output).
13. If key output is disabled, a windows message is broadcast to notify listening applications that data is available.

The manipulated data is ready to be read by applications.

Note: When a HID enabled USB scanner is connected to the MX8 the scanned data is transmitted to the active window as keystroke messages. The data bypasses the data collection wedge. Any data handling to be applied to the scanned data, for example strip leading or trailing characters, must be programmed into the scan engine using configuration bar codes or handled by the application accepting the data.

Main Tab

The Data Collection Wedge supports up to three concurrent data collection devices. For example, the internal scanner could be used to collect data at the same time a Bluetooth scanner is paired and/or a serial device is attached to COM1 (the MX8 must be in a desktop cradle to use a tethered scanner).

Setting	Default
Device 1	Disabled
Device 2	Internal
Device 3	Disabled
Keep Awake	Disabled
Output	Disabled
Send Key Messages	Enabled
Scan Mode - Continuous	Disabled
Scan Mode - Timeout between same symbol	1 second

Device 1 – Internal. Radio button allows scanner input/output on Device 1 (scan key or trigger).

Device 2 – Output is enabled when COM1 is enabled on this port.

Device 3 – Output is enabled when COM1 is enabled on this port.

Note: Since Internal is the default setting for Device 2, a Bluetooth scanner can be paired with the Wedge using EZPair on Device 1 without disabling the internal scanner.

Start [Back] [Forward] [Ok]

Data Collection

Device 1	Device 2	Device 3
<input checked="" type="radio"/> disabled	<input type="radio"/> disabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> disabled
<input type="radio"/> COM1	<input type="radio"/> COM1	<input type="radio"/> COM1
<input type="radio"/> Internal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Internal	<input type="radio"/> Internal
<input type="radio"/> Bluetooth	<input type="radio"/> Bluetooth	<input type="radio"/> Bluetooth
<input type="checkbox"/> Output	<input type="checkbox"/> Output	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Output
<input type="checkbox"/> Keep Awake		

☐ Send Key Messages (WEDGE)

Scan Mode

☒ Continuous

Same symbol timeout: 0 , 0 seconds

Main COM1 Notification Data Options [Left] [Right]

Device with integrated Symbol scanner

Start [Back] [Forward] [Ok]

Data Collection

Device 1	Device 2	Device 3
<input checked="" type="radio"/> disabled	<input type="radio"/> disabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> disabled
<input type="radio"/> COM1	<input type="radio"/> COM1	<input type="radio"/> COM1
<input type="radio"/> Internal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Internal	<input type="radio"/> Internal
<input type="radio"/> Bluetooth	<input type="radio"/> Bluetooth	<input type="radio"/> Bluetooth
<input type="checkbox"/> Output	<input type="checkbox"/> Output	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Output
<input type="checkbox"/> Keep Awake		

☐ Send Key Messages (WEDGE)

Main COM1 Notification Data Options [Left] [Right]

Device with any other integrated scanner/imager

Note: The Scan Mode (Continuous Scan) section is only present if the MX8 is equipped with a Symbol integrated scanner.

Output – When Output is enabled, data is received from the scanner and processed via the wedge but an application can also open the WDG0: device and write data to it. An example is when a printer is connected to the same COM port as the scanner via a switch. Data can be written to the WDG device and is redirected to the associated COM port. The application must open the WDG0: port, not the COMx: port as the Wedge has exclusive rights to the COM port. If Output is not enabled, the WDG0: port can still be opened, but any attempts to write to that port fail.

Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

Continuous Scan Mode

Continuous scan mode is only available if the MX8 is equipped with a Symbol or Honeywell scanner. Continuous scan mode draws power from the main battery every time a scan read/decode sequence is performed.

Note: Enabling Continuous Scan Mode will ensure the laser is always on and decoding. Do not scan decoder engine configuration bar codes when Continuous Scan Mode is on. Configuration bar codes do not decode when scanned while Continuous Mode is On.



Caution: Laser beam is emitted continuously. Do not look or stare into the laser beam.

Set the Timeout between same symbol to a value sufficient to prevent the beeper from continuously beeping when a symbol is left in the scanner's field of view.

If trigger mode, power mode, or timeout between same symbol parameters are changed using external configuration bar codes in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*, the operating system automatically restores the parameters to their programmed settings upon a suspend/resume or cold boot and/or any change made in the Data Collection settings. The MX8 will beep twice when a configuration bar code is successfully scanned.

When the scanner is in continuous mode the trigger and scan buttons function as a scanner On/Off switch.

The scanner red LED will always be off in continuous mode. The audio beeps and green LED work the same as they do for normal trigger mode.

Switching to and from continuous and normal trigger modes is in effect after upon tapping the ok button and waiting for the amber scan LED to go out. A cold boot is not required or necessary.

COM1 Tab

Setting	Default
Baud Rate	9600
Data Bits	8
Stop Bits	1
Parity	None
Power on pin 9	Disabled

Use this panel to set communication parameters for any device connected to the MX8 external port (i.e., tethered scanner attached to a cradle). This panel does not configure the tethered device.

Start [Navigation Icons] **ok**

Data Collection

Baud Rate

☐ 115200
☐ 57600
☐ 38400
☐ 19200
☒ 9600
☐ 4800
☐ 2400
☐ 1200

Data Bits

☒ 8
☐ 7

Stop Bits

☒ 1
☐ 2

Parity

☒ None
☐ Odd
☐ Even

☐ Power on pin 9 (+5v)

Main COM1 Notification Data Options [Left Arrow] [Right Arrow]

Integrated laser scanner default values are 9600 Baud, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit and No parity. If these values are changed, the default values are restored after a cold boot or reflashing.

Note: COM1 does not support 5V switchable power on Pin 9 for tethered scanners.

Notification Tab

Setting	Default
Enable Internal Scanner Sound	Enabled
Good Scan Vibration	Off
Bad Scan Vibration	Off

The screenshot shows a handheld device screen with a green header bar containing a 'Start' button and navigation icons. Below the header, the title 'Data Collection' is displayed in green. The main content area has a white background and contains a checkbox labeled 'Enable Internal Scanner Sound' which is checked. Below this are two sections: 'Good Scan Vibration' and 'Bad Scan Vibration'. Each section contains four radio button options: 'Off' (selected), 'Short', 'Medium', and 'Long'. At the bottom of the screen is a green navigation bar with four tabs: 'Main', 'COM1', 'Notification', and 'Data Options'. The 'Data Options' tab is currently selected, and it includes left and right arrow buttons.

This panel toggles internal scanner sounds on and off. Internal scanner sound, by default, is enabled.

Vibration

Enable Good scan vibration or Bad scan vibration when a tactile response on a good scan or bad scan is desired. Scan sounds are accompanied by a tactile response when the internal scanner Sound parameter is enabled.

Enable short, medium or long duration for each selection (good scan and bad scan).

Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

Since the Data Collection Wedge uses the operating system interface to sound beeps, if the volume/vibrate icon is set to anything other than On, Wedge beeps do not sound. Wedge vibration is not affected by these settings.

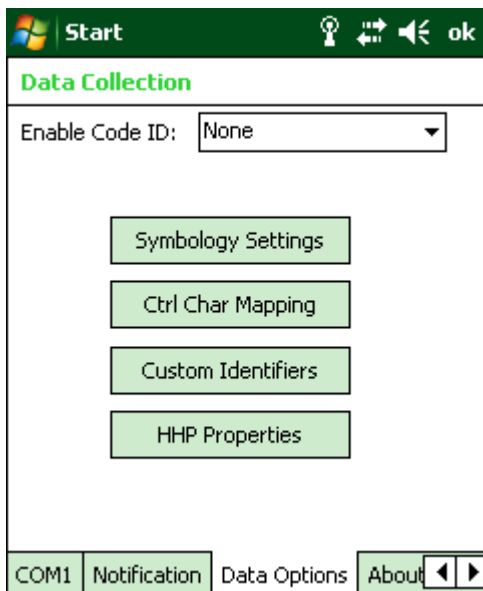
Data Options Tab

Bar code manipulation parameter settings on this tab are applied to the incoming data resulting from successful bar code scans sent to the MX8 for processing.

Note: The Data Options tab contains only those options available for one type of decoding engine.

The Data Options tab contains several options to control bar code processing. Options include:

- Defining custom Code IDs
- Disable processing of specified bar code symbologies
- Rejecting bar code data that is too short or too long
- Stripping characters including Code ID, leading or trailing characters and specified bar code data strings
- Replacing control characters
- Adding a prefix and a suffix.



Note: The HHP Properties button is only present if the MX8 is equipped with a Hand Held Products imager.

Choose an option in the Enable Code ID drop-down box: None, AIM, Symbol, HHP (Hand Held Products) or Custom.

For MX8 with Intermec or Symbol Integrated Scan Engine

Data Collection Wedge can only enable or disable the processing of a bar code inside the Wedge software.

Enabling or disabling a specific bar code symbology at the scanner/imager is done manually using the configuration bar code in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*.

For MX8 with Hand Held Products Integrated Scan Engine

Data Collection Wedge enables or disables the bar code at the imager as well as enabling or disabling the bar code processing in the Wedge software.

Enable Code ID

This parameter programs the internal scanner to transmit the specified Code ID and/or determines the type of bar code identifier being processed. If the scanner being configured is not an integrated scanner, the scanner driver expects that the setting has been programmed into the scanner externally, and that the data will be coming in with the specified Code ID attached.

Transmission of the Code ID is enabled at the scanner for all bar code symbologies, not for an individual symbology. Code ID is sent from the scanner so the scanner driver can discriminate between symbologies.

Options

None

Programs the internal scanner to disable transmission of a Code ID. The only entry in the Symbology popup list is All.

AIM

Programs the internal scanner to transmit the AIM ID with each bar code. The combo box in the Symbology panel is loaded with the known AIM ID symbologies for that platform, plus any configured Custom code IDs.

Honeywell ID

Programs the internal scanner to transmit the Honeywell ID with each bar code. The combo box in the Symbology panel is populated with the known Honeywell ID symbologies for that platform, plus any configured Custom code IDs.

Symbol

Programs the internal scanner to transmit the Symbol ID with each bar code. The combo box in the Symbology panel is populated with the known Symbol ID symbologies for that platform, plus any configured Custom Code IDs.

HHP

Programs the internal scanner to transmit the HHP ID with each bar code. The combo box in the Symbology panel is populated with the known HHP ID symbologies for that platform, plus any custom Code IDs. HHP = Hand Held Products.

Custom

Does not change the scanner's Code ID transmission setting. The combo box in the Symbology panel is loaded with any configured Custom Code IDs.

Notes

- When Strip: Code ID (see Symbology panel) is not enabled, the code ID is sent as part of the bar code data to an application.
- When Strip: Code ID (see Symbology panel) is enabled, the entire Code ID string is stripped (i.e., treated as a Code ID).
- UPC/EAN Codes only: The Code ID for supplemental bar codes is not stripped.
- When Enable Code ID is set to AIM, Symbol or HHP, Custom Code IDs appear at the end of the list of standard Code IDs.
- When Enable Code ID is set to Custom, Custom Code IDs replace the list of standard Code IDs.
- Intermec and Symbol equipped devices are configured using configuration bar codes. When Enable Code ID is set to Custom, AIM or Symbol Code IDs must be added to the end of the Custom Code ID. For example, if a Custom Code ID 'AAA' is created to be read in combination with an AIM ID for Code 39 'JA1', the Custom Code ID must be entered with the AIM ID code first then the Custom Code ID : JA1AAA.
- When Enable Code ID is set to None, Code IDs are ignored.
- Custom symbologies appear at the end of the list in the Symbology dialog, but will be processed at the beginning of the list in the scanner driver. This allows custom IDs, based on actual code IDs, to be processed before the Code ID.
- The external scanner operation cannot be controlled by the MX8 scanner driver; therefore, a 'good' beep may be sounded from the external scanner even if a bar code from an external scanner is rejected because of the configuration specified. The MX8 will still generate a 'bad' scan beep, to indicate the bar code has been rejected.

Buttons

Symbology Settings

Individually enable or disable a bar code from being scanned, set the minimum and maximum size bar code to accept, strip Code ID, strip data from the beginning or end of a bar code, or (based on configurable Barcode Data) add a prefix or suffix to a bar code before transmission.

Ctrl Char Mapping

Define the operations the Wedge performs on control characters (values less than 0x20) embedded in bar codes.

Custom Identifiers

Defines an identifier that is at the beginning of bar code data which acts as a Code ID. After a Custom Identifier is defined, Symbology Settings can be defined for the identifier just like standard Code IDs.

HHP Properties

Set properties for a Hand Held Products imager including centering, mode, range, AIM timer and light behavior. Note that the HHP Properties button is only present if the MX8 is equipped with a Hand Held Products imager.

Symbology Settings

The Symbology selected in the Symbology drop down list defines the symbology for which the data is being configured. The features available on the Symbology panel include the ability to

- individually enable or disable a bar code from scanning,
- set the minimum and maximum size bar code to accept,
- strip Code ID,
- strip data from the beginning or end of a bar code,
- or (based on configurable Barcode Data) add a prefix or suffix to a bar code.

The Code ID drop down box only filters the available symbologies in the Symbology drop down box by the selected Code ID. This Code ID box does not enable or disable the Code ID as that function is controlled by the Enable Code ID box on the Data Options tab.

The Symbology drop down box contains all symbologies supported by the device selected on the Main tab. An asterisk appears in front of symbologies that have already been configured or have been modified from the default value.

Each time a Symbology is changed, the settings are saved as soon as OK is clicked. Settings are also saved when a new Symbology is selected from the Symbology drop down list.

Panel for HHP scan engine

Panel for Honeywell scan engine

Clear Button

Tapping the Clear button erases programmed overrides, returning to the default settings for the selected symbology.

If Clear is pressed when All is selected as the symbology, a confirmation dialog appears. Click the Yes button and all symbologies are reset to their factory defaults, and all star (*) indications are removed from the list of Symbologies.

Advanced Button

If there are advanced configuration options for the selected symbology, an Advanced button is displayed in the lower right corner of the panel. Not all bar code symbologies have configuration parameters so the Advanced button is not present for all symbologies.

Because the Hand Held Products imager does not support configuration bar codes, the Advanced button function allows configuration parameters to be set for many of the supported Hand Held Products imager bar codes.

Processing Order

The order in which these settings are processed are:

- Min / Max
- Code ID
- Leading / Trailing
- Bar Code Data
- Prefix / Suffix

Note: When Enable Code ID is set to None on the Data Options tab and when All is selected in the Symbology field, Enable and Strip Code ID on the Symbology panel are grayed and the user is not allowed to change them, to prevent deactivating the scanner completely.

When All is selected in the Symbology field and the settings are changed, the settings in this dialog become the defaults, used unless overwritten by the settings for individual symbologies. This is also true for Custom IDs, where the code IDs to be stripped are specified by the user.

Note: In Custom mode on the Data Options tab, any Code IDs not specified by the user will not be stripped, because they will not be recognized as Code IDs.

If a specific symbology's settings have been configured, a star (*) will appear next to it in the Symbology drop down box, so the user can tell which symbologies have been modified from their defaults.

If a particular symbology has been configured, the entire set of parameters from that symbologies screen are in effect for that symbology. In other words, either the settings for the configured symbology will be used, or the default settings are used, not a combination of the two.

If a symbology has not been configured (does not have an * next to it) the settings for All are used which is not necessarily the default.

Enable, Min, Max

Enable

This checkbox enables (checked) or disables (unchecked) the symbology field.

The scanner driver searches the beginning of the bar code data for the type of ID specified in the Data Options tab -- Enable Code ID field plus any custom identifiers.

When a code ID match is found as the scanner driver processes incoming bar code data, if the symbology is disabled, the bar code is rejected. Otherwise, the other settings in the dialog are applied and the bar code is processed.

If the symbology is disabled, all other fields on this dialog are dimmed.

If there are customized settings, uncheck the Enable checkbox for the All symbology. This results in disabling all symbologies except the customized ones.

Min

This field specifies the minimum length that the bar code data (not including Code ID) must meet to be processed.

Any bar code scanned that is less than the number of characters specified in the Min field is rejected. The default for this field is 1.

Max

This field specifies the maximum length that the bar code data (not including Code ID) can be processed. Any bar code scanned that has more characters than specified in the Max field is rejected. The default for this field is All (9999).

If the value entered is greater than the maximum value allowed for that symbology, the maximum valid length is used instead.

Strip Leading/Trailing Control

The Strip group of controls (located in the middle of the Symbology panel) determines what data is removed from the collected data before the data is buffered for the application. When all values are set, Code ID takes precedence over Leading and Trailing; Barcode Data stripping is performed last. Stripping occurs before the Prefix and Suffix are added, so does not affect them.

If the total number of characters being stripped is greater than the number of characters in the collected data, it becomes a zero byte data string.

If, in addition, Strip Code ID is enabled, and no prefix or suffix is configured, the processing will return a zero-byte data packet, which will be rejected.

The operation of each type of stripping is defined below:

Leading

This strips the number of characters specified from the beginning of the collected data (not including Code ID). The data is stripped unconditionally. This action is disabled by default.

Trailing

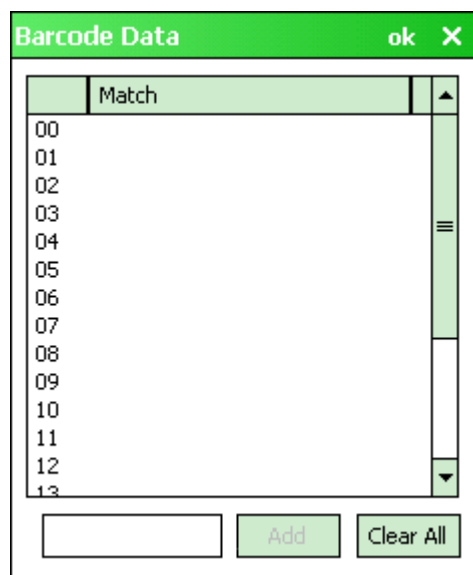
This strips the number of characters specified from the end of the collected data (not including Code ID). The data is stripped unconditionally. This action is disabled by default.

Code ID

Strips the Code ID based on the type code ID specified in the Enable Code ID field in the Data Options tab. By default, Code ID stripping is enabled for every symbology (meaning code IDs will be stripped, unless specifically configured otherwise).

Barcode Data Match List

Tap the Barcode Data button. The Barcode Data panel is used to strip data that matches the entry in the Match list from the bar code. Enter the data to be stripped in the text box and tap the Insert or Add button. The entry is added to the Match list.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Barcode Data" with a green header bar containing "ok" and "X" buttons. Inside the dialog, there is a list box with a header "Match" and a list of numbers from 00 to 13. The list box has a scrollbar on the right. Below the list box, there is a text input field, an "Add" button, and a "Clear All" button.

To remove an entry from the Match list, highlight the entry in the list and tap the Remove button.

Tap ok to store any additions, deletions or changes.

Barcode Data Match Edit Buttons

Add

Entering data into the text entry box enables the Add button. Click the Add button and the data is added to the next empty location in the Custom ID list.

Insert

Click on an empty line in the Custom ID list. The Add button changes to Insert. Enter data into both the Name and ID Code fields and click the Insert button. The data is added to the selected line in the Custom IDs list.

Edit

Double click on the item to edit. Its values are copied to the text boxes for editing. The Add button changes to Replace. When Replace is clicked, the values for the current item in the list are updated.

Clear All

When no item in the Custom IDs list is selected, clicking the Clear All button clears the Custom ID list and any text written (and not yet added or inserted) in the Name and ID Code text boxes.

Remove

The Clear All button changes to a Remove button when an item in the Custom IDs list is selected. Click the desired line item and then click the Remove button to delete it. Line items are Removed one at a time. Contents of the text box fields are cleared at the same time.

Notes

- Prefix and Suffix data is always added on after stripping is complete, and is not affected by any stripping settings.
- If the stripping configuration results in a 0 length bar code, a good beep will still be emitted, since bar code data was read from the scanner.

Match List Rules

The data in the match list is processed by the rules listed below:

- Strings in the list will be searched in the order they appear in the list. If the list contains ABC and AB, in that order, incoming data with ABC will match first, and the AB will have no effect.
- When a match between the first characters of the bar code and a string from the list is found, that string is stripped from the bar code data.
- Processing the list terminates when a match is found or when the end of the list is reached.
- If the wildcard * is not specified, the string is assumed to strip from the beginning of the bar code data. The string ABC* strips off the prefix ABC. The string *XYZ will strip off the suffix XYZ. The string ABC*XYZ will strip both prefix and suffix together. More than one * in a configuration string is not allowed. (The User Interface will not prevent it, but results would not be as expected, as only the first * is used in parsing to match the string.)
- The question mark wildcard ? may be used to match any single character in the incoming data. For example, the data AB?D will match ABCD, ABcD, or AB0D, but not ABDE.
- The data collected is saved per symbology configured. The Symbology selected in the Symbologies dialog defines the symbology for which the data is being configured.
- Note that the Code ID (if any are configured) is ignored by this dialog, regardless of the setting of Strip: Code ID in the Symbologies dialog. According to the sequence of events (specified above), the Code ID must not be included in the bar code data being matched, because when the matching test occurs, the Code ID has already been stripped. If Strip Code ID is disabled, then the bar code data to match must include the Code ID. If Strip Code ID is enabled, the data should not include the Code ID since it has already been stripped.

Add Prefix/Suffix Control

Note: Non-ASCII equivalent keys in Key Message mode are unavailable in this option. Non-ASCII equivalent keys include the function keys (e.g., F1), arrow keys, Page up, Page down, Home, and End.

Use the Add options (located at the bottom of the Symbology panel) to specify a string of text, hex values or hat encoded values to be added to the beginning (prefix) or the end (suffix) of the bar code data. Up to 19 characters can be included in the string. The string can include any character from the keyboard plus characters specified by hex equivalent or entering in hat encoding. See [Hat Encoding](#) (page 8-41) for a list of characters with their hex and hat-encoded values.

Using the Escape function allows entering of literal hex and hat values.

Add Prefix

To enable a prefix, check the Prefix checkbox and enter the desired string in the textbox. The default is disabled (unchecked) with a blank text string.

When bar code data is processed, the Prefix string is sent to the output buffer before any other data. Because all stripping operations have already occurred, stripping settings do not affect the prefix.

The prefix is added to the output buffer for the Symbology selected from the pulldown list. If 'All' is selected, the prefix is added for any symbology that has not been specifically configured.

Add Suffix

To enable a suffix, check the Suffix checkbox and enter the desired string in the textbox. The default is disabled (unchecked) with a blank text string.

When bar code data is processed, the Suffix string is sent to the output buffer after the bar code data. Because all stripping operations have already occurred, stripping settings do not affect the suffix.

The suffix is added to the output buffer for the Symbology selected from the pulldown list. If 'All' is selected, the suffix is added for any symbology that has not been specifically configured.

Symbologies

Your MX8 may have any of the following integrated bar code readers:

- Intermec - 1D Linear Imager, EV-15
- HHP - 2D Area Imager, 5300
- Symbol - Short Range Laser Scanner, 955I
- Symbol - Base Laser Scanner, 955E
- Symbol - Multi-Range "LORAX" Laser, 1524ER
- Honeywell - Laser Scanner, N43XX

The Code ID drop-down box filters the available symbologies, in the Symbology drop down box, by the selected Code ID.

When a Honeywell scan engine is installed, AIM, Custom and Honeywell symbologies are displayed.

When a Hand Held Products imager scan engine is installed, AIM, Custom and HHP symbologies are displayed. HHP does not support Intermec or Symbol IDs.

When a Symbol scan engine is installed, AIM, Custom and Symbol symbologies are displayed. Symbol does not support Intermec, HHP IDs (Hand Held Products) or Honeywell IDs.

AIM Symbologies

Note: When the integrated scan engine is a EV-15, Honeywell or Symbol scan engine, AIM IDs apply, but Advanced properties do not.

EV-15 (Intermec) Engine	955/1524 Symbol Engine	N43XX Honeywell Engine
All	All	All
Code39	Aztec	Codabar
EAN128	Codabar	Code 11
Code128	Code 128	Code 128
UPC/EAN	Code 39	Code 39
Codabar	UPC/EAN	Code 93
Code93	Code 49	EAN/UPC
Code11	Code 93	GS1 Databar
Interleaved 2 of 5	Data Matrix	Interleaved 2 of 5
MSI	Interleaved 2 of 5	Matrix 2 of 5
Discr2of5	MaxiCode	MSI
RSS14	MicroPDF	NEC 2 of 5
PDF417	PDF417	Plessey
Other	PosiCode	Str2of5
Plessey	QR Code	Telepen
QR	GS1 DataBar	Trioptic Code
Maxicode		China Post
DataMatrix		

The Data Collection Wedge does not manage mutually exclusive option selections. The user is responsible for understanding the options that can co-exist for the data collection device. The documentation provided from the manufacturer of the scanner/imager being managed describes the interaction between symbologies and their configurations.

HHP Symbolologies

Advanced properties are available when an integrated Hand Held Products imager is installed in the MX8. Advanced properties are applicable regardless of the ID type selected (AIM or HHP).

Not all HHP symbolologies have Advanced options. Click the symbology link in the table below for the symbology Advanced options. Symbolologies with Advanced options are marked with an asterisk in the table below.

5300 HHP Symbology				
All	Composite	ISBT-1	RSS	AUSPOST
Aztec	Coupon	Matrix 2 of 5	Strt25	JapanPost
BPO	Data Matrix	* Mesa	Strt32	* Planet
* Codabar	* EAN	* MSI	* Telepen	DutchPost
Codablock	* EAN13	Other	TLC	ChinaPost
* Code 11	EAN128	PDF417	Trioptic	Code16K
Code32	GenCode 128	Plessey	* UPCA	Usps4cb
* Code 39	IATA25	* Posicode	* UPCE0	Maxicode
Code 49	ID Tag	Postnet	* UPCE1	MicroPDF
Code 93	* Interleaved 2 of 5	QR	CANPOST	* OCR
Code 128				

The Data Collection Wedge does not manage mutually exclusive option selections. The user is responsible for understanding the options that can co-exist for the data collection device. The documentation provided from the manufacturer of the scanner/imager being managed describes the interaction between symbolologies and their configurations.

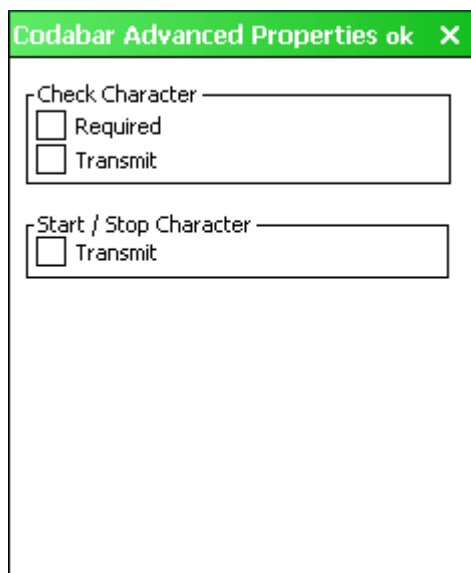
Advanced Button (Hand Held Products Only)

The Advanced button is only available if a Hand Held Products Imager is enabled. Because the Hand Held Products imager does not support configuration bar codes, the Advanced function allows configuration parameters to be set for many of the supported bar codes.

If there are advanced configuration options for the selected symbology, an Advanced button is displayed in the lower right corner of the panel. Not all bar code symbolologies have configuration parameters so the Advanced button is not present for all symbolologies.

The chart below lists the symbolologies and advanced configuration parameters available for that symbology. If a symbology is not listed, it does not have any advanced configuration parameters.

Codabar Advanced Properties



Codabar Advanced Properties ok X

Check Character —

☐ Required

☐ Transmit

Start / Stop Character —

☐ Transmit

Check Character

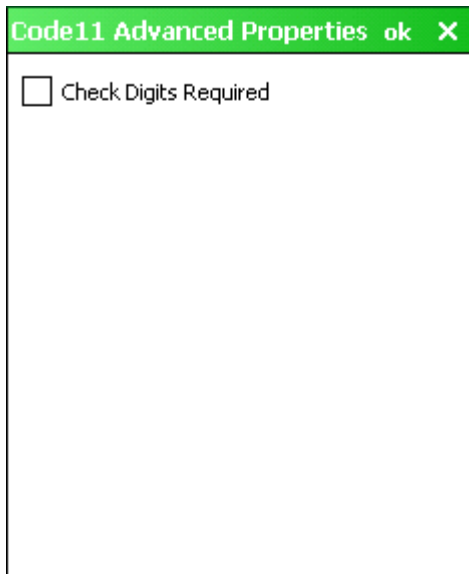
Required – When enabled, the check character is required. Default is disabled.

Transmit – When enabled, the check character is transmitted. Default is disabled.

Start / Stop Character

Transmit – When enabled, the start / stop characters are transmitted. Default is disabled.

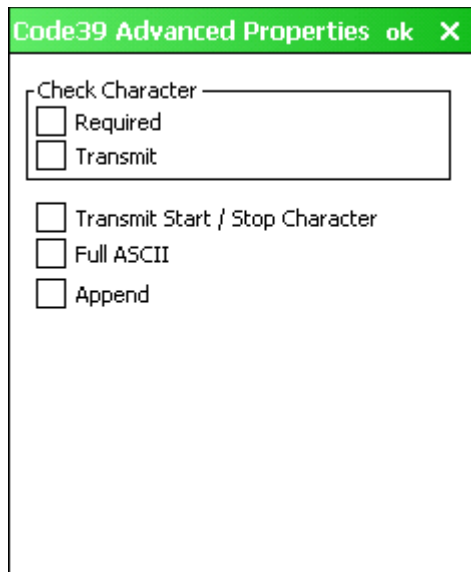
Code 11 Advanced Properties

A screenshot of a dialog box titled "Code11 Advanced Properties" with a green header bar containing "ok" and "X" buttons. The main area is white and contains a single checkbox labeled "Check Digits Required", which is currently unchecked.

☐ Check Digits Required

Check Digits Required – When enabled, only bar codes with two check digits are decoded. The default is disabled.

Code39 - Advanced Properties



The image shows a dialog box titled "Code39 Advanced Properties" with a green header bar containing the title and "ok" and "X" buttons. The dialog contains a group box labeled "Check Character" which includes two checkboxes: "Required" and "Transmit". Below this group box are three more checkboxes: "Transmit Start / Stop Character", "Full ASCII", and "Append". All checkboxes are currently unchecked.

Check Character

Required – When enabled, the check character is required. Default is disabled.

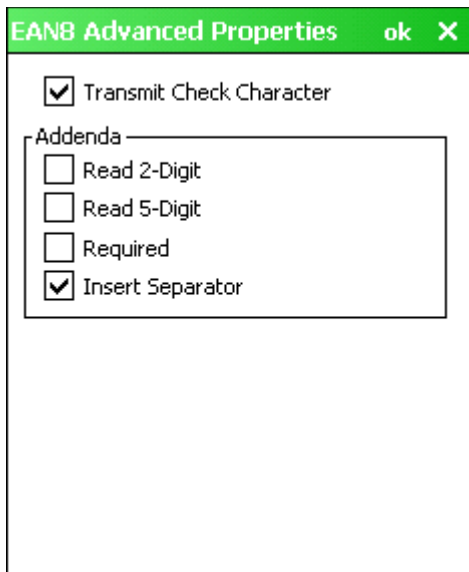
Transmit – When enabled, the check character is transmitted. Default is disabled.

Transmit Start / Stop Character – When enabled, the start / stop characters are transmitted. Default is disabled.

Full ASCII – When enabled, full ASCII interpretation is used. Default is disabled.

Append – When enabled, append and buffer codes that start with a space. Default is disabled.

EAN8 - Advanced Properties



EAN8 Advanced Properties ok X

☒ Transmit Check Character

Addenda

☐ Read 2-Digit

☐ Read 5-Digit

☐ Required

☒ Insert Separator

Transmit Check Character – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled.

Addenda

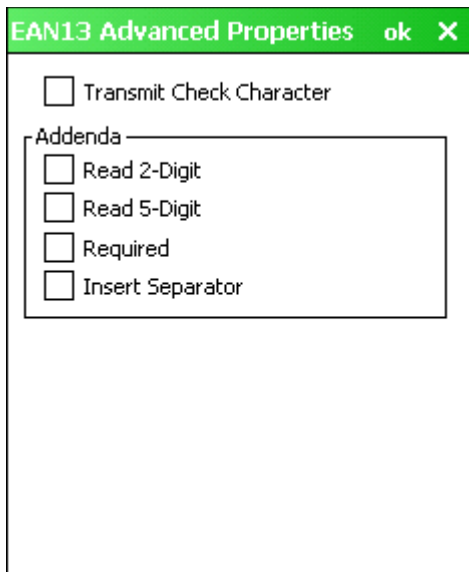
Read 2-Digit – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Read 5-Digit – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Required – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Insert Separator – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is enabled.

EAN13 - Advanced Properties



EAN13 Advanced Properties ok X

☐ Transmit Check Character

Addenda

☐ Read 2-Digit

☐ Read 5-Digit

☐ Required

☐ Insert Separator

Transmit Check Character – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is disabled.

Addenda

Read 2-Digit – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

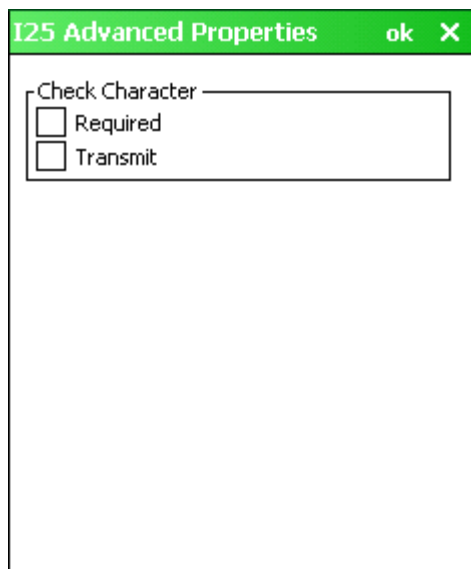
Read 5-Digit – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Required – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Insert Separator – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is disabled.

Note: A UPCA decoding algorithm will also decode EAN 13 labels. For correct operation, either disable the UPCA symbology when using EAN 13 labels or configure the UPCA settings to match the EAN 13 settings.

Interleaved 2 of 5 - Advanced Properties



I25 Advanced Properties ok X

Check Character

☐ Required

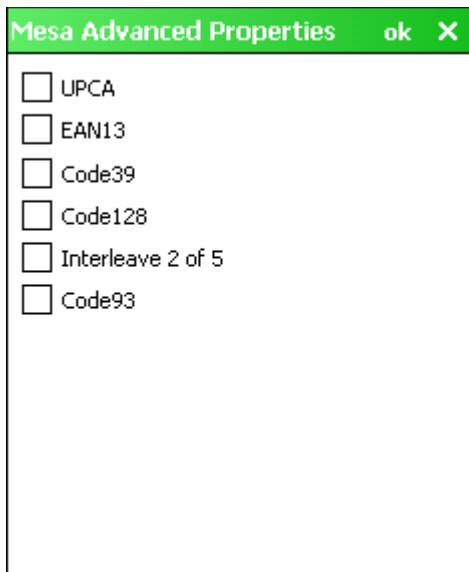
☐ Transmit

Check Character

Required – When enabled, the check character is required. Default is disabled.

Transmit – When enabled, the check character is transmitted. Default is disabled.

Mesa - Advanced Properties



Mesa Advanced Properties ok X

- ☐ UPCA
- ☐ EAN13
- ☐ Code39
- ☐ Code128
- ☐ Interleave 2 of 5
- ☐ Code93

UPCA – When enabled, decode UPCA Mesa. Default is disabled.

EAN13 – When enabled, decode EAN 13 Mesa. Default is disabled.

Code39 – When enabled, decode Code 39 Mesa. Default is disabled.

Code128 – When enabled, decode Code 128 Mesa. Default is disabled.

Interleaved 2 of 5 – When enabled, decode Interleaved 2 of 5 Mesa. Default is disabled.

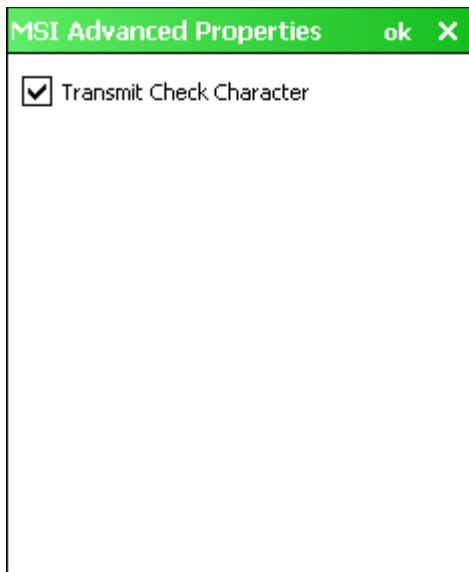
Code93 – When enabled, decode Code 93 Mesa. Default is disabled.

When the Mesa symbology is chosen on the Symbology panel (the Enable check box is checked) the Advanced button must be clicked and the desired Mesa Advanced Properties sub-symbology selected.

When Mesa is disabled on the Symbology panel (the Enable check box is cleared), tap the Advanced button and uncheck all parameters or sub-symbologies, on the Mesa Advanced Properties panel.

Note: The root symbology (UPCA, EAN13, Code39, Code128, Interleaved 2 of 5 and/or Code 93) must be enabled before the matching enabled Mesa sub-symbology will decode.

MSI - Advanced Properties



MSI Advanced Properties ok X

☒ Transmit Check Character

Transmit Check Character – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled.

OCR Properties - Advanced

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "OCR Properties" with a green header bar containing "ok" and "X" buttons. The dialog is divided into two main sections: "Font" and "Direction".

Font Section: Contains five radio buttons. "Disabled" is selected. Other options are "A", "B", "Money", and "MICR".

Direction Section: Contains four radio buttons. "Left to Right" is selected. Other options are "Top to Bottom", "Right to Left", and "Bottom to Top".

Input Fields: Below the sections are four text input fields:

- Template:** Contains the text "ddddddddd".
- Group G:** Empty.
- Group H:** Empty.
- Check:** Empty.

Font – Font selection. Default is disabled.

- A = OCR A
- B = OCR B
- Money = OCR Money
- MICR = Magnetic Ink Character Recognition

Direction – Decoder reads OCR fonts in any direction, but setting direction parameter correctly can increase decoding speed. Default is Left to Right.

Template – Template length must match the length of OCR string to be read. Default is dddddddd. Valid template selections are:

- a - alphanumeric character (digit or letter)
- c - check character
- d - digits from 0 to 9
- e - any character
- g - any character specified in group G
- h - any character specified in group H
- l - alphabetic letter
- r - delimits a row
- t - delimits multiple templates

All characters are transmitted as is except for the selected template.

Group G – Null terminated string defines the set of characters in group G. The default is null.

Group H – Null terminated string defines the set of characters in group H. The default is null.

Check – Enter the string constant 0123456789 for modulo10 checksums and the string constant 0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ for modulo36 checksums.

The default is null.

OCR Template Examples

1. To read a combination of 6 alpha and numeric characters use the following template:

aaaaaa

-
2. To read the same string with a modulo 10 check digit in the seventh character position, use the following template:

aaaaaac

Then enter 0123456789 for the Check parameter.

3. To read either a string of 6 alphabetic letters OR a string of 8 numeric digits, use this template:

l111111tddddddd

Note the use of the “t” to separate the first template from the second.

4. To read multiple rows of OCR data as shown below:

123456

ABCDEF

Either of the following templates could be used:

ddddddr111111 or aaaaaaraaaaa

Note the use of the “r” to define the position of the second row.

OCR Checksum Calculation

The following explains how the checksum is generated for the OCR bar code:

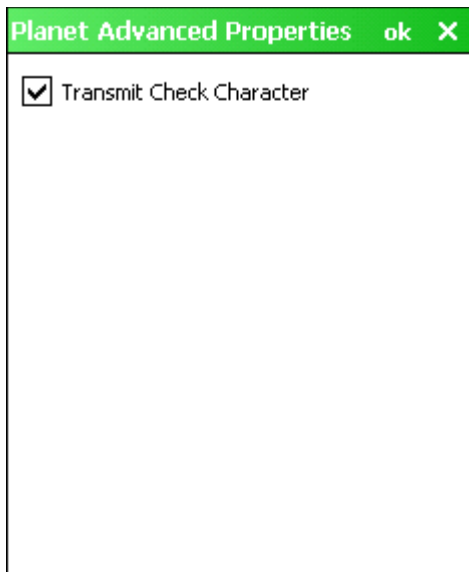
Modulo 10:

1. Add the characters in the string (not including the checksum character). Valid values are 0 – 9 for modulo 10.
2. Subtract 10 from the sum obtained above. Continue subtracting 10 until the remainder is less than 10.
3. The remainder obtained above is the checksum. Enter this digit in the checksum position.

Modulo 36:

1. Add the characters in the string (not including the checksum character). Digit / Alpha values are defined as follows for modulo 36: 0 – 9 = 0 – 9; A = 10, B = 11, ... Z = 25
2. Subtract 36 from the sum obtained above. Continue subtracting 36 until the remainder is less than 36.
3. Subtract the remainder obtained above from 36. The value obtained is the checksum. Enter this character in the checksum position.

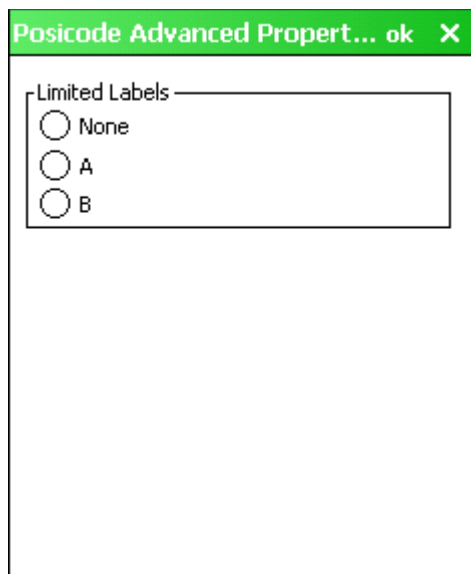
Planet - Advanced Properties



The image shows a screenshot of a software dialog box titled "Planet Advanced Properties". The title bar is green and contains the text "Planet Advanced Properties" followed by "ok" and a close button "X". The main area of the dialog is white and contains a single checkbox labeled "Transmit Check Character". The checkbox is checked, indicated by a small black square with a white checkmark inside.

Transmit Check Character – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled.

Posicode - Advanced Properties



Posicode Advanced Propert... ok X

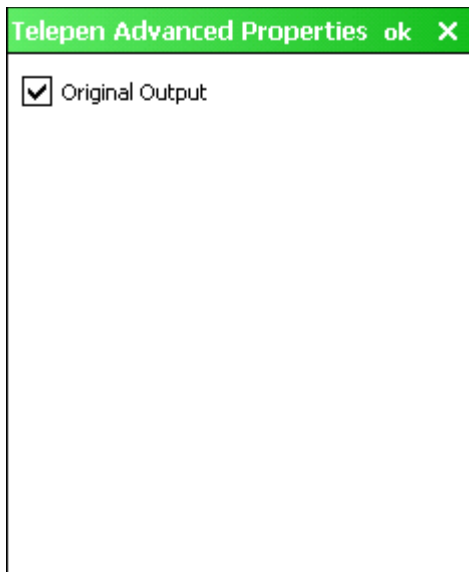
Limited Labels

- ☐ None
- ☐ A
- ☐ B

Limited Labels – Select the type of Posicode Limited labels:

- None
- A – Posicode Limited A
- B – Posicode Limited B

Telepen - Advanced Properties

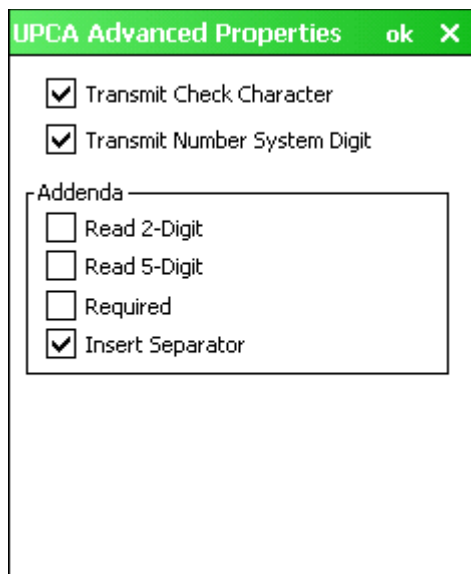


Telepen Advanced Properties ok X

☒ Original Output

Original Output – When enabled, output is Original Telepen. When disabled, output is AIM. Default is enabled.

UPCA- Advanced Properties



UPCA Advanced Properties ok X

☒ Transmit Check Character

☒ Transmit Number System Digit

Addenda

☐ Read 2-Digit

☐ Read 5-Digit

☐ Required

☒ Insert Separator

Transmit Check Character – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled

Transmit Number System Digit – When enabled, transmit the number system digit. Default is enabled.

Addenda

Read 2-Digit – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Read 5-Digit – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Required – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Insert Separator – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is enabled.

Note: An EAN 13 decoding algorithm will also decode UPCA labels. For correct operation, either disable the EAN 13 symbology when using UPCA labels or configure the EAN 13 settings to match the UPCA settings.

UPCE0- Advanced Properties

UPCE0 Advanced Properties ok X

☒ Transmit Check Character
☒ Transmit Number System Digit
☐ Expand Version E

Addenda

☐ Read 2-Digit
☐ Read 5-Digit
☒ Required
☐ Insert Separator

*UPCE1 parameters set to match UPCE0

Note: The UPCE0 and UPCE1 parameters are always set to match each other. Therefore if a change is made to a parameter to either the EPCE0 or UPCE1 Advanced Properties that same change is automatically made to the Advanced Properties for the other symbology.

Note: UPCE0 and UPCE1 are enabled as the same symbology at the scanner. Therefore, the only way for UPCE1 configuration to be used is if UPCE0 is disabled. When UPCE0 is disabled, it is scanned by the imager but rejected by Data Collection Wedge.

Transmit Check Character – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled.

Transmit number System Digit – When enabled, transmit the number system digit. Default is enabled.

Expand Version E – When enabled, expand version E to 12-digit UPCA format. Default is disabled.

Addenda

Read 2-Digit – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Read 5-Digit – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Required – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is enabled.

Insert Separator – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is disabled.

UPCE1- Advanced Properties

UPCE1 Advanced Properties ok X

☒ Transmit Check Character
☒ Transmit Number System Digit
☐ Expand Version E

Addenda

☐ Read 2-Digit
☐ Read 5-Digit
☒ Required
☐ Insert Separator

*UPCE0 parameters set to match UPCE1

Note: The UPCE0 and UPCE1 parameters are always set to match each other. Therefore if a change is made to a parameter to either the EPCE0 or UPCE1 Advanced Properties that same change is automatically made to the Advanced Properties for the other symbology.

Note: UPCE0 and UPCE1 are enabled as the same symbology at the scanner. Therefore, the only way for UPCE1 configuration to be used is if UPCE0 is disabled. When UPCE0 is disabled, it is scanned by the imager but rejected by Data Collection Wedge.

Transmit Check Character – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled

Transmit number System Digit – When enabled, transmit the number system digit. Default is enabled.

Expand Version E – When enabled, expand version E to 12-digit UPCA format. Default is disabled.

Addenda

Read 2-Digit – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

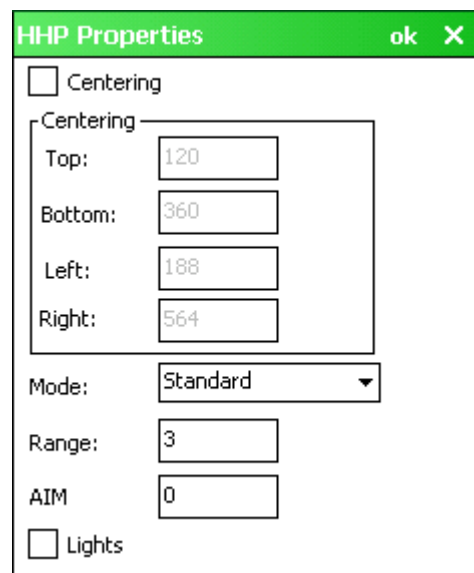
Read 5-Digit – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

Required – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is enabled.

Insert Separator – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is disabled.

HHP Properties

When the MX8 is equipped with a Hand Held Products imager, this option is used to configure imager scanning parameters.



HHP Properties ok X

☐ Centering

Centering

Top: 120

Bottom: 360

Left: 188

Right: 564

Mode: Standard ▼

Range: 3

AIM: 0

☐ Lights

Option	Action
Centering	<p>The centering feature is used to allow the user to accurately scan a selected bar code among a group of bar codes that are located closely together. When centering is turned on, the imager will only decode bar codes that intersect the centering window defined by the user. The centering window must intersect the center of the bar code.</p> <p>The default centering settings define a 60 pixel square area in the center of the imager's field of view. The default is disabled. When enabled, the following parameters may be entered.</p> <p><i>Top</i> Valid:0 – 239 Default:120</p> <p><i>Bottom</i> Valid:240 – 479 Default:360</p> <p><i>Left</i> Valid:0 – 319 Default:188</p> <p><i>Right</i> Valid:320 – 639 Default:564</p>
Mode	<p>In Standard mode the imager will decode both linear and 2-D symbologies.</p> <p>In Aggressive Linear Decode mode the imager will only read linear symbologies in this mode, but decoding these is faster and more accurate than Standard Mode.</p> <p>In Quick Omni mode the imager searches for a bar code in a reduced field located around the center of the image. Decoding is faster in this mode, but the user must center the aiming line over the bar code to be read. Both linear and 2-D symbologies can be read in this mode.</p> <p>The default is Standard.</p>
Range	<p>Set the linear range.</p> <p>Valid:1 – 6 Default:3</p> <p>A value of 1 specifies that the linear range that is searched for a readable label is a tight vertical range near the aimer. A value of 6 specifies that the entire height of the image is to be searched.</p>
AIM	<p>Duration of the imager aim beam in 0.1 second increments.</p> <p>Valid:0 – 50 (0 to 5 seconds) Default:0</p>

Option	Action
Lights	Specifies if the imager's lights and aimer should be left on during the entire decode process. The default is disabled. If disabled, the lights are turned on only during image capture, then turned off while the imager attempts to process and decode the bar code. If enabled, the aimer and lights remain turned on during the entire process. In Aggressive Linear Decode mode, set this parameter to enabled to improve the aimer visibility. See "Mode" above.

Ctrl Char Mapping

The Ctrl Char Mapping button activates a dialog to define the operations the Data Collection Wedge performs on control characters (values less than 0x20) embedded in bar codes. Control characters can be replaced with user-defined text which can include hat encoded or hex encoded values. In key message mode, control characters can also be translated to their control code equivalent key sequences.

Control Character

ok X

☐ Translate All

Control Character	Replacement

Character:

NUL

Replacement:

Ignore(drop)

Assign

Delete

Translate All

When Translate All is checked, unprintable ASCII characters (characters below 20H) in scanned bar codes are assigned to their appropriate CTRL code sequence when the bar codes are sent in Character mode.

The wedge provides a one-to-one mapping of control characters to their equivalent control+character sequence of keystrokes. If control characters are translated, the translation is performed on the bar code data, prefix, and suffix before the keystrokes are simulated.

Translate All

This option is grayed unless the user has Key Message mode (on the Main tab) selected. In Key Message mode, when this option is enabled, control characters embedded in a scanned bar code are translated to their equivalent 'control' key keystroke sequence (13 [0x0d] is translated to Control+M keystrokes as if the user pressed the CTRL, SHIFT, and m keys on the keypad). Additionally, when Translate All is disabled, any control code which has a keystroke equivalent (enter, tab, escape, backspace, etc.) is output as a keystroke. Any control code without a keystroke equivalent is dropped.

Character

This is a drop down combo box that contains the control character name. Refer to the Character drop down box for the list of control characters and their names. When a character name is selected from the drop down box, the default text Ignore (drop) is shown and highlighted in the Replacement edit control. Ignore (drop) is highlighted so the user can type a replacement if the control character is not being ignored. Once the user types any character into the Replacement edit control, reselecting the character from the Character drop down box redisplayes the default Ignore (drop) in the Replacement edit control.

Replacement

The edit control where the user types the characters to be assigned as the replacement of the control character. Replacements for a control character are assigned by selecting the appropriate character from the Character drop down box, typing the replacement in the Replacement edit control (according to the formats defined above) and then selecting Assign. The assigned replacement is then added to the list box above the Assign button.

For example, if 'Carriage Return' is replaced by Line Feed (by specifying '^J' or '0x0A') in the configuration, the value 0x0d received in any scanned bar code (or defined in the prefix or suffix) will be replaced with the value 0x0a.

The Wedge then sends Ctrl+J to the receiving application, rather than Ctrl+M.

List Box

The list box shows all user-defined control characters and their assigned replacements. All replacements are enclosed in single quotes to delimit white space that has been assigned.

Delete

This button is grayed unless an entry in the list box is highlighted. When an entry (or entries) is highlighted, and Delete is selected, the highlighted material is deleted from the list box.

Custom Identifiers

Code IDs can be defined by the user. This allows processing parameters to be configured for bar codes that do not use the standard AIM or Symbol IDs or for bar codes that have data embedded at the beginning of the data that acts like a Code ID.

These are called “custom” Code IDs and are included in the Symbology drop down box in the Symbology dialog, unless Enable Code ID is set to None. When the custom Code ID is found in a bar code, the configuration specified for the custom Code ID is applied to the bar code data. The dialog below allows the custom Code IDs to be configured.

It is intended that custom code IDs are used to supplement the list of standard code IDs (if Enable Code ID is set to AIM or Symbol), or to replace the list of standard code IDs (if Enable Code ID is set to Custom).

When Enable Code ID is set to None, custom code IDs are ignored.

Note: Custom symbologies will appear at the end of the list in the Symbology dialog, and are processed at the beginning of the list in the scanner driver itself. This allows custom IDs based on actual code IDs to be processed before the code ID itself.

Note: When Strip: Code ID is enabled, the entire custom Code ID string is stripped (i.e., treated as a Code ID).

Name	Code
00	
01	
02	
03	
04	
05	
06	
07	
08	
09	
10	

Name:

ID Code:

After adding, changing and removing items from the Custom IDs list, tap the ok button to save changes and return to the Barcode panel.

Name text box

Name is the descriptor that is used to identify the custom Code ID. Names must be unique from each other; however, the Name and ID Code may have the same value. Name is used in the Symbology drop down box to identify the custom Code ID in a user-friendly manner. Both Name and ID Code must be specified in order to add a custom Code ID to the Custom IDs list.

ID Code text box

ID Code defines the data at the beginning of a bar code that acts as an identifier (the actual Code ID). Both Name and ID Code must be specified in order to add a custom Code ID to the Custom IDs list.

Custom ID Buttons

Add

Entering data into both the Name and ID Code fields enables the Add button. Tap the Add button and the data is added to the next empty location in the Custom ID list.

Insert

Tap on an empty line in the Custom ID list. The Add button changes to Insert. Enter data into both the Name and ID Code fields and tap the Insert button. The data is added to the selected line in the Custom IDs list.

Edit

Double tap on the item to edit. Its values are copied to the text boxes for editing. The Add button changes to Replace. When Replace is tapped, the values for the current item in the list are updated.

Clear All

When no item in the Custom IDs list is selected, tapping the Clear All button clears the Custom ID list and any text written (and not yet added or inserted) in the Name and ID Code text boxes.

Remove

The Clear All button changes to a Remove button when an item in the Custom IDs list is selected. Tap the desired line item and then tap the Remove button to delete it. Line items are Removed one at a time. Contents of the text box fields are cleared at the same time.

Control Code Replacement Examples

Configuration data	Translation	Example Control Character	Example configuration	Translated data
Ignore(drop)	The control character is discarded from the bar code data, prefix and suffix	ESCape	'Ignore (drop)'	0x1B in the bar code is discarded.
Printable text	Text is substituted for Control Character.	Start of TeXt	'STX'	0x02 in a bar code is converted to the text 'STX'.
Hat-encoded text	The hat-encoded text is translated to the equivalent hex value.	Carriage Return	'^M'	Value 0x0d in a bar code is converted to the value 0x0d.
Escaped hat-encoded text	The hat-encoding to pass thru to the application.	Horizontal Tab	'^I'	Value 0x09 in a bar code is converted to the text '^I'.
Hex-encoded text	The hex-encoded text is translated to the equivalent hex value.	Carriage Return	'0x0A'	Value 0x0D in a bar code is converted to a value 0x0A.
Escaped hex-encoded text	The hex-encoding to pass thru to the application.	Vertical Tab	'\0x0A' or '0\x0A'	Value 0x0C in a bar code is converted to text '0x0A'

Bar Code Processing Examples

The following table shows examples of stripping and prefix/suffix configurations. The examples assume that the scanner is configured to transmit an AIM identifier.

	Symbology				
	All	EAN-128 (JC1)	EAN-13 (JE0)	Intrlv 2 of 5 (JIO)	Code93
Enable	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Disabled
Min length	1	4	1	1	
Max length	all	all	all	10	
Strip Code ID	Enabled	Enabled	Disabled	Enabled	
Strip Leading	3	0	3	3	
Strip Barcode Data		'*123'	'1*'	'456'	
Strip Trailing	0	0	3	3	
Prefix	'aaa'	'bbb'	'ccc'	'ddd'	
Suffix	'www'	'xxx'	'yyy'	'zzz'	

Provided that the wedge is configured with the above table, below are examples of scanned bar code data and results of these manipulations.

Bar Code Symbology	Raw Scanner Data	Resulting Data
EAN-128	JC11234567890123	bbb1234567890xxx
EAN-128	JC111234567890123	bbb11234567890xxx
EAN-128	JC1123	< rejected > (too short)
EAN-13	JE01234567890987	cccJE04567890yyy
EAN-13	JE01231234567890987	cccJE0234567890yyy
EAN-13	JE01234	cccJE0yyy
I2/5	JIO4444567890987654321	< rejected > (too long)
I2/5	JIO4444567890123	ddd7890zzz
I2/5	JIO444	dddzzz
I2/5	JIO22245622	ddd45zzz
Code-93	JG0123456	< rejected > (disabled)
Code-93	JG0444444	< rejected > (disabled)
Code-39	JA01234567890	aaa4567890www
Code-39 full ASCII	JA41231234567890	aaa1234567890www
Code-39	JA4	< rejected > (too short)

Rejected bar codes generate a bad scan beep. In some cases, the receipt of data from the scanner triggers a good scan beep (from the external scanner), and then the rejection of scanned bar code data by the processing causes a bad scan beep on the same data.

Length Based Bar Code Stripping

Use this procedure to create symbology rules for two bar codes with the same symbology but with different discrete lengths. This procedure is not applicable for bar codes with variable lengths (falling between a maximum value and a minimum value).

Example 1:

- A normal AIM or Symbol symbology role can be created for the desired bar code ID.
- Next, a custom bar code symbology must be created using the same Code ID as the original AIM or Symbol ID rule and each rule would have unique length settings.

Example 2:

For the purposes of this example, the following sample bar code parameters will be used – EAN 128 and Code 128 bar codes. Some of the bar codes start with '00' and some start with '01'. The bar codes are different lengths.

- 34 character length with first two characters = "01" (strip first 2 and last 18)
 - 26 character length with first two characters = "01" (strip first 2 and last 10)
 - 24 character length with first two characters = "01" (strip first 2 and last 8). This 24 character bar code is Code 128.
 - 20 character length with first two characters = "00" (strip first 0 (no characters) and last 4)
1. On the Data Options tab, set Enable Code ID to AIM.
 2. Create four custom IDs, using 1 for EAN 128 bar code and 0 for Code 128 bar code.
 - c1 = Code = 'JC1'
 - c2 = Code = 'JC1'
 - c3 = Code = 'JC0' (24 character bar code is Code 128)
 - c4 = Code = 'JC1'

	Name	Code
00	c1	'JC1'
01	c2	'JC1'
02	c3	'JC0'
03	c4	'JC1'
04		
05		
06		
07		
08		
09		
10		

Name: Add

ID Code: Clear All

3. AIM custom symbology setup is assigned in the following manner:
 - c1 min length = 34, max length = 34, strip leading 2, strip trailing 18, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "01"
 - c2 min length = 26, max length = 26, strip leading 2, strip trailing 10, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "01"
 - c3 min length = 24, max length = 24, strip leading 2, strip trailing 8, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "01"
 - c4 min length = 20, max length = 20, strip leading 0, strip trailing 4, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "00"
4. Add the AIM custom symbologies.

Symbology
ok X

Symbology: c1 Clear

☒ Enable Min: 34 Max: 34

Strip

☒ Leading 2

☒ Code ID

☒ Trailing 18

Barcode Data

Add

☐ Prefix

☐ Suffix

5. Click the Barcode Data button.
6. Click the Add button.
7. Add the data for the match codes.

Barcode Data
ok X

	Match
00	'01'
01	
02	
03	
04	
05	
06	
07	
08	
09	
10	
11	
12	
13	

Add
Clear All

8. Refer to the previous section [Barcode Data Match List](#) (page 8-10) for instruction.
9. Scan a bar code and examine the result.

Processing Tab

The Processing tab contains a user configurable key delay that applies to scanned bar codes as they are input when Remote Desktop is the application with the input focus.

Setting	Default
Same buffer limit	32
Delay between buffers	75 ms
Only in Remote Desktop	Enabled

Note: Settings on this panel have no effect when RFTerm is the application with the input focus.

Enable buffered key output

This option cannot be changed.

Same buffer limit

Specifies the maximum number of characters that the platform and network environment can process correctly without losing data. The default is 32.

Delay between buffers

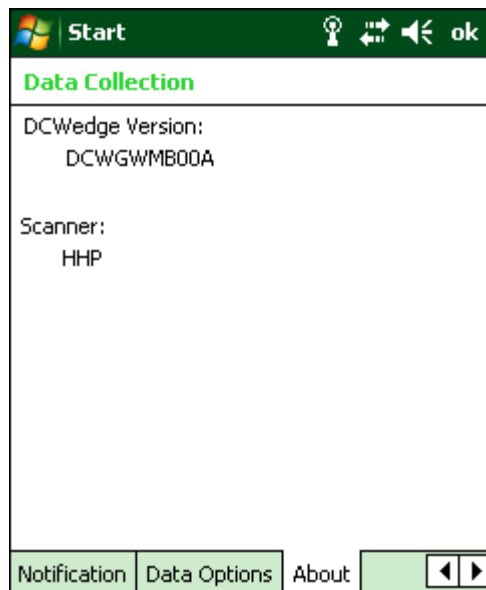
Specifies the number of milliseconds to delay after each character in the scanned bar code is processed as a keystroke. This value may need to be adjusted depending on the network traffic in the environment. The default value is 75 ms. Valid value is from 0 to 9999. A zero value is No Delay between characters.

Only in Remote Desktop

The delay specified in Delay between buffers is only applied when Remote Desktop is enabled and is the application with the input focus. When disabled, all keystrokes are delayed by the number of milliseconds specified in Delay between buffers.

About Tab

The About tab lists the version of the Data Collection Wedge (DCWedge) software and the type of scanner/imager installed in the MX8. The version number shown below is used only as an example, your version number will be different.



Valid scanner / imager types:

- HHP – Hand Held Products 5300 2D Imager
- Intermec – Intermec EV-15 Imager
- Symbol – Symbol SE955-I000WR
- Honeywell – 4313-TTL (N43XX) Laser Scanner
- Blank or No Scanner – No scanner installed

Hat Encoding

Hat Encoded Characters Hex 00 through AD

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
NUL	0X00	^@
SOH	0X01	^A
STX	0X02	^B
ETX	0X03	^C
EOT	0X04	^D
ENQ	0X05	^E
ACK	0X06	^F
BEL	0X07	^G
BS	0X08	^H
HT	0X09	^I
LF	0X0A	^J
VT	0X0B	^K
FF	0X0C	^L
CR	0X0D	^M
SO	0X0E	^N
SI	0X0F	^O
DLE	0X10	^P
DC1 (XON)	0X11	^Q
DC2	0X12	^R
DC3 (XOFF)	0X13	^S
DC4	0X14	^T
NAK	0X15	^U
SYN	0X16	^V
ETB	0X17	^W
CAN	0X18	^X
EM	0X19	^Y
SUB	0X1A	^Z
ESC	0X1B	^[
FS	0X1C	^\
GS	0X1D	^]
RS	0X1E	^^
US	0X1F	^ (Underscore)
	0X7F	^?
	80	~^@
	81	~^A
	82	~^B
	83	~^C
IND	84	~^D
NEL	85	~^E
SSA	86	~^F
®	AE	~. (Period)
—	AF	~/
°	B0	~0 (Zero)
±	B1	~1

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
ESA	87	~^G
HTS	88	~^H
HTJ	89	~^I
VTs	8A	~^J
PLD	8B	~^K
PLU	8C	~^L
RI	8D	~^M
SS2	8E	~^N
SS3	8F	~^O
DCS	90	~^P
PU1	91	~^Q
PU2	92	~^R
STS	93	~^S
CCH	94	~^T
MW	95	~^U
SPA	96	~^V
EPA	97	~^W
	98	~^X
	99	~^Y
	9A	~^Z
CSI	9B	~^[
ST	9C	~^\\
OSC	9D	~^]
PM	9E	~^^
APC	9F	~^ (Underscore)
(no-break space)	A0	~ (Tilde and Space)
¡	A1	~!
¢	A2	~"
£	A3	~#
¤	A4	~\$
¥	A5	~%
¦	A6	~&
§	A7	~'
¨	A8	~(
©	A9	~)
ª	AA	~*
«	AB	~+
¬	AC	~,
(soft hyphen)	AD	~~ (Dash)
×	D7	~W
Ø	D8	~X
Ù	D9	~Y
Ú	DA	~Z

Hat Encoded Characters Hex AE through FF

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
²	B2	~2
³	B3	~3
´	B4	~4
µ	B5	~5
¶	B6	~6
·	B7	~7
¸	B8	~8
¹	B9	~9
º	BA	~:
»	BB	~;
¼	BC	~<
½	BD	~=
¾	BE	~>
¿	BF	~?
À	C0	~@
Á	C1	~A
Â	C2	~B
Ã	C3	~C
Ä	C4	~D
Å	C5	~E
Æ	C6	~F
Ç	C7	~G
È	C8	~H
É	C9	~I
Ê	CA	~J
Ë	CB	~K
Ì	CC	~L
Í	CD	~M
Î	CE	~N
Ï	CF	~O
Ð	D0	~P
Ñ	D1	~Q
Ò	D2	~R
Ó	D3	~S
Ô	D4	~T
Õ	D5	~U
Ö	D6	~V

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
Û	DB	~[
Ü	DC	~\
Ý	DD	~]
Þ	DE	~^
ß	DF	~_ (Underscore)
à	E0	~`
á	E1	~a
â	E2	~b
ã	E3	~c
ä	E4	~d
å	E5	~e
æ	E6	~f
ç	E7	~g
è	E8	~h
é	E9	~i
ê	EA	~j
ë	EB	~k
ì	EC	~l
í	ED	~m
î	EE	~n
ï	EF	~o
ð	F0	~p
ñ	F1	~q
ò	F2	~r
ó	F3	~s
ô	F4	~t
õ	F5	~u
ö	F6	~v
÷	F7	~w
ø	F8	~x
ù	F9	~y
ú	FA	~z
û	FB	~{
ü	FC	~|
ý	FD	~}
þ	FE	~~
ÿ	FF	~^?

Enhanced Launch Utility

Introduction

The launch utility has two functions:

- Process registry based Launch items.
- Process script based Launch items.

Registry Based Launch Items

The Registry based Launch items (documented here) are processed before the Script Based Launch items.

The Launch utility can use registry entries to auto-launch Windows CAB files. These CAB files exist as separate files from the main installation image, and are copied to the terminal using ActiveSync, or using the optional SD card. The CAB files are copied into the folder System, which is the internal Flash drive. Then, information is added to the registry, if desired, to make the CAB file auto-launch at startup.

The registry information needed is under the key HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\LXE\Persist.

The main subkey is any text, and is a description of the file. Then the values are added:

Value	Need	Data Type	Description
FileName	Required	String	Name of the CAB file, with full path (usually \System)
Installed	Required	DWORD	Starts as 0, changed to 1 when the CAB file is installed
FileCheck	Required	String	File name, with full path, of a file installed by the CAB file. If this file is not found, Launch assumes the CAB file is not installed or memory was lost.
Order	Optional	DWORD	Determines sequence of installation. Order=0 is installed first, order=99 is installed last.
Delay	Optional	DWORD	Delay, in seconds, after this item is installed and before the next one is installed. If the install fails (or is not found) the delay does not occur.
PCMCIA	Optional	DWORD	1=power up PCMCIA/CF slot after installation

The auto-launch process is as follows.

1. The launch utility opens the registry database and reads the list of CAB files to auto-launch.
2. First it looks for FileName to see if the CAB file is present.
 - If not, the registry entry is ignored.
 - If it is present, and the Installed flag is not set, auto-launch makes a copy of the CAB file (since it gets deleted by installation), and runs the Microsoft utility WCELOAD to install it.
3. If the Installed flag is set, auto-launch looks for the FileCheck file.
 - If it is present, the CAB file is installed and that registry entry is complete..
 - If the FileCheck file is not present, memory has been lost, and the utility calls WCELOAD to reinstall the CAB file.
4. This process repeats for the next entry in the registry, until all registry entries are analyzed.

Notes:

- To force execution every time, use a FileCheck of “dummy”, which is never found, forcing the item to execute. If an AUTOEXEC.BAT file is found, the terminal runs it by default.
- For persist keys specifying .EXE or .BAT files, the executing process is started, and then Launch continues, leaving the loading process to run independently.
- For other persist keys (including .CAB files), Launch waits for the loading process to complete before continuing. This is important, for example, to ensure that a .CAB file is installed before the .EXE files from the .CAB file are run.
- The Order field is used to force a sequence of events; Order=0 is first, and Order=99 is last. Two items which have the same order are installed in the same pass, but not in a predictable sequence.

- The Delay field is used to add a delay after the item is loaded, before the next is loaded. The delay is given in seconds, and defaults to 0 if not specified. If the install fails (or the file to be installed is not found), the delay does not occur.
- The PCMCIA field is used to indicate that the file (usually a CAB file) being loaded is a radio driver, and the PCMCIA slots must be started after this file is loaded. By default, the PCMCIA slots are off on power up, to prevent the “Unidentified PCMCIA Slot” dialog from appearing. Once the drivers are loaded, the slot can be turned on. The value in the PCMCIA field is a DWORD, representing the number of seconds to wait after installing the CAB file, but before activating the slot (a latency to allow the thread loading the driver to finish installation). The default value of 0 means the slot is not powered on. The default values for the default radio drivers (listed below) is 1, meaning one second elapses between the CAB file loading and the slot powering up.
- Note that the auto-launch process can also launch batch files (*.BAT), executable files (*.EXE), registry setting files (*.REG), or sound files (*.WAV). The mechanism is the same as listed above, but the appropriate CE application is called, depending on file type.

Launch Startup Options

The Launch utility uses registry entries to enable or disable startup options. These flags are located in the registry key HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\LXE\Launch.

These can be configured using RegEdit. The options are as follows:

Value	Ship Default	LTK Default	Description
LaunchPSM	1	0	Execute the Persist keys
JumpStart	1	0	Look for and execute JumpStart scripts
LaunchStart	1	0	Execute any auto-install files in \System\Startup
TimeService	0	0	Launches the GrabTime utility as a service, so that the time and date are periodically automatically updated.

It can often be useful to disable these as necessary, to troubleshoot system startup.

Example

The following example loads and launches RFTerm.

```
;; ----- RFTerm support
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\LXE\Persist\LXE TE]
"FileName"="\System\RFTERM.CAB"
"Installed"=dword:0
"FileCheck"="\WINDOWS\LXE\RFTERM.EXE"
"Order"=dword:11
;; run the app after it has loaded and client device is ready
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\LXE\Persist\RFTERM]
"FileName"="\WINDOWS\LXE\RFTERM.EXE"
"Installed"=dword:0
"FileCheck"="ALWAYSEXEC"
"Order"=dword:40
"Delay"=dword:1
```

Script Based Launch Items

The Script Based Launch items (documented here) are processed after the Registry Based Launch items (documented earlier). The Enhanced (script based) portion of the Launch utility provides several features:

- Launch .CAB file
- Run .EXE file
- Run .EXE file using specified parameters
- Run .BAT file
- Process .REG file
- Copy file, with or without overwriting of existing file
- Delete file
- Create directory
- Remove directory
- Add / Update a registry field
- Delete a registry field
- Add a registry subkey
- Delete a registry key
- Display an on-screen message; message requires OK to continue
- Conditional commands, based on existence of file or folder
- Conditional commands, based on terminal type
- End block of conditional commands
- Create a shortcut
- Perform a cold boot (Restart is not useful in this context)

The script developer has the option of pausing script file execution until the current action completes, or continuing script file processing. The script developer is also able to pause for a specified number of milliseconds between commands.

The utility also processes .REG files, using the same format as the legacy Launch Utility. It does this by calling the RegLoad utility. It can also process .BAT files, by calling the Command Prompt utility.

This utility allows the user to configure separate processing for Restart and Cold Boot.

- By default, Enhanced Launch processes both registry entries and scripts, if present. There are registry settings to enable/disable processing of both types of files.
- Script files may have the extension .CLD (for cold boot). With this extension, they may be clicked to execute from the File Explorer. When clicked directly, the extensions do not matter (a script ending in .CLD does not have to be preceded by a cold boot).

Enhanced Launch Utility Use

The Enhanced Launch Utility can be used at OS startup to execute commands from a script file or to launch programs. The user can configure scripts or registry entries for different operation after Cold Boot and Restart. Use of scripts and registry entries is documented in the following sections.

File Names

From a Cold Boot it looks for JumpStart.cld. The Launch program can also be run manually. Unless it is given a file as part of the command line it tries to run Launch.txt. The script file may be in ASCII or Unicode.

When trying to find a script file, Launch looks in the following locations (in sequence):

1. root directory of the Flash (\System\Launch.xxx)
2. root directory of the SD card (\SD Card\Launch.xxx).

In addition, a script file can be written (with a .cld extension), and can be double-clicked to run from the File Explorer.

Command Line Structure

Each command takes up one line. Every command uses the format:

```
COMMAND, PARAMETER1, PARAMETER2, ...etc.
```

Parameters are separated by a single comma. If a parameter requires a comma within it, the whole parameter must be enclosed in quote marks ("). Extra spaces are ignored between the comma and the next parameter.

For Example

To delete a file called I've, got, commas, in, my, name.txt, use the command:

```
delete,"I've, got, commas, in, my, name.txt".
```

Enclosing quotes are used to allow commas inside a parameter, but are removed prior to executing the command. Thus, delete,deleteme.txt is the same as delete,"deleteme.txt". If a parameter requires a quote mark within it, the whole parameter must first be enclosed within quote marks, and the required quote mark is represented by two quote marks ("""). For example, to place the message This is how you display "quote marks" on the screen, use the command:

```
message,This is a heading,"This is how you display ""quote marks""".
```

The case of a command is ignored, so delete is the same as DELETE and DeLeTe.

Comments

Any line that starts with a semicolon (;), a slash (/) or an asterisk (*) is treated as a comment, and ignored by Launch.

Launch also ignores any extra parameters (more than the required number) in a command. It is not recommended that comments be placed at the end of lines as any future changes could render your script files incompatible.

Blank lines are also ignored.

Commands Supported by Launch

Copy (page 9-5)	ElselfFile (page 9-6)	IfFile (page 9-8)	Mkdir (page 9-9)
Delete (page 9-5)	EndIf (page 9-7)	IfTerm (page 9-8)	Rmdir (page 9-10)
DelRegData (page 9-5)	EndIfFile (page 9-7)	Launch (page 9-8)	SetRegData (page 9-10)
DelRegKey (page 9-6)	EndIfTerm (page 9-7)	LaunchCmd (page 9-9)	SetRegKey (page 9-11)
Elself (page 9-6)	FCopy (page 9-7)	Message (page 9-9)	Shortcut (page 9-11)

The commands supported by Launch are detailed below. Square brackets indicate that a parameter is optional. Characters in *Italics* represent a variable, and not a literal.

Copy

Description	Copies a file but does not overwrite an existing file.
Syntax	Copy , <i>source-file,destination-file</i>
Parameters	<i>source-file</i> : The file to be copied, including its path. <i>destination-file</i> : The destination path and filename.
Example	<code>copy, \Storage Card\MyData.dat, \Temp\MyData.dat</code>
Notes	If the destination file already exists, it is not overwritten, and no error is given. If the source file is blank, a zero-byte file is created.

Delete

Description	Deletes the specified file.
Syntax	Delete , <i>source-file</i>
Parameter	<i>source-file</i> : The file to be deleted, including its path.
Example	<code>delete, \Temp\MyData.dat</code>

DelRegData

Description	Deletes a specified registry data field.
Syntax	Delregdata , <i>key,subkey,field</i>
Parameter	<i>key</i> : The abbreviated major registry key where you want to delete a field. Can be one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• cr or hkcr (HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT)• cu or hkcu (HKEY_CURRENT_USER)• lm or hklm (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE). The case of <i>key</i> does not matter. <i>subkey</i> : The subkey that holds the field you want to delete. <i>field</i> : The field that you want to delete.
Example	<code>delregdata, LM, Software\WidgetsPlc\OurApp, AppName</code>
Notes	An error isn't displayed if you specify a non-existent field, but is displayed if you specify a non-existent key or subkey.

DelRegKey

Description	Deletes a specified registry subkey.
Syntax	Delregkey , <i>key</i> , <i>subkey</i>
Parameter	<i>key</i> : The abbreviated major registry key where you want to delete the subkey. Can be one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• cr or hkcr (HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT)• cu or hkcu (HKEY_CURRENT_USER)• lm or hklm (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE). The case of <i>key</i> does not matter. <i>subkey</i> : The subkey you want to delete.
Example	<code>delregkey, LM, Software\WidgetsPlc\OurApp</code>
Notes	Deletes the specified subkey and all of its contents (if any).

Elseif

Description	Begins conditional command block, executed only if the previous IF command was FALSE.
Syntax	Elseif
Parameter	None
Example	See IfFile (page 9-8).
Notes	Results are unpredictable when Elseif is not paired properly with If... command.

ElseifFile

Description	Begins conditional command block executed only if the file specified in the previous IfFile does not exist.
Syntax	ElseifFile
Parameter	None
Example	See IfFile (page 9-8).
Notes	Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with IfFile command.

EndIf

Description	Ends conditional command block begun with the previous IF command.
Syntax	EndIf
Parameter	None
Example	See IfFile (page 9-8).
Notes	Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with If... command.

EndIfFile

Description	Ends conditional command block begun with the previous IF command.
Syntax	EndIfFile
Parameter	None
Example	See IfFile (page 9-8).
Notes	Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with IfFile command.

EndIfTerm

Description	Ends conditional command block executed only if the device type specified in IfTerm matches.
Syntax	EndIfTerm
Parameter	None
Example	See IfTerm (page 9-8).
Notes	Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with IfTerm command.

FCopy

Description	Copies a file, overwriting any existing file.
Syntax	fcopy , <i>source-file,destination-file</i>
Parameters	<i>source-file</i> : The file to be copied, including its path <i>destination-file</i> : The destination path and filename
Example	<code>fcopy, \Storage Card\MyData.dat, \Temp\MyData.dat</code>
Notes	If the destination file already exists it is overwritten. If the source file is blank, a zero-byte file is created.

IfFile

Description	Begins the conditional execution of a block of commands only if the specified file exists.
Syntax	IfFile , <i>file</i>
Parameter	<i>file</i> : The path and filename to determine if the commands should be executed
Example	<pre>IfFile, \System\MyData.dat any number of commands, executed if file exists ElseIfFile any number of commands, executed if file does not exist EndIfFile</pre>
Notes	If the file already exists the commands are executed. This test does not care if file is a file or directory. Nesting is supported.

IfTerm

Description	Begins the conditional execution of a block of commands only if the terminal matches the specified terminal type.
Syntax	IfTerm , <i>terminal</i>
Parameter	<i>terminal</i> : The terminal type to determine if the commands should be executed
Example	<pre>IfTerm, MX8 any number of commands EndIfTerm</pre>
Notes	If the terminal type is identical (not case-dependent) the commands are executed. Nesting with IfFile is supported. Nesting with IfTerm is meaningless.

Launch

Description	Runs a program.
Syntax	Launch , <i>program</i> , <i>wait-code</i>
Parameter	<i>program</i> : The full path and filename of the program to be run. <i>wait-code</i> : Tells Launch how to behave when the program is running. w(ait) causes Launch to stop processing the script until the program has finished executing. c(ontinue) makes Launch continue processing the script while the program is executing.
Example	<pre>launch, \Windows\Calc.exe, w</pre>
Notes	This differs from LaunchCmd in that Launch has no parameters.

LaunchCmd

Description	Runs a program with arguments.
Syntax	Launchcmd , <i>program,arguments,wait-code</i>
Parameters	<i>program</i> : The full path and filename of the program to be run. <i>arguments</i> : The command line arguments for program. <i>wait-code</i> : Tells Launch how to behave when the program is running. w(ait) causes Launch to stop processing the script until the program has finished executing. c(ontinue) makes Launch continue processing the script while the program is executing.
Example	<code>launchcmd, \Windows\Pword.exe, \My documents\Doc1.doc, w</code>
Notes	This differs from Launch in that LaunchCmd allows parameters.

Message

Description	Displays a message on the screen.
Syntax	Message , <i>message-title,message-body</i>
Parameters	<i>message-title</i> : A heading for the message. Can be left empty. <i>message-body</i> : The main body of the message. To display a message over multiple lines, use the \n character combination at the end of each line. To display a single backslash use two together (\).
Example	<code>message, This is a message, "This is the first line, \nand this is the second"</code>
Notes	Displaying a message pauses the execution of the script file until the message is OK'd. This is displayed with a modal dialog.

Mkdir

Description	Creates a directory.
Syntax	Mkdir , <i>dir</i>
Parameters	<i>dir</i> : The full path and name of the directory to be created.
Example	<code>mkdir, \Program Files\MyApp</code>
Notes	A new directory cannot be created if its parent directory doesn't exist. For example, to create a directory called \MyApp with a subdirectory called SubDir1, use <code>mkdir, \MyApp</code> followed by <code>mkdir, \MyApp\SubDir1</code> .

Rmdir

Description	Removes a directory.
Syntax	Rmdir , <i>dir</i>
Parameters	<i>dir</i> : The full path and name of the directory to be removed.
Example	<code>rmdir, \Program Files\MyApp</code>
Notes	A directory cannot be removed if it contains files or subdirectories.

SetRegData

Description	Adds or updates a data field in the registry.
Syntax	Setregdata , <i>key,subkey,type,field,data[,data2][,data3]...</i>
Parameter	<p><i>key</i>: The abbreviated major registry key where you want to create/update the subkey. Can be one of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• cr or hkcr (HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT)• cu or hkcu (HKEY_CURRENT_USER)• lm or hklm (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE). <p>The case of <i>key</i> doesn't matter</p> <p><i>subkey</i>: The subkey you want to create/update a field in.</p> <p><i>type</i>: The data type of the field you wish to create/update. Can be s (for string value), dd (for decimal value), dx (for hexadecimal value) or b (for binary value). The case of <i>type</i> doesn't matter. If you're altering an existing field, <i>type</i> can be different from the current type.</p> <p><i>field</i>: The name of the new field to be created/updated.</p> <p><i>data</i>: The value of the field being created. This depends on the <i>type</i> of field. Binary fields can have many values (up to 2000 bytes). In this case the data field holds the number of bytes in the binary field, and each byte is given as a subsequent parameter in hexadecimal (<i>data2</i>, <i>data3</i> etc.).</p>
Example	<pre>Setregdata,LM,WidgetsPlc\Info,s,AppName,The Widget Program Setregdata,LM,WidgetsPlc\Info,dx,HexField,FA5B Setregdata,LM,WidgetsPlc\Info,b,5,d3,62,58,f1,9c</pre>

SetRegKey

Description	Adds a sub key to the registry.
Syntax	Setregkey , <i>key</i> , <i>subkey</i>
Parameters	<i>key</i> : The abbreviated major registry key where you want to create the subkey. Can be one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• cr or hkcr (HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT)• cu or hkcu (HKEY_CURRENT_USER)• lm or hklm (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE). The case of <i>key</i> doesn't matter. <i>subkey</i> : The subkey you want to create.
Example	<code>Setregkey, LM, Software\MyApp</code>
Notes	Attempting to create a key that already exists does not cause an error.

Shortcut

Description	Creates a shortcut.
Syntax	Shortcut , <i>name</i> , <i>target</i>
Parameters	<i>name</i> : The path and name of the shortcut file. The file name must end in .lnk for Windows to recognize it as a shortcut. <i>target</i> : The target of the shortcut. If the target has a space in it quote marks must be used (see Command Line Structure section and example below).
Example	<code>shortcut, \Program Files\Widget.lnk, ""\My App\Widget.exe""</code>
Notes	No validation is performed on <i>target</i> to be sure it is executable.

Launch Error Messages

Launch displays a message if it encounters an error during the processing of a script. It is possible to get cascading error messages, as Launch does not stop processing the script if it encounters an error. An example of this would be a failure creating a directory causing the failure of all files copied to that directory.

Here is a list of the possible error messages that could be given:

Error Message	Given by	Description
Bad wait code wait-code	Launch LaunchCmd	The wait-code wasn't recognized
Directory Creation Failed error-code	MkDir	There was a problem encountered creating the directory
Directory Removal Failed error-code	Rmdir	There was a problem encountered removing the directory
Error reading script file	-	An error occurred reading the script file.
File Copy Failed error-code	Copy Fcopy	There was a problem encountered copying the file
File Delete Failed error-code	Delete	There was a problem encountered deleting the file
Invalid Command: command	-	The command wasn't recognized

Error Message	Given by	Description
Invalid Data Length data	SetRegData	Tried to set more than 2000 byte values in a binary field
Invalid Data Type type	SetRegData	The value of the type parameter is invalid
Invalid decimal data data	SetRegData	The data field doesn't contain decimal data
Invalid hex data data	SetRegData	The data field doesn't contain hexadecimal data
Invalid Registry Key key	DelRegData DelRegKey SetRegData DelRegKey	The key parameter to the command has not been recognized
Parms: Invalid Create Directory	MkDir	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Create Registry Key	SetRegKey	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Create Shortcut	Shortcut	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Delete Registry Data	DelRegData	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Delete Registry Key	DelRegKey	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid File Copy	Copy Fcopy	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid File Delete	Delete	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Program Name	Launch LaunchCmd	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Remove Directory	Rmdir	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Set Registry Data	SetRegData	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid User Message	Message	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Program Launch couldn't get ExitCode error-code	Launch LaunchCmd	There was a problem getting the exit status of the program.
Program Launch Failed error-code	Launch LaunchCmd	There was a problem executing the program.
Registry Key Create Failed error-code	SetRegKey	There was a problem creating the registry key given.
Registry Key Delete Failed error-code	DelRegKey	There was a problem deleting the registry key given.
Registry Value Delete Failed error-code	DelRegData	There was a problem deleting the registry data. Most likely a bad subkey.
Registry Value Set Failed error-code	SetRegData	There was a problem setting the registry data. Most likely a bad subkey.
Shortcut Creation Failed error-code	Shortcut	There was a problem encountered creating the shortcut.
Unable to open file script-file	-	There was a problem opening the script-file. This message is only displayed when manually running Launch.

Example Script File

```
iffile,\System\applock.cab
launchcmd,\Windows\wceload.exe,"/noaskdest /noui \System\applock.cab",w
launch,\Windows\applockprep.exe,c
endiffile
launchcmd,\Windows\wceload.exe,"/noaskdest /noui \System\wedge.cab",w
iffile,\System\summit.cab
launchcmd,\Windows\wceload.exe,"/noaskdest /noui \System\summit.cab",w
endiffile
iffile,\System\RFTerm.cab
launchcmd,\Windows\wceload.exe,"/noaskdest /noui \System\RFTerm.cab",w
endiffile
iffile,\System\Java.cab
launchcmd,\Windows\wceload.exe,"/noaskdest /noui \System\Java.cab",w
launchcmd,\Windows\wceload.exe,"/noaskdest /noui \Windows\Jeode.cab",w
endiffile
launch,\System\regrest.exe,w
coldboot
```

Wireless Network Configuration




Introduction

The Summit client device is either an 802.11g radio, capable of both 802.11b and 802.11g data rates or an 802.11a radio, capable of 802.11a, 802.11b and 802.11g data rates. The radio can be configured for no encryption, WEP encryption or WPA security.

Security options supported are

- [No Security \(page 10-21\)](#)
- [WEP \(page 10-22\)](#)
- [LEAP \(page 10-23\)](#)
- [WPA PSK \(page 10-33\)](#)
- [WPA/LEAP \(page 10-28\)](#)
- [PEAP/MSCHAP \(page 10-24\)](#)
- [PEAP/GTC \(page 10-26\)](#)
- [EAP-TLS \(page 10-31\)](#)
- [EAP-FAST \(page 10-29\)](#)

Important Notes

	It is important that all dates are correct on the MX8 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and when the date is not correct authentication will fail.
	It may be necessary to upgrade radio software in order to use certain Summit Client Utility (SCU) features. Contact Technical Assistance (page 15-1) for details.
	When using the 802.11a radio, the U-NII 1 band is the preferred band for indoor operation. For regulatory domains in which the U-NII 3 band is allowed, the following channels are supported: 149, 157 and 161. The AP must be configured accordingly.

After making any changes to the wireless configuration, perform a Suspend/Resume on the MX8.

Summit Client Utility

Note: When making changes to profile or global parameters, tap the power key to place the MX8 in Suspend. When the MX8 resumes from suspend the parameters are applied.

The [Main Tab](#) (page 10-5) provides information, admin login and active profile selection.

Profile specific parameters are found on the [Profile Tab](#) (page 10-8). The parameters on this tab can be set to unique values for each profile. This tab was labeled Config in early versions of the SCU.

The [Status Tab](#) (page 10-11) contains information on the current connection.

The [Diags Tab](#) (page 10-12) provides utilities to troubleshoot the radio.

Global parameters are found on the [Global Tab](#) (page 10-13). The values for these parameters apply to all profiles. This tab was labeled Global Settings in early versions of the SCU.

Help

Help is available by clicking the ? icon in the title bar on most Summit Client Utility (SCU) screens.

SCU Help may also be accessed by selecting **Start > Help** and tapping the Summit Client Utility link. The SCU does not have to be accessed to view the help information using this option.

Summit Tray Icon






The Summit tray icon provides access to the SCU and is a visual indicator of radio status.

The Summit tray icon is displayed when:

- The Summit radio is installed and active
- The Windows Zero Config utility is not active
- The Tray Icon setting is On

Click the icon to launch the SCU.

Use the tray icon to view the radio status:

	The radio is not currently associated or authenticated to an Access Point
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is less than -90 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -71 dBm to -90 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -51 dBm to -70 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is greater than -50 dBm

Using Windows Mobile Wireless Manager

Using the Summit Client Utility to manage wireless connectivity is recommended. However, if desired, Windows Mobile includes the Wireless Manager utility to manage wireless network connections in place of the Summit Client Utility.

To use the Windows Mobile Wireless Manager, first open the Summit Client Utility.

1. Select ThirdPartyConfig in the Active Profile drop down box on the Main tab panel.
2. A message appears that means a Power Cycle is required to make settings activate properly.
3. Tap OK.
4. Suspend/Resume the MX8.

Access the Wireless Manager utility by tapping the radio icon at the top of the screen or tapping **Start > Settings > Connections > Wi-Fi**.

If the Wi-Fi icon is not present in the Connections panel, return to the Summit Client Utility and select ThirdPartyConfig.

Create a New Network Connection

1. Click on the Wi-Fi icon. A list of available networks is displayed.



2. If the desired network is not displayed, tap Add New. If the desired network is displayed in the list, tap the network name.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'Configure Wireless Network' screen. The title bar is green with the Windows logo and navigation icons. The screen has a white background with a green header bar containing the title 'Configure Wireless Network' and a help icon. Below the header, there are four fields: 'Network name:' with a text input box, 'Connects to:' with a dropdown menu showing 'The Internet', and two unchecked checkboxes: 'This is a hidden network' and 'This is a device-to-device (ad-hoc) connection'. At the bottom, there is a green bar with three buttons: 'Cancel', a small icon, and 'Next'.

3. Enter the SSID of the desired network in the Network name text box. Be sure to check the This is a hidden network checkbox for a non-broadcast SSID.
4. In the Connects to box, select The Internet if the MX8 connects directly to the Internet, select Work if the MX8 connects to a network (even if the network provides an Internet connection).
5. Tap Next.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'Configure Network Authentication' screen. The title bar is green with the Windows logo and navigation icons. The screen has a white background with a green header bar containing the title 'Configure Network Authentication' and a help icon. Below the header, there are four fields: 'Authentication:' with a dropdown menu showing 'Open', 'Data Encryption:' with a dropdown menu showing 'Disabled', an unchecked checkbox 'The key is automatically provided', and a 'Network key:' text input box. Below the network key, there is a 'Key index:' dropdown menu showing '1'. At the bottom, there is a green bar with three buttons: 'Back', a small icon, and 'Next'.

Refer to the Windows Mobile help screens or online documentation for configuring wireless security using the Windows Mobile Wireless Manager.

Edit a Network Connection

Double tap the network name to edit the configuration or tap the network name and tap Connect to connect to the network.

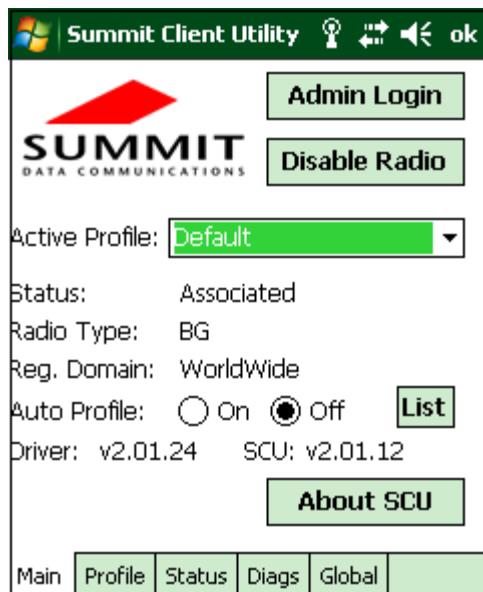
Network configuration screens are the same as displayed in the previous section.

Switch Control to SCU

1. To switch back to SCU control, select any other profile except ThirdPartyConfig in the SCU Active Config drop down list on the Main tab panel.
2. A message appears that means a Power Cycle is required to make settings activate properly.
3. Tap OK.
4. Cold boot the MX8. Radio control is passed to the Summit Client Utility.

Main Tab

Setting	Default
Admin Login	SUMMIT
Radio	Enabled
Active Config/Profile	Default
Regulatory Domain	Varies by location



The Main tab displays information about the wireless client device including:

- SCU (Summit Client Utility) version.
- Driver version.
- Radio Type (BG is an 802.11 b/g radio, ABG is an 802.11 a/b/g radio).
- Regulatory Domain is preset to either Worldwide or a location specific domain (FCC, ETSI, KCC or TELEC).
- Copyright Information can be accessed by tapping the About SCU button.
- Active Config profile / Active Profile name.
- Status of the client (Down, Associated, Authenticated, etc.).

The Active Profile can be switched without logging in to Admin mode. Selecting a different profile from the drop down list does not require logging in to Administrator mode. The profile must already exist. Always perform a Suspend/Resume function when changing profiles. Profiles can be created or edited after the Admin login password has been entered and accepted.

When the profile named "ThirdPartyConfig" is chosen as the active profile, the Summit Client Utility passes radio control to Windows Zero Config for configuration of all client and security settings for the network module.

The Disable Radio button can be used to disable the network card. Once disabled, the button label changes to Enable Radio. By default the radio is enabled.

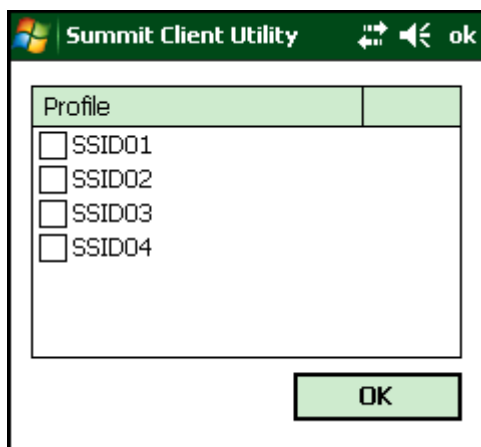
The Admin Login button provides access to editing wireless parameters. Profile and Global may only be edited after entering the Admin Login password.

The password is case-sensitive.

Once logged in, the button label changes to Admin Logout. To logout, either tap the Admin Logout button or exit the SCU without tapping the Admin Logout button.

Auto Profile

Auto Profile allows the user to configure a list of profiles that the SCU can search when a radio connection is lost. After using the Profile tab to create any desired profiles, return to the Main tab. To specify which profiles are to be included in Auto Profile, click the List button.



The Auto Profile selection screen displays all currently configured profiles. Click on the checkbox for any profiles that are to be included in Auto Profile selection then click ok to save.

To enable Auto Profile, click the On button on the Main tab.

When Auto Profile is On, if the radio goes out of range from the currently selected profile, the radio then begins to attempt to connect to the profiles listed under Auto Profile.

The search continues until:

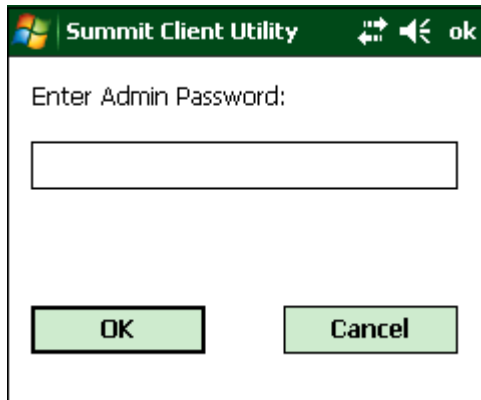
- the SCU connects to and, if necessary, authenticates with, one of the specified profiles or
- the Off button is clicked to turn off Auto Profile.

Note: Do not include any profiles with an Ad Hoc Radio Mode in this listing.

Admin Login

To login to Administrator mode, tap the Admin Login button.

Once logged in, the button label changes to Admin Logout. The admin is automatically logged out when the SCU is exited. The Admin can either tap the Admin Logout button, or the OK button to logout. The Administrator remains logged in when the SCU is not closed and a Suspend/Resume function is performed.

The image shows a screenshot of a mobile application window titled "Summit Client Utility". The window has a green header bar with a Windows logo on the left and navigation icons (back, forward, and a speaker icon) on the right, followed by the text "ok". The main content area is white and contains the text "Enter Admin Password:" above a single-line text input field. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two green buttons with black text: "OK" on the left and "Cancel" on the right.

Enter the Admin password (the default password is SUMMIT and is case sensitive) and tap OK. If the password is incorrect, an error message is displayed.

The Administrator default password can be changed on the Global tab.

The end-user can:

- Turn the radio on or off on the Main tab.
- Select an active Profile on the Main tab.
- View the current parameter settings for the profiles on the Profile tab.
- View the global parameter settings on the Global tab.
- View the current connection details on the Status tab.
- View radio status, software versions and regulatory domain on the Main tab.
- Access additional troubleshooting features on the Diags tab.

After Admin Login, the end-user can also:

- Create, edit, rename and delete profiles on the Profile tab.
- Edit global parameters on the Global tab.
- Enable/disable the Summit tray icon in the taskbar.

Profile Tab

Note: Tap the Commit button to save changes before leaving this panel or the SCU. If the panel is exited before tapping the Commit button, changes are not saved!

Setting	Default
Profile	Default
SSID	Blank
Client Name	Blank
Power Save	Fast
Tx Power	Maximum
Bit Rate	Auto
Radio Mode	See Profile Parameters (page 10-9) for default
Auth Type	Open
EAP Type	None
Encryption	None

Summit Client Utility

Edit Profile: Default

New Rename Delete Scan

Radio:

SSID AP1

Client Name

Power Save

Tx Power

Encryption: None EAP Type: None

WEP keys/PSKs Credentials

Save Changes: Commit

Main Profile Status Diags Global

When logged in as an Admin use the Profile tab to manage profiles. When not logged in as an Admin, the parameters can be viewed, and cannot be changed. The buttons on this tab are dimmed if the user is not logged in as Admin. The Profile tab was previously labeled Config.

Buttons

Commit Button

Saves the profile settings made on this screen. Settings are saved in the profile.

Credentials Button

Allows entry of a username and password, certificate names, and other information required to authenticate with the access point. The information required depends on the EAP type.

Delete Button

Deletes the profile. The current active profile cannot be deleted and an error message is displayed if a delete is attempted.

New Button

Creates a new profile with the default settings (see Profile Parameters) and prompts for a unique name. If the name is not unique, an error message is displayed and the new profile is not created.

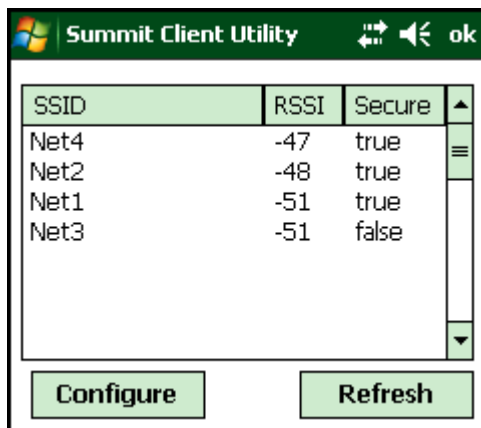
Rename Button

Assigns a new, unique name. If the new name is not unique, an error message is displayed and the profile is not renamed.

Scan Button

Opens a window that lists access points that are broadcasting their SSIDs. Tap the Refresh button to view an updated list of APs. Each AP's SSID, its received signal strength indication (RSSI) and whether or not data encryption is in use (true or false). Sort the list by tapping on the column headers.

If the scan finds more than one AP with the same SSID, the list displays the AP with the strongest RSSI and the least security.



If you are logged in as an Admin, tap an SSID in the list and tap the Configure button, you return to the Profile window to recreate a profile for that SSID, with the profile name being the same as the SSID (or the SSID with a suffix such as “_1” if a profile with the SSID as its name exists already).

WEP Keys / PSK Keys Button

Allows entry of WEP keys or pass phrase as required by the type of encryption.

Note: Unsaved Changes – The SCU will display a reminder if the Commit button is not clicked before an attempt is made to close or browse away from this tab.

Profile Parameters

Parameter	Default	Explanation
Edit Profile	Default	A string of 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters, establishes the name of the Profile. Options are Default or ThirdPartyConfig.
SSID	Blank	A string of up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Establishes the Service Set Identifier (SSID) of the WLAN to which the client connects.
Client Name	Blank	A string of up to 16 characters. The client name is assigned to the network card and the device using the network card. The client name may be passed to networking wireless devices, e.g., Access Points.
Power Save	Fast	Power save mode is On. Options are: Constantly Awake Mode (CAM) power save off, Maximum (power saving mode) and Fast (power saving mode). When using power management, use FAST for best throughput results.
Tx Power	Maximum	Maximum setting regulates Tx power to the Max power setting for the current regulatory domain. Options are: Maximum, 50mW, 30mW, 20mW, 10mW, 5mW, or 1mW.

Parameter	Default	Explanation
Bit Rate	Auto	Setting the rate to Auto will allow the Access Point to automatically negotiate the bit rate with the client device. Options are: Auto, 1 Mbit, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 or 54 Mbit.
Auth Type	Open	802.11 authentication type used when associating with the Access Point. Options are: Open, LEAP, or Shared key.
EAP Type	None	Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) type used for 802.1x authentication to the Access Point. Options are: None, LEAP, EAP-FAST, PEAP-MSCHAP, PEAP-GTC, PEAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, or EAP-TLS. <i>Note: EAP Type chosen determines whether the Credentials button is active and also determines the available entries in the Credentials pop-up window.</i>
Encryption	None	Type of encryption to be used to protect transmitted data. Available options may vary by SCU version. Options are: None, WEP (or Manual WEP), WEP EAP (or Auto WEP), WPA PSK, WPA TKIP, WPA CCKM, WPA2 PSK, WPA2 AES, or WPA2 CCKM. CKIP is not supported in the MX8. <i>Note: The Encryption type chosen determines if the WEP Keys / PSK Keys button is active and also determines the available entries in the WEP or PSK pop-up window.</i>
Radio Mode	BG radio: BG Rates Full Or A radio: BGA Rates Full	Specify 802.11a, 802.11b and/or 802.11g rates when communicating with the AP. The options displayed for this parameter depend on the type of radio installed in the mobile device. Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • B rates only (1, 2, 5.5 and 11 Mbps) • BG Rates Full (All B and G rates) • G rates only (6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 and 54 Mbps) • BG optimized or BG subset (1, 2, 5.5, 6, 11, 24, 36 and 54 Mbps) • A rates only (6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 and 54 Mbps) • ABG Rates Full (All A rates and all B and G rates with A rates preferred) • BGA Rates Full (All B and G rates and all A rates with B and G rates preferred) • Ad Hoc (when connecting to another client device instead of an AP) Default: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • BG Rates Full (for 802.11 b/g radios) • BGA Rates Full (for 802.11a/b/g radio) <i>Note: BG radio only – Previous SCU versions may have the default set as BG Rates Full. Depending on the SCU version, either BG Optimized or BG subset is the default.</i>

It is important the Radio Mode parameter correspond to the AP to which the device is to connect. For example, if this parameter is set to G rates only, the MX8 may only connect to APs set for G rates and not those set for B and G rates.

The options for the Radio Mode parameter should be set, based on the antenna configuration, as follows:

Antenna Configuration	Radio Mode
A Main and BG Main	ABG Rates Full BGA Rates Full
A Main and A Aux	A Rates Only
BG Main and BG Aux	B Rates Only G Rates Only BG Rates Full BG Subset

Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) if you have questions about the antenna(s) installed in your MX8.

Status Tab

Summit Client Utility

Profile: Default
Status: Associated
Device Name: [Unnamed]
IP: 100.100.100.100
MAC: 00.17.23.00.00.00
AP Name: AP2
IP: 100.100.100.200
MAC: 00.1d.45.00.00.00
Beacon Period: 100 DTIM: 2
Connection Channel: 3
Bit Rate: 2 Mbps Tx Power: 50 mW
Signal Strength: -61 dBm
Signal Quality: 85 %

Main Profile Status Diags Global

This screen provides information on the radio:

- The profile being used
- The status of the radio card (down, associated, authenticated, etc.)
- Client information including device name, IP address and MAC address.
- Information about the Access Point (AP) maintaining the connection to the network including AP name, IP address and MAC address.
- Channel currently being used for wireless traffic
- Bit rate in Mbit.
- Current transmit power in mW
- Beacon period – the time between AP beacons in kilomicroseconds. (one kilomicrosecond = 1,024 microseconds)
- DTIM interval – A multiple of the beacon period that specifies how often the beacon contains a delivery traffic indication message (DTIM). The DTIM tells power saving devices a packet is waiting for them. For example, if DTIM = 3, then every third beacon contains a DTIM.
- Signal strength (RSSI) displayed in dBm and graphically
- Signal quality, a measure of the clarity of the signal displayed in percentage and graphically.

There are no user entries on this screen.

Note: After completing radio configuration, it is a good idea to review this screen to verify the radio has associated (no encryption, WEP) or authenticated (LEAP, any WPA), as indicated above.

Diags Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Summit Client Utility' window with the 'Diags' tab selected. The interface includes a title bar with standard window controls and an 'ok' button. Below the title bar, it displays 'Profile: Default' and 'IP Address:'. A red arrow points to the 'SDC' logo. The main area contains several buttons: '(Re)connect', 'Release/Renew', 'Start Ping', 'Diagnostics', and 'Save To...'. A text box next to 'Start Ping' contains the IP address '100.100.100.200'. Below these buttons is a large text area labeled '*---Diagnostics Output---*'. At the bottom, there is a tab bar with 'Main', 'Profile', 'Status', 'Diags' (selected), 'Global', and an empty tab.

The Diags screen can be used for troubleshooting network traffic and radio connectivity issues.

(Re)connect Button

Use this button to apply (or reapply) the current profile and attempt to associate or authenticate to the wireless LAN. All activity is logged in the Diagnostic Output box on the lower part of the screen.

Release/Renew Button

Obtain a new IP address through release and renew. All activity is logged in the Diagnostic Output box. If a fixed IP address has been assigned to the radio, this is also noted in the Diagnostic Output box. Note that the current IP address is displayed above this button.

Start Ping Button

Start a continuous ping to the IP address specified in the text box to the right of this button. Once the button is clicked, the ping begins and the button label changes to Stop Ping. Clicking the button ends the ping. The ping also ends when any other button on this screen is clicked or the user browses away from the Diags tab. The results of the ping are displayed in the Diagnostic Output box.

Diagnostics Button

Also attempts to (re)connect to the wireless LAN. However, this option provides more data in the Diagnostic Output box than the (Re)connect option. This data dump includes radio state, profile settings, global settings, and a list of broadcast SSID APs.

Save To... Button

Use this to save the results of the diagnostics to a text file. Use the explorer window to specify the name and location for the diagnostic file. The text file can viewed using an application such as WordPad.

Global Tab

The parameters on this panel can only be changed when an Admin is logged in with a password. The current values for the parameters can be viewed by the general user without requiring a password.

Setting	Default
Roam Trigger	-65 dBm
Roam Delta	5 dBm
Roam Period	BG: 10 sec. A: 5 sec.
BG Channel Set	Full
DFS Channels	Off
Ad Hoc Channel	1
Aggressive Scan	On
CCX Features	BG: Off A: Optimized
WMM	Off
Auth Server	Type 1
TTLS Inner Method	Auto-EAP
PMK Caching	Standard
WAPI	Off (dimmed)
TX Diversity	BG: On A: Main Only
RX Diversity	BG: On-Start on Main A: Main Only
Frag Threshold	2346
RTS Threshold	2347
LED	Off
Tray Icon	On
Hide Passwords	On
Admin Password	SUMMIT (or blank)
Auth Timeout	8 seconds
Certs Path	System
Ping Payload	32 bytes
Ping Timeout	5000 ms
Ping Delay ms	1000 ms

The screenshot shows the Summit Client Utility window. At the top, there's a title bar with the Windows logo, the text 'Summit Client Utility', and icons for help, refresh, and close. Below the title bar is a red arrow pointing to the 'SDC' logo. The main area has a 'Property:' label and a 'Value:' label. A list of parameters is on the left, with 'Roam Trigger' selected. The 'Value:' field shows '-65 dBm'. At the bottom, there's a 'Save Changes:' label and a 'Commit' button. Below the main area are tabs for 'Main', 'Profile', 'Status', 'Diags', and 'Global'.

Custom Parameter Option

The Custom option is not supported. The parameter value is displayed as “Custom” when the operating system registry has been edited to set the Summit parameter to a value that is not available from the parameter’s drop down list. Selecting Custom from the drop down list has no effect. Selecting any other value from the drop down list will overwrite the “custom” value in the registry.

Global Parameters

Parameter	Default	Function
Roam Trigger	-65 dBm	If signal strength is less than this trigger value, the client looks for a different Access Point with a stronger signal. Options are: -50 dBm, -55, -60, -65, -70, -75, -80, -85, -90 dBm or Custom.
Roam Delta	5 dBm	The amount by which a different Access Point signal strength must exceed the current Access Point signal strength before roaming to the different Access Point is attempted. Options are: 5 dBm, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35 dBm or Custom.
Roam Period	BG: 10 sec. A: 5 sec.	The amount of time, after association or a roam scan with no roam, that the radio collects Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) scan data before a roaming decision is made. Options are: 5 sec, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60 seconds or Custom.
BG Channel Set	Full	Defines the 2.4GHz channels to be scanned for an AP when the radio is contemplating roaming. By specifying the channels to search, roaming time may be reduced over scanning all channels. Options are: Full (all channels) 1,6,11 (the most commonly used channels) 1,7,13 (for ETSI and TELEC radios only) Custom.
DFS Channels	Off	Support for 5GHz 802.11a channels where support for DFS is required. Options are: On, Off. <i>Note: Not supported (always off) in some releases.</i>

Parameter	Default	Function
Ad Hoc Channel	1	Use this parameter when the Radio Mode profile parameter is set to Ad Hoc. Specifies the channel to be used for an Ad Hoc connection to another client device. If a channel is selected that is not supported by the by the radio, the default value is used. Options are: 1 through 14 (the 2.4GHz channels) 36, 40, 44, 48 (the UNII-1 channels)
Aggressive Scan	On	When set to On and the current connection to an AP weakens, the radio aggressively scans for available APs. Aggressive scanning works with standard scanning (set through Roam Trigger, Roam Delta and Roam Period). Aggressive scanning should be set to On unless there is significant co-channel interference due to overlapping APs on the same channel. Options are: On, Off
CCX or CCX Features	BG: Off A: Optimized	Use of Cisco Compatible Extensions (CCX) radio management and AP specified maximum transmit power features. Options are: Full - Use Cisco IE and CCX version number, support all CCX features. The option known as "On" in previous versions. Optimized - Use Cisco IE and CCX version number, support all CCX features except AP assisted roaming, AP specified maximum transmit power and radio management. Off - Do not use Cisco IE and CCX version number. Cisco IE = Cisco Information Element.
WMM	Off	Use of Wi-Fi Multimedia extensions. Options are: On, Off Default value cannot be changed.
Auth Server	Type 1	Specifies the type of authentication server. Options are: Type 1 (ACS server) and Type 2 (non-ACS server)
TTLS Inner Method	Auto-EAP	Authentication method used within the secure tunnel created by EAP-TTLS. Options are: AUTO-EAP (Any available EAP method), MSCHAPV2, MSCHAP, PAP, CHAP, EAP-MSCHAPV2
PMK Caching	Standard	Type of Pairwise Master Key (PMK) caching to use when WPA2 is in use. PMK caching is designed to speed up roaming between APs by allowing the client and the AP to cache the results of 802.1X authentications, eliminating the need to communicate with the ACS server. Standard PMK is used when there are no controllers. The reauthentication information is cached on the original AP. The client and the AP use the cached information to perform the four-way handshake to exchange keys. Opportunistic PMK (OPMK) is used when there are controllers. The reauthentication information cached on the controllers. The client and the controller behind the AP use the cached information to perform the four-way handshake to exchange keys. If the selected PMK caching method is not supported by the network infrastructure, every roam requires full 802.11X authentication, including interaction with the ACS server. If the active profile is using WPA2 CCKM, the global PMK Caching setting is ignored and the client attempts to use CCKM. Options are: Standard, OPMK <i>Note: This change does not take effect until after a Suspend/Resume cycle.</i>
WAPI	Off	Default is Off and dimmed (cannot be changed).
TX Diversity	BG: On A: Main Only	How to handle antenna diversity when transmitting packets to the Access Point. Options are: Main only (use the main antenna only), Aux only (use the auxiliary antenna only), or On (use diversity or both antennas). TX Diversity option should be set based on the antenna configuration as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Antenna Configuration: A Main and BG Main. TX Diversity: Main only. Antenna Configuration: A Main and A Aux. TX Diversity: On. Antenna Configuration: BG Main and BG Aux. TX Diversity: On.

Parameter	Default	Function
RX Diversity	BG: On-Start on Main A: Main only	How to handle antenna diversity when receiving packets from the Access Point. Options are: Main Only (use the main antenna only), Aux Only (use the auxiliary antenna only), On-start on Main (on startup, use the main antenna), or On-start on Aux (on startup, use the auxiliary antenna).RX Diversity option should be set based on the antenna configuration as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Antenna Configuration: A Main and BG Main. RX Diversity: Main. Antenna Configuration: A Main and A Aux. RX Diversity: On-start on Main. Antenna Configuration: BG Main and BG Aux. RX Diversity: On-start on Main.
Frag Thresh	2346	If the packet size (in bytes) exceeds the specified number of bytes set in the fragment threshold, the packet is fragmented (sent as several pieces instead of as one block). Use a low setting in areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of wireless interference. Options are: Any number between 256 bytes and 2346 bytes.
RTS Thresh	2347	If the packet size exceeds the specified number of bytes set in the Request to Send (RTS) threshold, an RTS is sent before sending the packet. A low RTS threshold setting can be useful in areas where many client devices are associating with the Access Point. Options are: Any number between 0 and 2347.
LED	Off	The LED on the wireless card is not visible to the user when the wireless card is installed in a sealed mobile device. Options are: On, Off.
Tray Icon	On	Determines if the Summit icon is displayed in the System tray. Options are: On, Off
Hide Password	On	When On, the Summit Config Utility masks passwords (characters on the screen are displayed as an *) as they are typed and when they are viewed. When Off, password characters are not masked. Options are: On, Off.
Admin Password	SUMMIT (or Blank)	A string of up to 64 alphanumeric characters that must be entered when the Admin Login button is tapped. If Hide Password is On, the password is masked when typed in the Admin Password Entry dialog box. The password is case sensitive. This value is masked when the Admin is logged out. Options are: none.
Auth Timeout	8 seconds	Specifies the number of seconds the Summit software waits for an EAP authentication request to succeed or fail. If the authentication credentials are stored in the active profile and the authentication times out, the association fails. No error message or prompting for corrected credentials is displayed. If the authentication credentials are not stored in the active profile and the authentication times out, the user is again prompted to enter the credentials. Options are: An integer from 3 to 60.
Certs Path	System	A valid directory path, of up to 64 characters, where WPA Certificate Authority and User Certificates are stored on the mobile device when not using the Windows certificates store. Make sure the Windows folder path exists before assigning the path in this parameter. See Certificates for instructions on obtaining CA and User Certificates. This value is masked when the Admin is logged out. Options are: none. For example, when the valid certificate is stored as My Computer/System/MYCERTIFICATE.CER, enter System in the Certs Path text box as the Windows folder path.
Ping Payload	32 bytes	Maximum amount of data to be transmitted on a ping. Options are: 32 bytes, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024 bytes.
Ping Timeout ms	5000	The amount of time, in milliseconds, that a device will be continuously pinged. The Stop Ping button can be tapped to end the ping process ahead of the ping timeout. Options are: Any number between 0 and 30000 ms.
Ping Delay ms	1000	The amount of time, in milliseconds, between each ping after a Start Ping button tap. Options are: Any number between 0 and 30000 ms.

Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials

When using wireless security that requires a user name and password to be entered, the Summit Client Utility offers these choices:

- The Username and Password may be entered on the Credentials screen. If this method is selected, anyone using the device can access the network.
- The Username and Password are left blank on the Credentials screen. When the device attempts to connect to the network, a sign on screen is displayed. The user must enter the Username and Password at that time to authenticate.

Using Stored Credentials

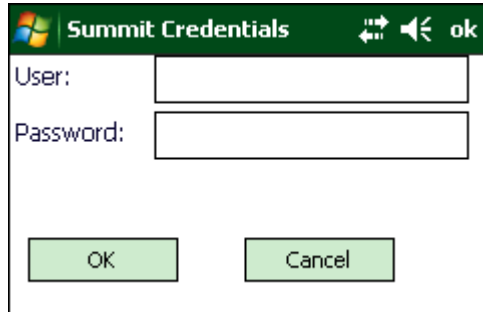
1. After completing the other entries in the profile, click on the Credentials button.
2. Enter the Username and Password on the Credentials screen and click the OK button.
3. Click the Commit button.
4. For LEAP and WPA/LEAP, configuration is complete.
5. For PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC, importing the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store is optional.
6. For EAP-TLS, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store. Also import the User Certificate into the Windows certificate store.
7. Access the Credentials screen again. Make sure the Validate server and Use MS store checkboxes are checked.
8. The default is to use the entire certificate store for the CA certificate. Alternatively, use the Browse button next to the CA Cert (CA Certificate Filename) on the Credentials screen to select an individual certificate.
9. For EAP-TLS, also enter the User Cert (User Certificate filename) on the credentials screen by using the Browse button.
10. If using EAP FAST and manual PAC provisioning, input the PAC filename and password..
11. Click the OK button then the Commit button.
12. If changes are made to the stored credentials, click Commit to save those changes before making any additional changes to the profile or global parameters.
13. Verify the device is authenticated by reviewing the Status tab. When the device is property configured, the Status tab indicates the device is Authenticated and the method used.

Note: See [Configuring Profiles](#) (page 10-21) for more details.

Note: If invalid credentials are entered into the stored credentials, the authentication will fail. No error message is displayed and the user is not prompted to enter valid credentials.

Using a Sign On Screen

1. After completing the other entries in the profile, click on the Credentials button. Leave the Username and Password blank. No entries are necessary on the Credentials screen for LEAP or LEAP/WPA.
2. For PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC, importing the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store is optional.
3. For EAP-TLS, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store. Also import the User Certificate into the Windows certificate store.
4. Access the Credentials screen again. Make sure the Validate server and Use MS store checkboxes are checked.
5. The default is to use the entire certificate store for the CA certificate. Alternatively, use the Browse button next to the CA Cert (CA Certificate Filename) on the Credentials screen to select an individual certificate.
6. For EAP-TLS, also enter the User Cert (User Certificate filename) on the credentials screen by using the Browse button.
7. Click the OK button then the Commit button.
8. When the device attempts to connect to the network, a sign-on screen is displayed.
9. Enter the Username and Password. Click the OK button.



10. Verify the device is authenticated by reviewing the Status tab. When the device is properly configured, the Status Tab indicates the device is Authenticated and the method used.

11. The sign-on screen is displayed after a reboot.

Note: See [Configuring Profiles](#) (page 10-21) for more details.

If a user enters invalid credentials and clicks OK, the device associates but does not authenticate. The user is again prompted to enter credentials.

If the user clicks the Cancel button, the device does not associate. The user is not prompted again for credentials until:

- the device is rebooted,
- the radio is disabled then enabled,
- the Reconnect button on the Diags Tab is clicked or
- the profile is modified and the Commit button is clicked.

Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path

Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the MX8 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.

User Certificates

EAP-TLS authentication requires a user certificate. The user certificate must be stored in the Windows certificate store.

- To generate the user certificate, see [Generating a User Certificate](#) (page 10-37).
- To import the user certificate into the Windows certificate store, see [Installing a User Certificate](#) (page 10-40).
- A Root CA certificate is also needed. Refer to the section below.

Root CA Certificates

Root CA certificates are required for EAP/TLS, PEAP/GTC and PEAP/MSCHAP. Two options are offered for storing these certificates:

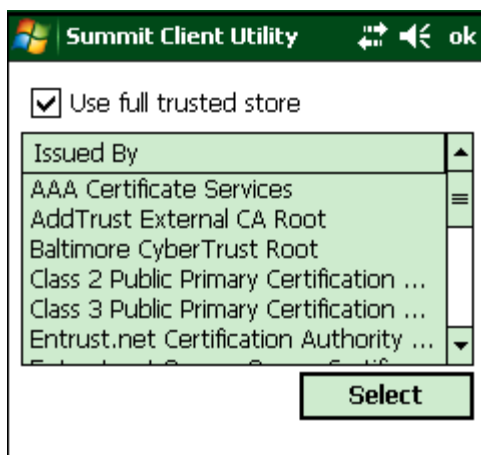
- Imported into the Windows certificate store.
- Copied into the Certs Path directory.

Using the Certs Path

1. See [Generating a Root CA Certificate](#) (page 10-34) and follow the instructions to download the Root Certificate to a PC.
2. Copy the certificate to specified directory on the mobile device. The default location for Certs Path is \System. A different location may be specified by using the Certs Path global variable. Note the location chosen for certificate storage should persist after a reboot.
3. When completing the Credentials screen for the desired authentication, do not check the Use MS store checkbox after checking the Validate server checkbox.
4. Enter the certificate name in the CA Cert textbox.
5. Click OK to exit the Credentials screen and then Commit to save the profile changes.

Using the Windows Certificate Store

1. See [Generating a Root CA Certificate](#) (page 10-34) and follow the instructions to download the Root Certificate to a PC.
2. To import the certificate into the Windows store, see [Installing a Root CA Certificate](#) (page 10-37).
3. When completing the Credentials screen for the desired authentication, be sure to check the Use MS store checkbox after checking the Validate server checkbox.
4. The default is to use all certificates in the store. If this is OK, skip to the last step.
5. Otherwise, to select a specific certificate click the Browse (...) button.



-
6. Uncheck the Use full trusted store checkbox.
 7. Select the desired certificate and click the Select button to return the selected certificate to the CA Cert textbox.
 8. Click OK to exit the Credentials screen and then Commit to save the profile changes.

Configuring Profiles

Use the instructions in this section to complete the entries on the Profile tab according to the type of wireless security used by your network. The instructions that follow are the minimum required to successfully connect to a network. Your system may require more parameters than are listed in these instructions. See your system administrator for complete information about your network and its wireless security requirements.

To begin the configuration process:

1. On the Main Tab, tap the Admin Login button and enter the password.
2. Edit the default profile with the parameters for your network. Select the Default profile from the pull down menu.
3. Make any desired parameter changes as described in the applicable following section determined by network security type and click the Commit button to save the changes.

IMPORTANT – Remember to click the Commit button after making changes to ensure the changes are saved. Many versions of the SCU display a reminder if the Commit button is not clicked before an attempt is made to close or browse away from the tab in focus if there are unsaved changes.

If changes are made to the stored credentials, click Commit to save those changes first before making any additional changes.

No Security

To connect to a wireless network with no security, make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to None.
3. Set Encryption to None.
4. Set Auth Type to Open.

Summit Client Utility

Edit Profile: Default SDC

New Rename Delete Scan

Radio:

SSID AP1

Client Name

Power Save

Tx Power

Encryption: None EAP Type: None

WEP keys/PSKs Credentials

Save Changes: Commit

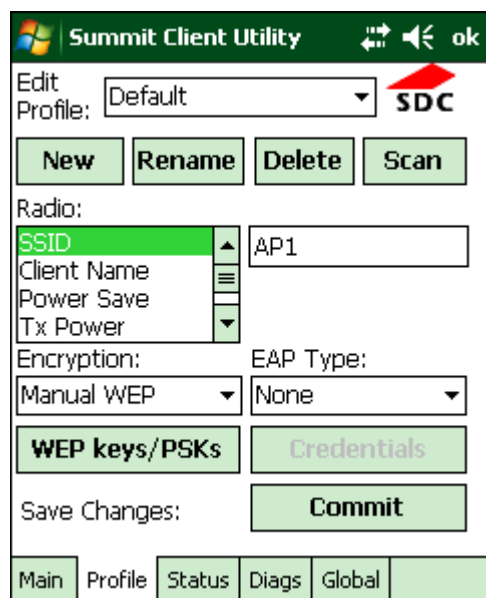
Main Profile Status Diags Global

5. Once configured, click the Commit button.
6. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

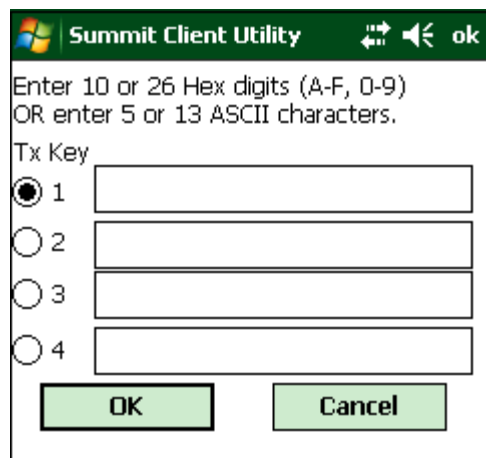
WEP

To connect using WEP, make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to None.
3. Set Encryption to WEP or Manual WEP (depending on SCU version).
4. Set Auth Type to Open.



5. Click the WEP keys/PSKs button.

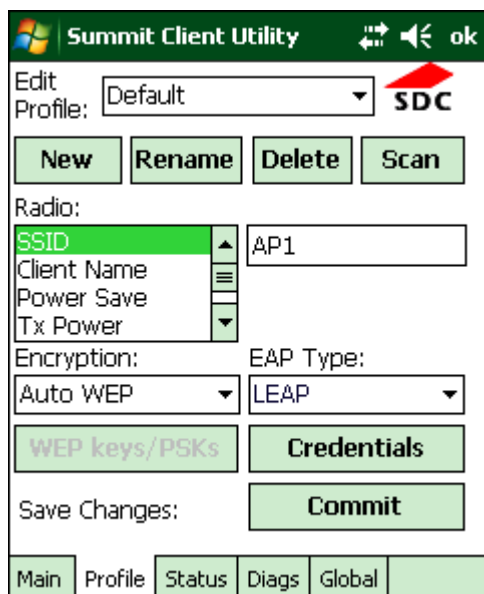


6. Valid keys are 10 hexadecimal or 5 ASCII characters (for 40-bit encryption) or 26 hexadecimal or 13 ASCII characters (for 128-bit encryption). Enter the key(s) and click OK.
7. Once configured, click the Commit button.
8. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

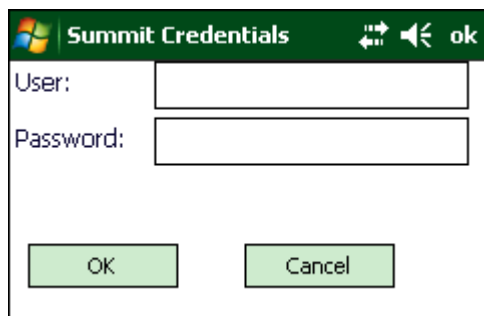
LEAP

To use LEAP (without WPA), make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to LEAP.
3. Set Encryption to WEP EAP or Auto WEP (depending on SCU version).
4. Set Auth Type as follows:
 - If the Cisco/CCX certified AP is configured for open authentication, set the Auth Type radio parameter to Open.
 - If the AP is configured to use shared key or passphrase, set the Auth Type radio parameter to Shared.
 - If the AP is configured for network EAP only, set the Auth Type radio parameter to LEAP.



5. See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) (page 10-17) for information on entering credentials.
6. To use Stored Credentials, click on the Credentials button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.

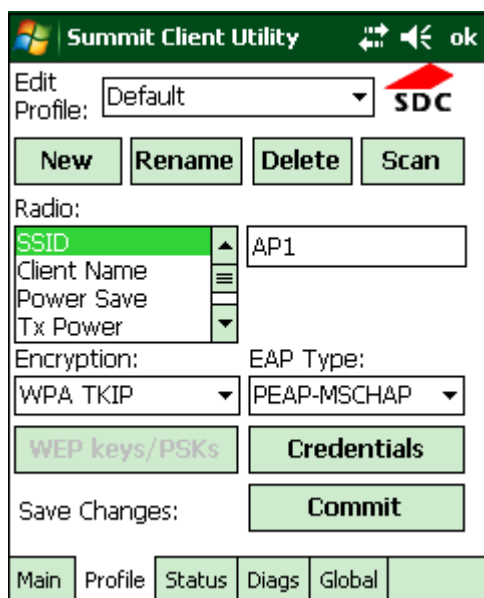


7. Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.
8. Enter the password.
9. Click OK then click the Commit button.
10. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

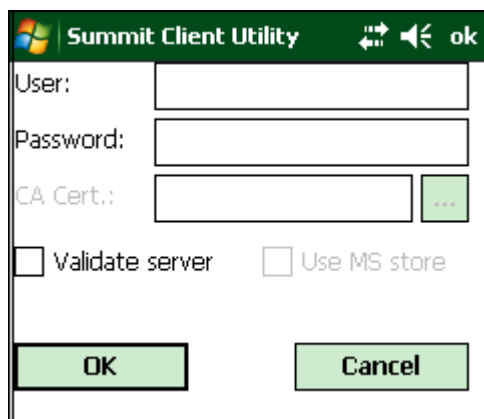
PEAP/MSCHAP

To use PEAP/MSCHAP, make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
2. Set EAP Type to PEAP-MSCHAP
3. Set Encryption to WPA TKIP
4. Set Auth Type to Open
5. To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.

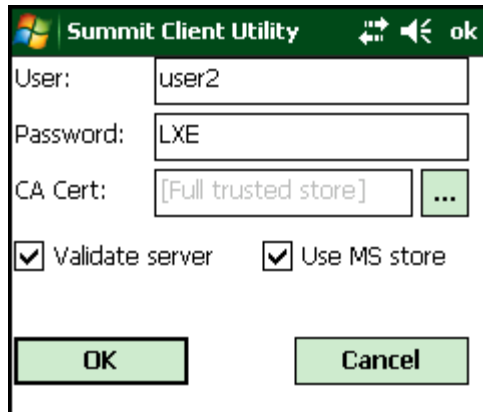


6. See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) (page 10-17) for information on entering credentials.
7. Click the Credentials button.
 - No entries except the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name and Password when connecting to the network.
 - For Stored Credentials, User, Password and the CA Certificate Filename must be entered.
8. Enter these items as directed below.



9. Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.
10. Enter the password.

-
11. Leave the CA Certificate File Name blank for now.
 12. Click OK then click Commit. Ensure the correct Active profile is selected on the Main Tab.
 13. See [Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path](#) (page 10-19) for more information on certificate storage.
 14. Once successfully authenticated, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store.
 15. Return to the Credentials screen and check the Validate server checkbox.



Summit Client Utility

User: user2

Password: LXE

CA Cert: [Full trusted store] ...

☒ Validate server ☒ Use MS store

OK Cancel

If using the Windows certificate store:

1. Check the Use MS store checkbox. The default is to use the Full Trusted Store.
2. To select an individual certificate, click on the Browse button.
3. Uncheck the Use full trusted store checkbox.
4. Select the desired certificate and click Select. You are returned to the Credentials screen.

If using the Certs Path option:

1. Leave the Use MS store box unchecked.
2. Enter the certificate filename in the CA Cert textbox.
3. Click OK then click Commit.

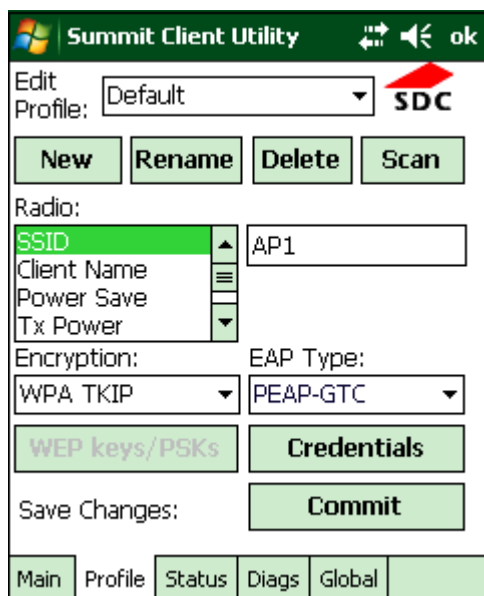
The device should be authenticating the server certificate and using PEAP/MSCHAP for the user authentication.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

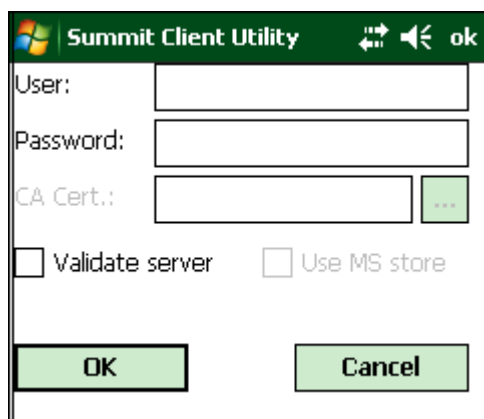
PEAP/GTC

To use PEAP/GTC, make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to PEAP-GTC.
3. Set Encryption to WPA TKIP.
4. Set Auth Type to Open.
5. To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.

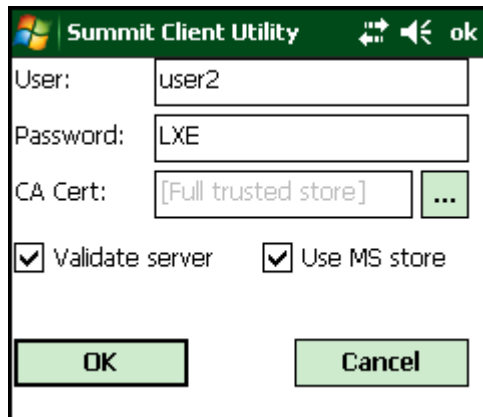


6. See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) (page 10-17) for information on entering credentials.
7. Click the Credentials button. No entries except the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name and Password when connecting to the network.
8. Enter these items as directed below.



9. Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.
10. Enter the password.
11. Leave the CA Certificate File Name blank for now.
12. Click OK then click Commit. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main Tab.

-
13. See [Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path](#) (page 10-19) for more information on certificate storage.
 14. Once successfully authenticated, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store.
 15. Return to the Credentials screen and check the Validate server checkbox.



If using the Windows certificate store:

1. Check the Use MS store checkbox. The default is to use the Full Trusted Store.
2. To select an individual certificate, click on the Browse button.
3. Uncheck the Use full trusted store checkbox.
4. Select the desired certificate and click Select. You are returned to the Credentials screen.

If using the Certs Path option:

1. Leave the Use MS store box unchecked.
2. Enter the certificate filename in the CA Cert textbox.
3. Click OK then click Commit.

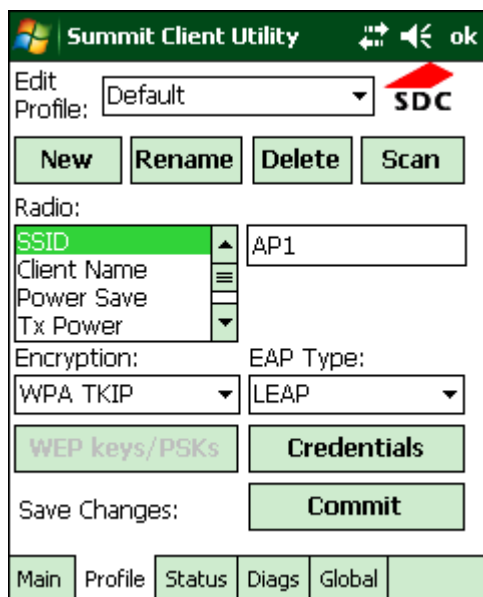
The device should be authenticating the server certificate and using PEAP/GTC for the user authentication.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

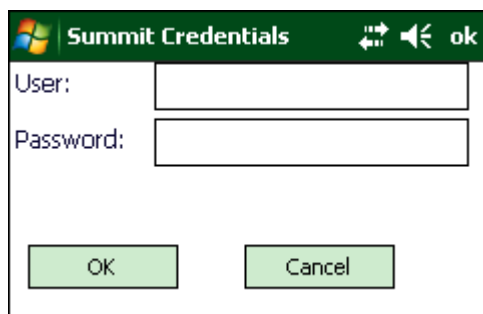
WPA/LEAP

To use WPA/LEAP, make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to LEAP.
3. Set Encryption to WPA TKIP.
4. Set Auth Type as follows:
 - If the Cisco/CCX certified AP is configured for open authentication, set the Auth Type radio parameter to Open.
 - If the AP is configured to use shared key or passphrase, set the Auth Type radio parameter to Shared.
 - If the AP is configured for network EAP only, set the Auth Type radio parameter to LEAP.
5. To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.



6. See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) (page 10-17) for information on entering credentials.
7. To use Stored Credentials, click on the Credentials button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.



8. Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.
9. Enter the password.
10. Click OK then click the Commit button.
11. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

EAP-FAST

The SCU supports EAP-FAST with automatic or manual PAC provisioning. With automatic PAC provisioning, the user credentials, whether entered on the saved credentials screen or the sign on screen, are sent to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server must have auto provisioning enabled to send the PAC provisioning credentials to the MX8.

For automatic PAC provisioning, once a username/password is authenticated, the PAC information is stored on the MX8. The same username/password must be used to authenticate each time. See the note below for more details.

Note: When using Automatic PAC Provisioning, once authenticated, there is a file stored in the \System directory with the PAC credentials. If the username is changed, that file must be deleted. The filename is autoP.00.pac.

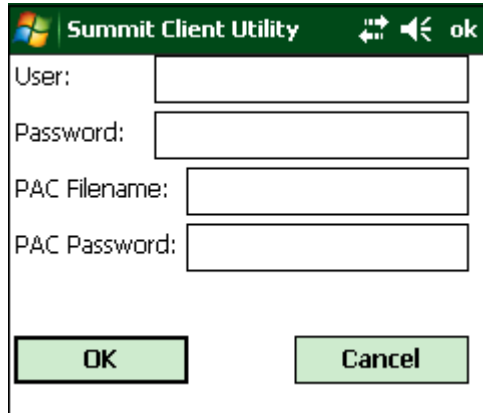
For manual PAC provisioning, the PAC filename and Password must be entered.

To use EAP-FAST, make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to EAP-FAST.
3. Set Encryption to WPA TKIP.
4. Set Auth Type to Open.
5. To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.

The screenshot shows the Summit Client Utility (SCU) interface. At the top, there's a title bar with the Windows logo, 'Summit Client Utility', and icons for help, back, and OK. Below the title bar, there's a section for 'Edit Profile:' with a dropdown menu set to 'Default' and a red arrow pointing to the 'SDC' button. Below this are four buttons: 'New', 'Rename', 'Delete', and 'Scan'. The 'Radio:' section has a dropdown menu with 'SSID' selected, and a text box containing 'AP1'. Below the 'Radio:' section are two dropdown menus: 'Encryption:' set to 'WPA TKIP' and 'EAP Type:' set to 'EAP-FAST'. Below these are two buttons: 'WEP keys/PSKs' and 'Credentials'. At the bottom of the main configuration area is a 'Commit' button. At the very bottom, there's a tabbed interface with tabs for 'Main', 'Profile', 'Status', 'Diags', and 'Global', with 'Main' currently selected.

6. See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) (page 10-17) for information on entering credentials. The entries on the Credentials screen are determined by the type of credentials (stored or sign on) and the type of PAC provisioning (automatic or manual).
7. Click on the Credentials button.
8. To use Stored Credentials, click on the Credentials button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials with automatic PAC provisioning as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.



Summit Client Utility

User:

Password:

PAC Filename:

PAC Password:

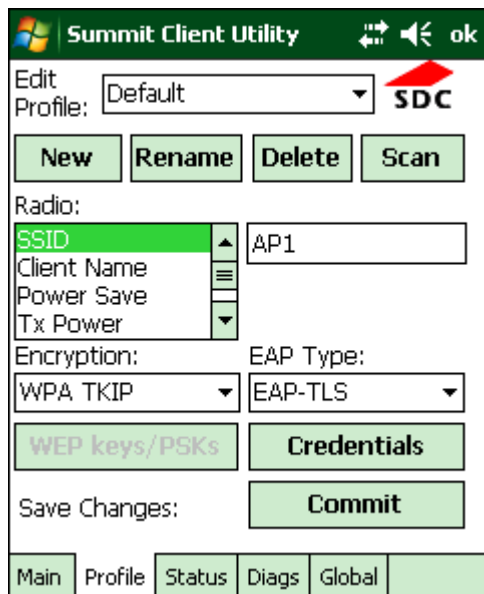
OK Cancel

9. To use Sign-On credentials:
 - Do not enter a User and Password as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.
10. To use Stored Credentials:
 - Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.
 - Enter the password.
11. To use Automatic PAC Provisioning no additional entries are required.
12. To use manual PAC Provisioning:
 - Enter the PAC Filename and PAC Password.
 - The PAC file must be copied to the directory specified in the Certs Path global variable. The PAC file must not be read only.
13. Tap OK then click the Commit button.
14. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

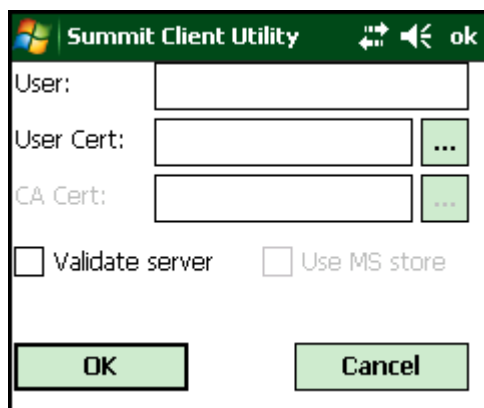
EAP-TLS

To use EAP-TLS, make sure the following profile options are used.

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to EAP-TLS.
3. Set Encryption to WPA TKIP.
4. Set Auth Type to Open.
5. To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.

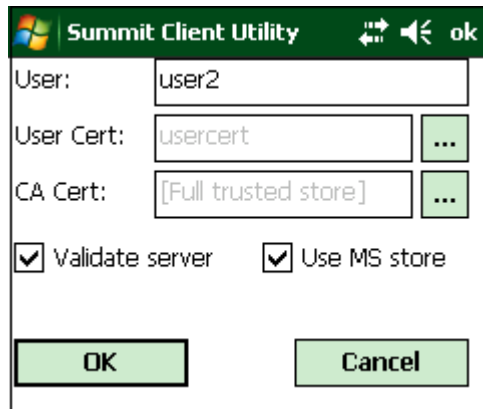


6. See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) (page 10-17) for information on entering credentials.
7. Click the Credentials button.
 - No entries except the User Certificate Filename and the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name and Password when connecting to the network.
 - For Stored Credentials, User, Password and the CA Certificate Filename must be entered.
8. Enter these items as directed below.



9. Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

10. Select a user certificate from the Windows certificate store. Use the Browse button to locate the User Cert from the certificate store. Highlight the desired certificate and press the Select button. The name of the certificate is displayed in the User Cert box.
11. Some versions of the SCU require a User Cert password. If this entry field is present, enter the password for the user certificate in the User Cert pwd box.
12. If there are no user certificates in the Windows certificate store, follow these instructions to generate and install the user certificate.
13. See [Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path](#) (page 10-19) for more information on CA certificate storage.
14. Check the Validate server checkbox.



Summit Client Utility

User: user2

User Cert: usercert ...

CA Cert: [Full trusted store] ...

☒ Validate server ☒ Use MS store

OK Cancel

If using the Windows certificate store:

1. Check the Use MS store checkbox. The default is to use the Full Trusted Store.
2. To select an individual certificate, click on the Browse button.
3. Uncheck the Use full trusted store checkbox.
4. Select the desired certificate and click Select. You are returned to the Credentials screen.

If using the Certs Path option:

1. Leave the Use MS store box unchecked.
2. Enter the certificate filename in the CA Cert textbox.
3. Click OK then click Commit.

The MX8 should be authenticating the server certificate and using EAP-TLS for the user authentication.

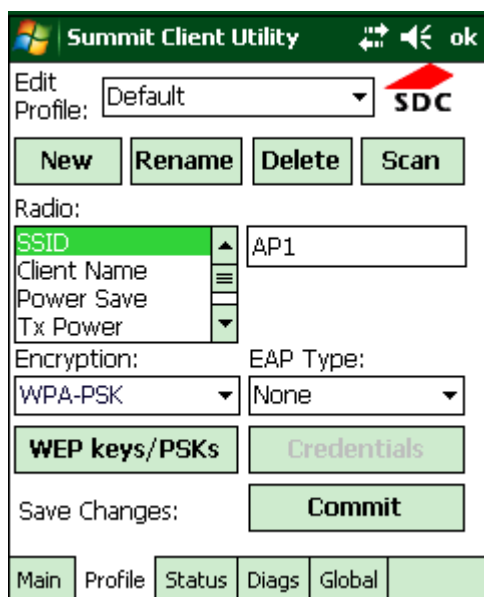
Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

Generate a Root CA certificate or a User certificate.

WPA PSK

To connect using WPA/PSK, make sure the following profile options are used:

1. Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile.
2. Set EAP Type to None.
3. Set Encryption to WPA PSK or WPA2 PSK.
4. Set Auth Type to Open.



Summit Client Utility

Edit Profile: Default

New Rename Delete Scan

Radio:

SSID AP1

Client Name

Power Save

Tx Power

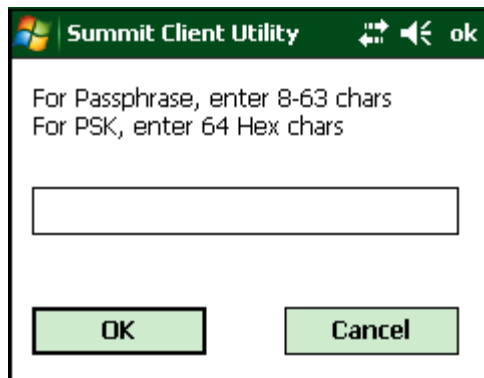
Encryption: WPA-PSK EAP Type: None

WEP keys/PSKs Credentials

Save Changes: Commit

Main Profile Status Diags Global

5. Click the WEP keys/PSKs button.



Summit Client Utility

For Passphrase, enter 8-63 chars
For PSK, enter 64 Hex chars

OK Cancel

6. This value can be 64 hex characters or an 8 to 63 byte ASCII value. Enter the key and click OK.
7. Once configured, click the Commit button.
8. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab and Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

Certificates

Note: Refer to the Security Primer (available at www.honeywellaidc.com) to prepare the Authentication Server and Access Point for communication.

Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the MX8 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.

Root Certificates are necessary for EAP-TLS, PEAP/GTC and PEAP/MSCHAP.

1. Generate a Root CA Certificate and download it to a PC.
2. Connect the MX8 to the desktop PC using ActiveSync and copy the certificate to the MX8 \System folder.
3. Install the Root CA Certificate.

User Certificates are necessary for EAP-TLS.

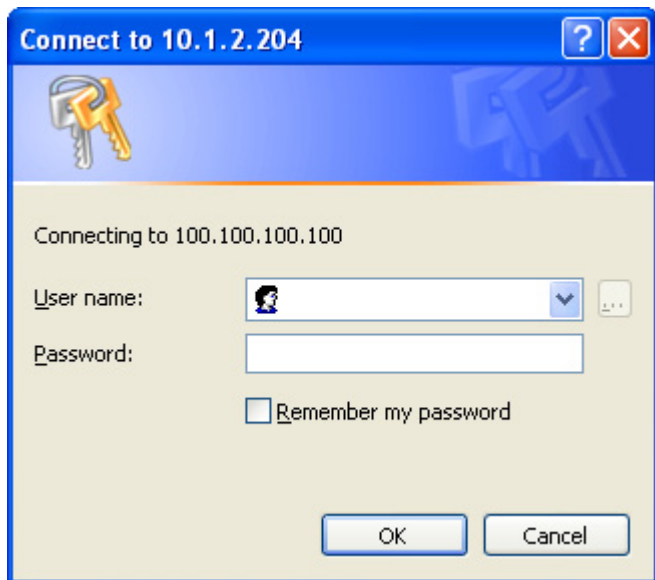
1. Generate a User Certificate and download it to a PC.
2. Install the User Certificate on the PC.
3. Export the User Certificate as a .PFX file.
4. Connect the MX8 to the desktop PC using ActiveSync and copy the certificate to the MX8\System folder.
5. Install the User Certificate.
6. After installation, perform a Suspend/Resume.
7. Verify installation.

Generating a Root CA Certificate

Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the MX8 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.

The easiest way to get the root CA certificate is to use a browser on a PC to navigate to the Certificate Authority.

1. To request the root CA certificate, open a browser to <http://<CA IP address>/certsrv>.
2. Sign into the CA with any valid username and password.



Welcome

Use this Web site to request a certificate for your Web browser, e-mail client, or other program. By using a certificate, you can verify your identity to people you communicate with over the Web, sign and encrypt messages, and, depending upon the type of certificate you request, perform other security tasks.

You can also use this Web site to download a certificate authority (CA) certificate, certificate chain, or certificate revocation list (CRL), or to view the status of a pending request.

For more information about Certificate Services, see [Certificate Services Documentation](#).

Select a task:

[Request a certificate](#)

[View the status of a pending certificate request](#)

[Download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL](#)

-
3. Click the Download a CA certificate, certificate chain or CRL link.
 4. Make sure the correct root CA certificate is selected in the list box.

Download a CA Certificate, Certificate Chain, or CRL

To trust certificates issued from this certification authority, [install this CA certificate chain](#).

To download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL, select the certificate and encoding method.

CA certificate:



Encoding method:

- ☒ DER
☐ Base 64

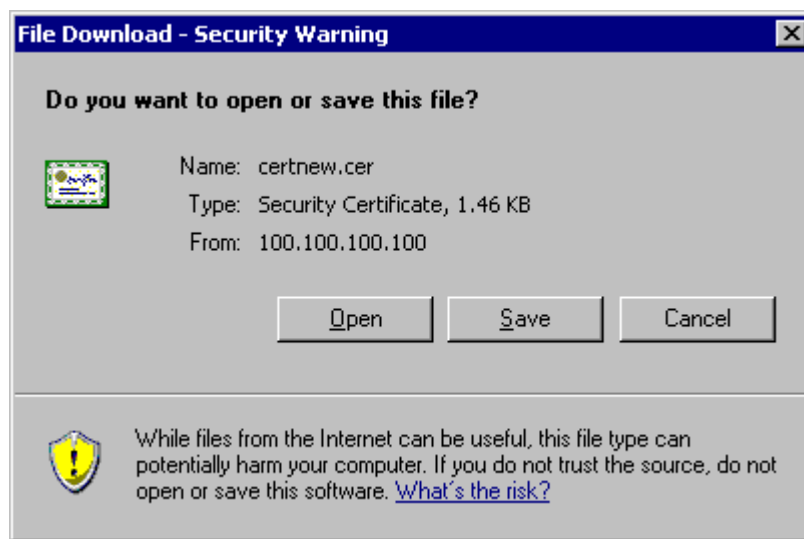
[Download CA certificate](#)

[Download CA certificate chain](#)

[Download latest base CRL](#)

[Download latest delta CRL](#)

- Click the DER button.
- To download the CA certificate, click on the Download CA certificate link.

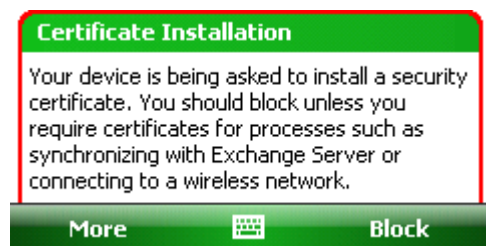


- Click the Save button and save the certificate. Make sure to keep track of the name and location of the certificate.
- Install the certificate on the MX8.

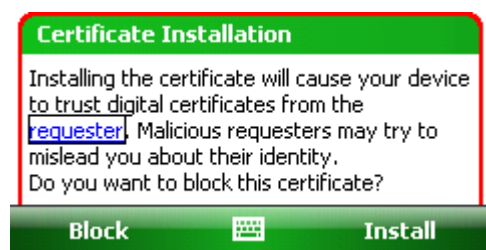
Installing a Root CA Certificate

Note: This section is used only if the Windows certificate store is used. If the certificate store is not used, copy the certificate to the \System folder or other path specified in the Summit Certs global parameter.

1. Copy the certificate file to the MX8. The certificate file has a .CER extension. Locate the file and tap it.
2. A certificate installation warning is displayed.



3. Tap More.



4. Tap Install to continue the installation. An installation successful message is displayed.
5. You can view any installed user certificates by selecting **Start > Settings > System** and tapping the Certificates icon. Installed root certificates are displayed on the Root tab.

Generating a User Certificate

The easiest way to get the user certificate is to use the browser on a PC to navigate to the Certificate Authority. To request the user certificate, open a browser to <http://<CA IP address>/certsrv>.

Sign into the CA with the username and password of the person who will be logging into the mobile device.



6. This process saves a user certificate file. There is no separate private key file as used on Windows CE devices.

Welcome

Use this Web site to request a certificate for your Web browser, e-mail client, or other program. By using a certificate, you can verify your identity to people you communicate with over the Web, sign and encrypt messages, and, depending upon the type of certificate you request, perform other security tasks.

You can also use this Web site to download a certificate authority (CA) certificate, certificate chain, or certificate revocation list (CRL), or to view the status of a pending request.

For more information about Certificate Services, see [Certificate Services Documentation](#).

Select a task:

[Request a certificate](#)

[View the status of a pending certificate request](#)

[Download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL](#)

7. Click the Request a certificate link.

Request a Certificate

Select the certificate type:

[User Certificate](#)

Or, submit an [advanced certificate request](#).

8. Click on the User Certificate link.

User Certificate - Identifying Information

No further identifying information is required. To complete your certificate, press submit:

[More Options >>](#)

Submit >

- Click on the Submit button. If there is a message box asking if you want to confirm the request, click Yes. The User Certificate is issued.

Certificate Issued

The certificate you requested was issued to you.

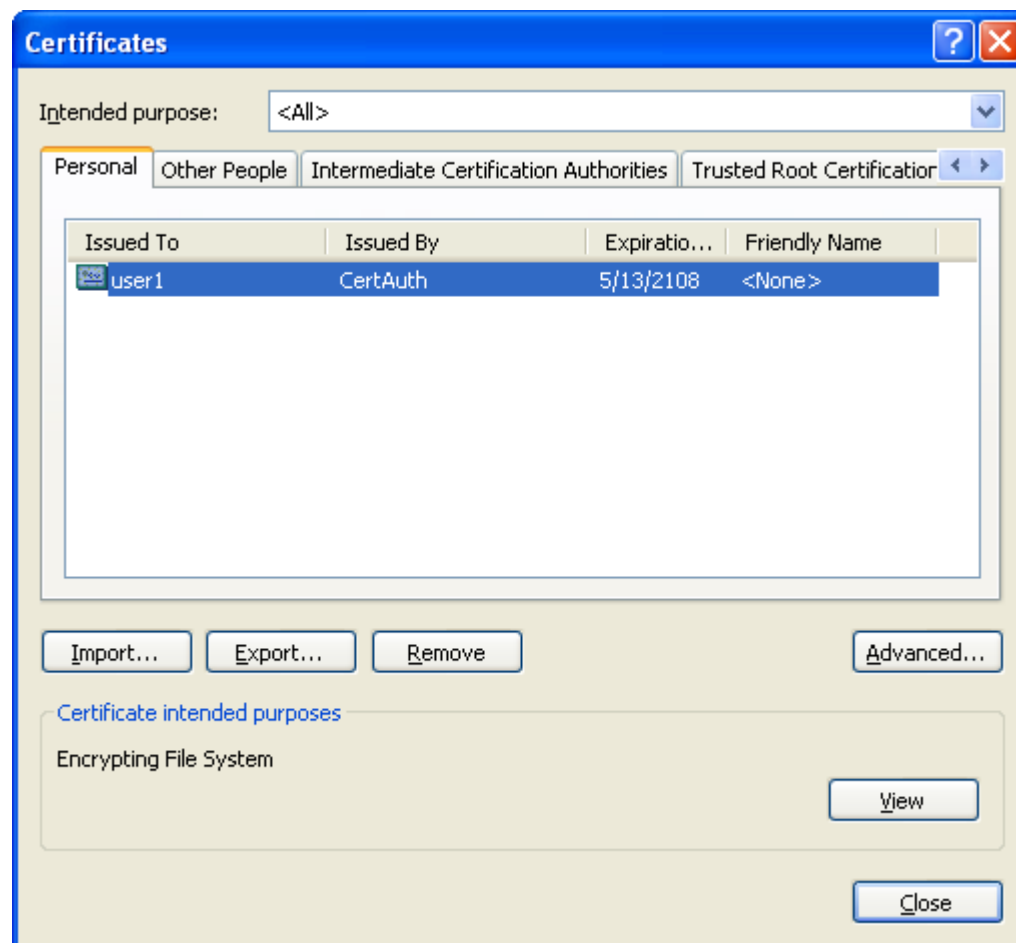


[Install this certificate](#)

- Install the user certificate on the requesting computer by clicking the Install this certificate link.
- Export the certificate as described below.

Exporting a User Certificate

- Start Internet Explorer on the PC that requested the certificate.
- Select **Tools > Internet Options > Content** and click the Certificates button.



- Make sure the Personal tab is selected. Highlight the certificate and click the Export button.
- The Certificate Export Wizard is started.
- Select Yes, export the private key and click Next.

Do you want to export the private key with the certificate?

- ☒ Yes, export the private key
- ☐ No, do not export the private key

6. Uncheck Enable strong protection and check Next. The certificate type must be PKCS #12 (.PFX).

- ☒ Personal Information Exchange - PKCS #12 (.PFX)
- ☐ Include all certificates in the certification path if possible
- ☐ Enable strong protection (requires IE 5.0, NT 4.0 SP4 or above)
- ☐ Delete the private key if the export is successful

7. When the private key is exported, you must enter the password, confirm the password and click Next. Be sure to remember the password as it is needed when installing the certificate.

Type and confirm a password.

Password:

Confirm password:

8. Supply the file name for the certificate. Use the Browse button to select the folder where you wish to store the certificate. The certificate is saved with a .PFX extension.

File name:

Browse...

9. Click Finish. and OK to close the Successful Export message.

10. Locate the User Certificate in the specified location.

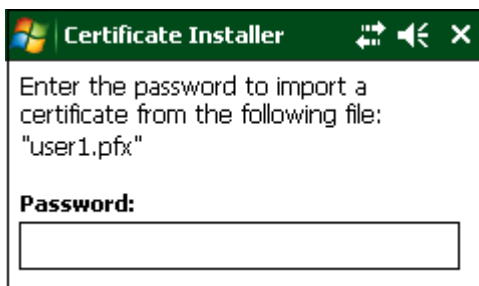
11. Copy to the MX8.

12. Install the user certificate.

Installing a User Certificate

After generating and exporting the user certificate, copy it from the PC to the MX8. Copy the certificate to a location on the MX8, such as a storage card or the \System folder.

Locate the certificate file (it has a .PFX extension) and tap on it. You are prompted for the password that was assigned when the certificate was exported.

The image shows a screenshot of a Windows-style window titled "Certificate Installer". The window has a green title bar with standard Windows icons (minimize, maximize, close) on the right. The main content area has a black background with white text. It says "Enter the password to import a certificate from the following file:" followed by the file name "user1.pfx" in quotes. Below this, there is a label "Password:" and a white rectangular text input field.

Enter the password and tap Done. A message is displayed that the certificate installation was successful.

You can view any installed user certificates by selecting **Start > Settings > System** and tapping the Certificates icon.



Installed user certificates are displayed on the Personal tab.

Advanced Certificate Request

Certificate Template:

User

Key Options:

☒ Create new key set ☐ Use existing key set

CSP: Microsoft Enhanced Cryptographic Provider v1.0

Key Usage: ☒ Exchange

Key Size: 1024 Min: 384 Max: 16384 (common key sizes: [512](#) [1024](#) [2048](#) [4096](#) [8192](#) [16384](#))

☒ Automatic key container name ☐ User specified key container name

☒ Mark keys as exportable

☒ Export keys to file

Full path name: user1key.pvk

☐ Enable strong private key protection

☐ Store certificate in the local computer certificate store
Stores the certificate in the local computer store instead of in the user's certificate store. Does not install the root CA's certificate. You must be an administrator to generate or use a key in the local machine store.

Additional Options:

Request Format: ☒ CMC ☐ PKCS10

Hash Algorithm: SHA-1

Only used to sign request.

☐ Save request to a file

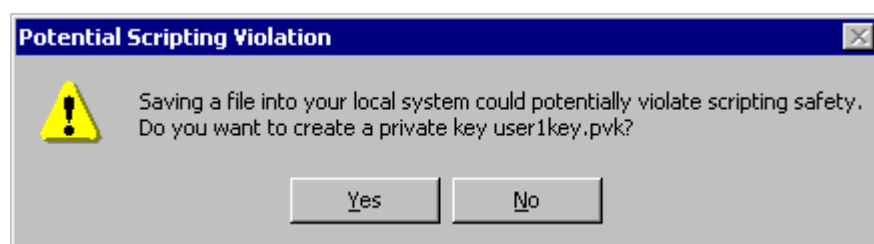
Attributes:

Friendly Name:

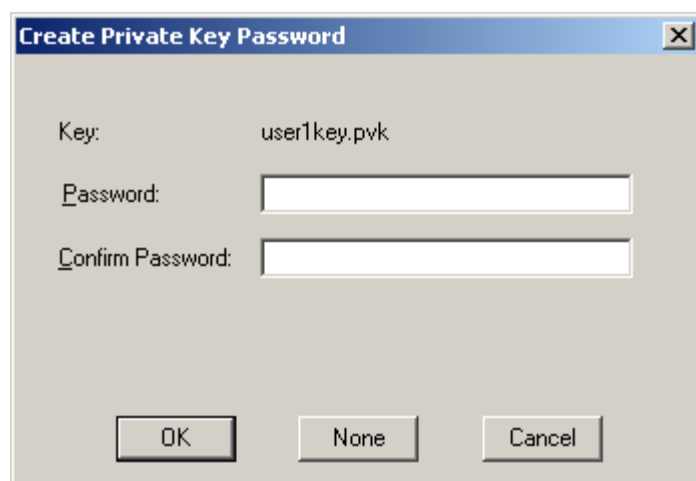
Submit >

13. For the Certificate Template, select User.
14. Check the Mark keys as exportable and the Export keys to file checkboxes.
15. Type the full path on the local PC where the private key is to be copied. Also specify the private key filename.

-
16. Be sure to note the name used for the private key file, for example USER.PVK. The certificate file created later in this process must be given the same name, for example, USER.CER.
 17. DO NOT check to use strong private key protection.
 18. Make any other desired changes and click the Submit button.



19. If any script notifications occur, click the Yes button to continue the certificate request.



20. When prompted for the private key password:
 - Click None if you do not wish to use a password, or
 - Enter and confirm your desired password then click OK.

Certificate Issued

The certificate you requested was issued to you.

☒ DER encoded or ☐ Base 64 encoded



[Download certificate](#)

[Download certificate chain](#)

21. Click the Download certificate link.



22. Click Save to download and store the user certificate to the PC. Make sure to keep track of the name and location of the certificate. The private key file is also downloaded and saved during this process.

23. Be sure use the same name for the certificate file as was used for the private key file. For example, if the private key was saved as USER.PVK then the certificate file created must be given the same name, for example, USER.CER.

24. Install the user certificate.

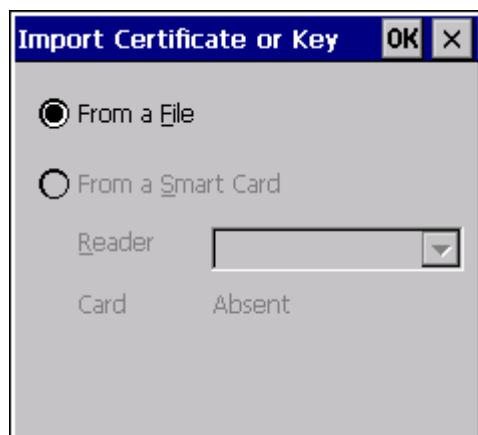
Installing a User Certificate

Copy the certificate and private key files to the MX8.

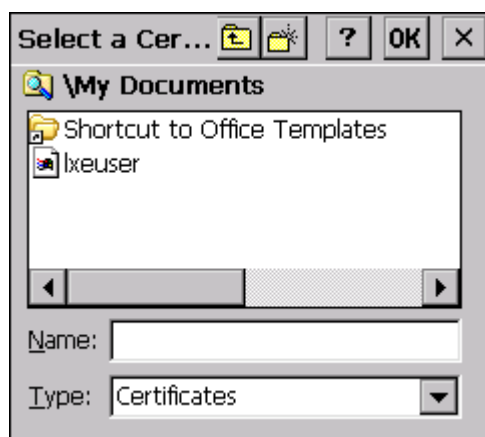
1. Import the certificate by navigating to Start | Control Panel | Certificates.
2. Select My Certificates from the pull down list.



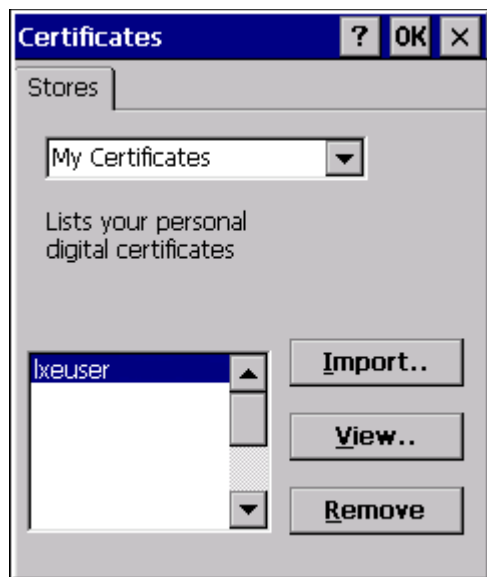
3. Tap the Import button.



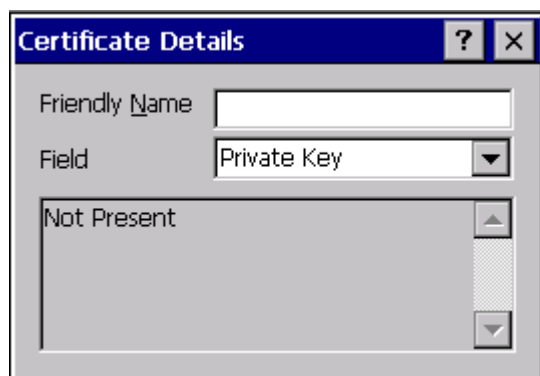
4. Make sure From a File is selected and tap OK.



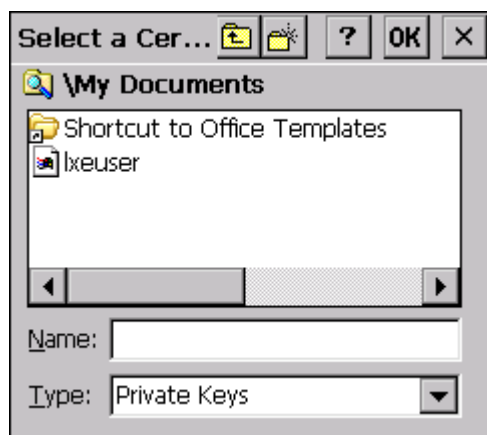
5. Using the explorer buttons, browse to the location where you copied the certificate, select the certificate desired and tap OK.
6. The certificate is now shown in the list.



7. With the certificate you just imported highlighted, tap View.
8. From the Field pull down menu, select Private Key.



- If the private key is present, the process is complete.
 - If the private key is not present, import the private key.
9. To import the private key, tap OK to return to the Certificates screen.
 10. Tap import.



-
11. Using the explorer buttons, browse to the location where you copied the private key file, change the Type pull down list to Private Keys, select the certificate desired and tap OK. Enter the password for the certificate if appropriate.

Verify Installation

1. Tap on View to see the certificate details again.



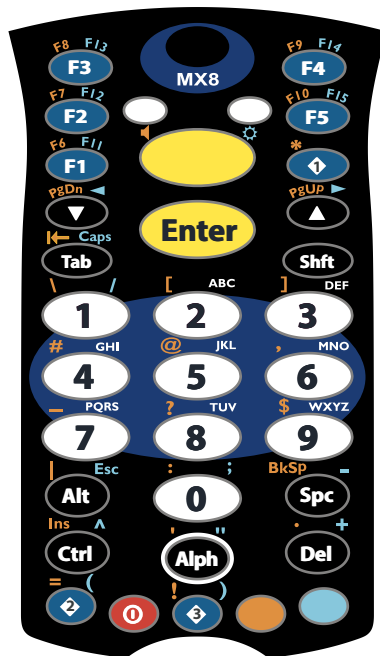
2. The private key should now say present. If it does not, there is a problem. Possible items to check:
 - Make sure the certificate was generated with a separate private key file, as shown earlier in this section. If the certificate was not generated with a separate private key file, generate a new certificate and follow the import process again.
 - Make sure the certificate and private key file have the same name, for example USER.CER for the certificate and USER.PVK for the private key file. If the file names are not the same, rename the private key file and import it again.

Introduction

Remember : “Sticky” keys are also known as “second” function keys. Ctrl, Alt, Shft, Blue and Orange keys are “sticky keys”. Sticky keys do not need to be held down before pressing the next (or desired) key. It is valid to use combined modifiers on specific keys.

The key mapping in this section relates to the physical keypad. See the Input Panel for the Virtual (or Soft) Keypad used with the stylus.

32 key Numeric-Alpha Triple-Tap Keymap



- The following [32 Key Triple-Tap Keypad](#) (page 2-7) keymap is used on an MX8 that is NOT running a Terminal Emulator. Honeywell terminal emulators use a separate keymap.
- When using a sequence of keys that require an alpha key, first press the Alpha key. Use the Shft sticky key or the Caps key sequence (Blue+Tab) for upper case alphabetic characters.
- Pressing the Alpha key forces “Alpha” mode for the 2,3,4,5,6,7,8, and 9 keys. The 1 and 0 keys continue to place a 1 and 0 into the text field.
- To create a combination of numbers and letters before pressing Enter, remember to tap the Alpha key to toggle between Alpha and Numeric mode.
- When using a sequence of keys that do not include the Alpha key but does include a sticky key, press the sticky key first then the rest of the key sequence.
- For those keymaps that require remapping (MAP), keys can be remapped using the Buttons Panel (**Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons**).
- Pressing the Power key when in any sticky mode (Blue, Orange, Shift, etc) either turns the device On (when Off) or places it in Suspend (when On).

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
Power / Suspend	Power		
Field Exit (default is VK_PAUSE) MAP = Mappable	Blue (MAP)	Shft (MAP)	Diamond #1
=	Orange	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#2 Default is Mappable
(	Blue	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#2 Default is Mappable
!	Orange	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#3 Default is Mappable
)	Blue	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#3 Default is Mappable
Volume Adjust Mode	Orange	Scan	Up Arrow / Down Arrow
Display Backlight Brightness Adjust Mode	Blue	Scan	Up Arrow / Down Arrow
Toggle Alpha Mode	Alph		
Toggle Blue Mode	Blue		
Toggle Orange Mode	Orange		

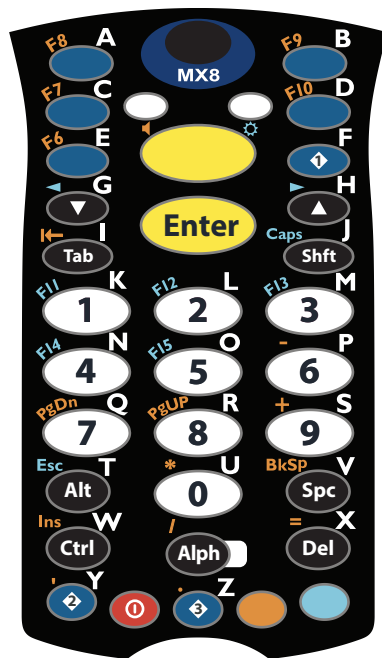
To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
Toggle Shift Mode	Shft		
Alt Mode	Alt		
Control Mode	Ctrl		
Esc	Blue	Alt	
Space	Spc		
Enter	Enter		
Scan Mode	Scan		
CapsLock (Toggle)	Blue	Tab	
Back Space	Orange	Spc	
Tab	Tab		
Back Tab	Orange	Tab	
Up Arrow	Up Arrow		
Down Arrow	Down Arrow		
Right Arrow	Blue	Up Arrow	
Left Arrow	Blue	Down Arrow	
Insert	Orange	Ctrl	
Delete	Del		
Home	Shft	Down Arrow	
End	Shft	Up Arrow	
Page Up	Orange	Up Arrow	
Page Down	Orange	Down Arrow	
F1	F1		
F2	F2		
F3	F3		
F4	F4		
F5	F5		
F6	Orange	F1	
F7	Orange	F2	
F8	Orange	F3	
F9	Orange	F4	
F10	Orange	F5	
F11	Blue	F1	
F12	Blue	F2	
F13	Blue	F3	
F14	Blue	F4	
F15	Blue	F5	
F16	Shft	F1	
F17	Shft	F2	
F18	Shft	F3	
F19	Shft	F4	
F20	Shft	F5	

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
F21	Shft	Orange	F1
F22	Shft	Orange	F2
F23	Shft	Orange	F3
F24	Shft	Orange	F4
a	Alpha	2	
b	Alpha	22	
c	Alpha	222	
d	Alpha	3	
e	Alpha	33	
f	Alpha	333	
g	Alpha	4	
h	Alpha	44	
i	Alpha	444	
j	Alpha	5	
k	Alpha	55	
l	Alpha	555	
m	Alpha	6	
n	Alpha	66	
o	Alpha	666	
p	Alpha	7	
q	Alpha	77	
r	Alpha	777	
s	Alpha	7777	
t	Alpha	8	
u	Alpha	88	
v	Alpha	888	
w	Alpha	9	
x	Alpha	99	
y	Alpha	999	
z	Alpha	9999	
A	Shft	Alpha	2
B	Shft	Alpha	22
C	Shft	Alpha	222
D	Shft	Alpha	3
E	Shft	Alpha	33
F	Shft	Alpha	333
G	Shft	Alpha	4
H	Shft	Alpha	44
I	Shft	Alpha	444
J	Shft	Alpha	5
K	Shft	Alpha	55

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
L	Shft	Alpha	555
M	Shft	Alpha	6
N	Shft	Alpha	66
O	Shft	Alpha	666
P	Shft	Alpha	7
Q	Shft	Alpha	77
R	Shft	Alpha	777
S	Shft	Alpha	7777
T	Shft	Alpha	8
U	Shft	Alpha	88
V	Shft	Alpha	888
W	Shft	Alpha	9
X	Shft	Alpha	99
Y	Shft	Alpha	999
Z	Shft	Alpha	9999
1	1		
2	2		
3	3		
4	4		
5	5		
6	6		
7	7		
8	8		
9	9		
0	0		
. (period)	Orange	DEL	
<	Blue	7	
[	Blue	2	
[	Orange	2	
]	Blue	3	
]	Orange	3	
>	Blue	8	
=	Orange	Diamond#2	
{	Blue	4	
}	Blue	5	
/	Blue	1	
-	Blue	Spc	
+	Blue	Del	
* (asterisk)	Orange	Diamond#1	
* (asterisk)	Shft	8	
: (colon)	Orange	0 (zero)	

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
;(semicolon)	Blue	0 (zero)	
?	Orange	8	
` (accent)	Blue	6	
_ (underscore)	Orange	7	
, (comma)	Orange	6	
' (apostrophe)	Orange	Alph	
~ (tilde)	Blue	9	
\	Orange	1	
|	Orange	Alt	
"	Blue	Alph	
!	Orange	Diamond#3	
!	Shft	1	
@	Orange	5	
@	Shft	2	
#	Orange	4	
#	Shft	3	
\$	Orange	9	
\$	Shft	4	
%	Shft	5	
^	Blue	Ctrl	
^	Shft	6	
&	Shft	7	
(	Blue	Diamond#2	
(	Shft	9	
)	Blue	Diamond#3	
)	Shft	0 (zero)	

32 key Alpha-Mode Keypad



•The following [32 Key Alpha-Mode Keypad](#) (page 2-8) keymap is used on an MX8 that is NOT running a Terminal Emulator. Honeywell terminal emulators use a separate keymap.

•When using a sequence of keys that require an alpha key, first press the Alph key. Use the Shft sticky key for upper case alphabetic characters.

•Tapping the Power key when in any sticky mode (Blue, Orange, Shift, etc) either turns the device On (when Off) or places it in Suspend (when active).

•Pressing the Alph key locks the keypad into alpha mode. Pressing Alph a second time toggles alpha mode off.

•To create a combination of numbers and letters before pressing Enter, remember to tap the Alph key to toggle between Alpha and Numeric mode.

•Since letters are mapped to Alt, Ctl, Shft, these modifiers must be pressed before Alph. For example, for Alt T, press Alt, then Alph, then Alt again.

•For those keymaps that require remapping (MAP), keys can be remapped using the Buttons Panel (**Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons**).

•When using a sequence of keys that do not include the Alph key but does include a sticky key, press the sticky key first then the rest of the key sequence.

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
Power / Suspend	Power		
Field Exit (default is VK_PAUSE) MAP = Mappable	Blue (MAP)	Shft (MAP)	Diamond #1
=	Orange	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#2 Default is Mappable
(	Blue	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#2 Default is Mappable
!	Orange	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#3 Default is Mappable
)	Blue	Shft (MAP)	Diamond#3 Default is Mappable
Volume Adjust Mode	Orange	Scan	Up Arrow / Down Arrow
Display Backlight Brightness Adjust Mode	Blue	Scan	Up Arrow / Down Arrow
Toggle Alpha Mode	Alph		
Toggle Blue Mode	Blue		
Toggle Orange Mode	Orange		
Toggle Shift Mode	Shft		
Alt Mode	Alt		
Control Mode	Ctrl		
Esc	Blue	Alt	
Space	Spc		
Enter	Enter		
Scan Mode	Scan		

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
CapsLock (Toggle)	Blue	Shft	
Uppercase Alpha	Shft		
Back Space	Orange	Spc	
Tab	Tab		
Back Tab	Orange	Tab	
Up Arrow	Up Arrow		
Down Arrow	Down Arrow		
Right Arrow	Blue	Up Arrow	
Left Arrow	Blue	Down Arrow	
Insert	Orange	Ctrl	
Delete	Del		
Home	Shft	Down Arrow	
End	Shft	Up Arrow	
Page Up	Orange	Up Arrow	
Page Up	Orange	8	
Page Down	Orange	7	
Page Down	Orange	Down Arrow	
F1	F1		
F2	F2		
F3	F3		
F4	F4		
F5	F5		
F6	Orange	F1	
F7	Orange	F2	
F8	Orange	F3	
F9	Orange	F4	
F10	Orange	F5	
F11	Blue	F1	
F11	Blue	1	
F12	Blue	F2	
F12	Blue	2	
F13	Blue	F3	
F13	Blue	3	
F14	Blue	F4	
F14	Blue	4	
F15	Blue	F5	
F15	Blue	5	
F16	Shft	F1	
F17	Shft	F2	
F18	Shft	F3	
F19	Shft	F4	

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
F20	Shft	F5	
F21	Shft	Orange	F1
F22	Shft	Orange	F2
F23	Shft	Orange	F3
F24	Shft	Orange	F4
a	Alpha	F3	
b	Alpha	F4	
c	Alpha	F2	
d	Alpha	F5	
e	Alpha	F1	
f	Alpha	Diamond 1	
g	Alpha	Down Arrow	
h	Alpha	Up Arrow	
i	Alpha	Tab	
j	Alpha	Shft	
k	Alpha	1	
l	Alpha	2	
m	Alpha	3	
n	Alpha	4	
o	Alpha	5	
p	Alpha	6	
q	Alpha	7	
r	Alpha	8	
s	Alpha	9	
t	Alpha	Alt	
u	Alpha	0 (zero)	
v	Alpha	Spc	
w	Alpha	Ctl	
x	Alpha	Del	
y	Alpha	Diamond 2	
z	Alpha	Diamond 3	
A	Shft	Alpha	F3
B	Shft	Alpha	F4
C	Shft	Alpha	F2
D	Shft	Alpha	F5
E	Shft	Alpha	F1
F	Shft	Alpha	Diamond 1
G	Shft	Alpha	Down Arrow
H	Shft	Alpha	Up Arrow
I	Shft	Alpha	Tab
J	Shft	Alpha	Shft

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
K	Shft	Alpha	1
L	Shft	Alpha	2
M	Shft	Alpha	3
N	Shft	Alpha	4
O	Shft	Alpha	5
P	Shft	Alpha	6
Q	Shft	Alpha	7
R	Shft	Alpha	8
S	Shft	Alpha	9
T	Shft	Alpha	Alt
U	Shft	Alpha	0 (zero)
V	Shft	Alpha	Spc
W	Shft	Alpha	Ctl
X	Shft	Alpha	Del
Y	Shft	Alpha	Diamond 2
Z	Shft	Alpha	Diamond 3
1	1		
2	2		
3	3		
4	4		
5	5		
6	6		
7	7		
8	8		
9	9		
0	0 (zero)		
. (period)	Orange	Diamond 3	
<	Blue	7	
[	Blue	2	
]	Orange	3	
>	Blue	8	
=	Orange	Del	
{	Orange	4	
}	Orange	5	
/	Orange	Alph	
-	Orange	Spc	
+	Orange	9	
* (asterisk)	Orange	0 (zero)	
* (asterisk)	Shft	8	
: (colon)	Blue	Diamond 3	
; (semicolon)	Blue	0 (zero)	

To get this Key / Function	Press these Keys in this Order		
?	Orange	Diamond 1	
` (accent)	Blue	6	
_ (underscore)	Blue	Diamond 2	
, (comma)	Orange	Diamond 2	
' (apostrophe)	Orange	1	
~ (tilde)	Blue	9	
\	Blue	Diamond 1	
|	Orange	Alt	
"	Blue	Alph	
!	Shft	1	
@	Shft	2	
#	Shft	3	
\$	Shft	4	
%	Shft	5	
^	Shft	6	
&	Shft	7	
(	Shft	9	
)	Shft	0 (zero)	

Unpacking your Cradles

After you open the shipping carton containing the product, take the following steps:

- Check for damage during shipment. Report damage immediately to the carrier who delivered the carton.
- Make sure the items in the carton match your order.
- Save the shipping container for later storage or shipping.

Communication cables and power cables are ordered separately.

Overview

This chapter provides instruction for the end-user, installer or system administrator to follow when setting up or using MX8 cradles.

Three cradles are available:

- A desktop cradle that secures the MX8, recharges batteries and enables communications between the MX8 and another device. See [Using the Desktop Cradle](#) (page 12-3).
- A passive vehicle-mount cradle that secures the MX8 in a vehicle. See [Using the Passive Vehicle Cradle](#) (page 12-15).
- A Multi-dock that secures up to four MX8s and recharges the battery in each. See [Using the Charging Multi-Dock](#) (page 12-12).

The MX8 must have a main battery installed when it is docked in a cradle. Wireless host/client communications can occur whether the cradle is receiving external power or not as wireless functions draw power from the main battery in the MX8.

MX8 keypad data entries can be mixed with cradle-tethered scanner bar code data entries while the MX8 is in a powered cradle. Bluetooth device connection and use, while the MX9 is docked, are managed by the MX8 Bluetooth program, not the cradle.

The MX8 can be either On, Off or in Suspend Mode while in the cradle. Special purpose and power cables are available from Honeywell.

Never put the MX8 into a vehicle mounted passive assembly until the assembly is securely fastened to the vehicle.

Preparing the Cradle for Use

Note: Keep dirt and foreign objects out of the cradle. Do not short circuit any of the charging terminals (pins), as this action could result in injury or property damage.

Place cradles on a stable surface out of the way of:

- inclement weather,
- extremely high concentrations of dust or wind blown debris,
- accidental knocks, bumps or other shocks to the cradle and items in the cradle bays.
- Leave enough space at cable connectors to ensure cables are protected from jostling, tugging or being disconnected by passing objects.
- Do not place the desktop cradle and Multi-dock in a closed area with restricted air flow.

In addition to the above, vehicle mounted passive cradles should be positioned in the vehicle where the cradle:

- is protected from rain and inclement weather,
- does not obstruct the driver's vision or safe vehicle operation,
- can be easily accessed by a user seated in the driver's seat while the vehicle is not in operation.
- Leave enough space at the back of the cradle for the MX8 trigger handle.
- There must be at least 2" clearance at the back of the vehicle cradle for power, serial interface and the Input/Output cables.

Tethered Scanners and the MX8 Cradles

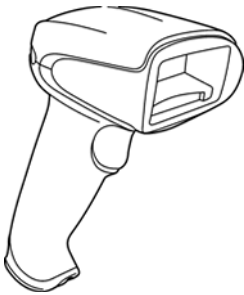
An MX8 powered cradle supports tethered scanner attachment. A powered cradle provides 5V power to a tethered scanner. The passive vehicle cradle cannot support tethered scanner attachment. There is no software in the cradles.

Pressing the MX8 Scan button has no effect on tethered bar code scanners connected to a powered cradle. Tethered scanners read bar code scans only when the trigger on the tethered scanner is pressed.

A tethered scanner can be connected to the 9-pin RS232 Serial Interface port on the desktop cradle.

Bluetooth scanner connection and use, while the MX8 is docked in a cradle, are managed by the Bluetooth client, not the cradle.

MX8 keypad data entries can be mixed with tethered scanner bar code data entries. Any tethered scanner that decodes the bar code internally and outputs an RS232 data stream may be used. It sends the data to the MX8 in ASCII format.



Tethered scanners send scanned data to the MX8 when the MX8 is in a powered cradle and the tethered scanner is connected to the Serial Interface port on the cradle.

When a tethered scanner is connected to the Serial Interface port on a powered cradle, the MX8 must be configured as follows:

1. Open the Data Collection Wedge Main tab panel on the MX8.
2. Enable either Device 1, Device 2 or Device 3.
3. Close the Data Collection Wedge application.

Cleaning, Storage and Service

Cleaning

Do not use paper towels or harsh-chemical-based cleaning fluids since they may result in damage to the surfaces and/or battery connectors.

Use a clean soft cloth to wipe any dirt, moisture or grease from the MX8, charging contacts or the cradle. Do not use any liquid to clean the Multi-charger, cradle, battery pack, MX8, or charging terminals (pins). Spray or dampen the cleaning cloth with liquids/sprays. If possible, clean only those areas which are soiled.

Lint/particulates can be removed from the connectors, charging terminals and charging/docking bays with clean, filtered canned air.

Storage

When the cradle and Multi-charger is not in service, it should be stored in a cool dry place, protected from weather and airborne debris. Do not store a spare MX8 or spare battery in the docking bays in storage.

Service

Inspect the feet and replace them if any are cracked on the Desktop and Multi-charger. There are no serviceable parts in MX8 cradles and Multi-chargers. Do not attempt to open the units.

If the cradle or mounting components are broken, loose or cracked, the assembly must be taken out of service and replaced. Periodically test a mounted cradle for stability and tighten connections as needed.

Battery Cleaning, Storage and Service

Cleaning

The battery pack should not require cleaning unless it has become heavily soiled. Old or damaged batteries should be disposed of promptly and properly. The best way to dispose of used batteries is to recycle them. Battery recycling facilities recover the Nickel, Lithium or Lead from old batteries to manufacture new batteries.

Use only mild detergent with a slightly damp cloth to clean the outside of the battery. Do not use solvents or flammable cleaners. Allow the case to dry fully before using again.

Do not allow cleaning agents of any kind to contact the charging contacts; they may be damaged. If necessary, clean them with a soft-bristle, dry brush or compressed air.

Storage

Battery packs should be stored, charging contact side up, in a cool dry place, protected from weather and airborne debris, whenever possible.

Do not store battery packs in direct sunlight, on a metal surface, or anywhere the battery pack cannot cool down.

Do not leave the battery pack in a non-operating charger. The battery pack may discharge through the charger rather than hold its charge.

Battery packs may leak up to 1 mA current through the battery contacts when left in a non-powered charger pocket.

Service

There are no user serviceable parts in the Lithium Ion Battery Pack. Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) for battery disposal and replacement options.

Using the Desktop Cradle

Introduction

This device is intended for indoor use only and requires an indoor AC power source. This device is not approved for use in hazardous locations.

The desktop cradle is available in three configurations:

1. Without a power supply. A power supply must be ordered separately.
2. With a power supply and a US power cord.
3. With a power supply but without a power cord. A country specific power cord must be provided.

Communications cables for the MX8 are available separately.

Quick Start - Desktop Cradle

The following list outlines, in a general way, the process to follow when preparing the MX8 desktop cradle for use. Refer to the following sections in this document for more details.

1. Refer to Install/Remove Desktop Cradle Adapter Cup.
2. Connect the cradle end of the power adapter cable to the Power port on the back of the cradle.
3. Attach the AC power connector to a dependable power source.
4. Attach any desired external cabled devices to the ports on the cradle.
5. The desktop cradle is ready for use.

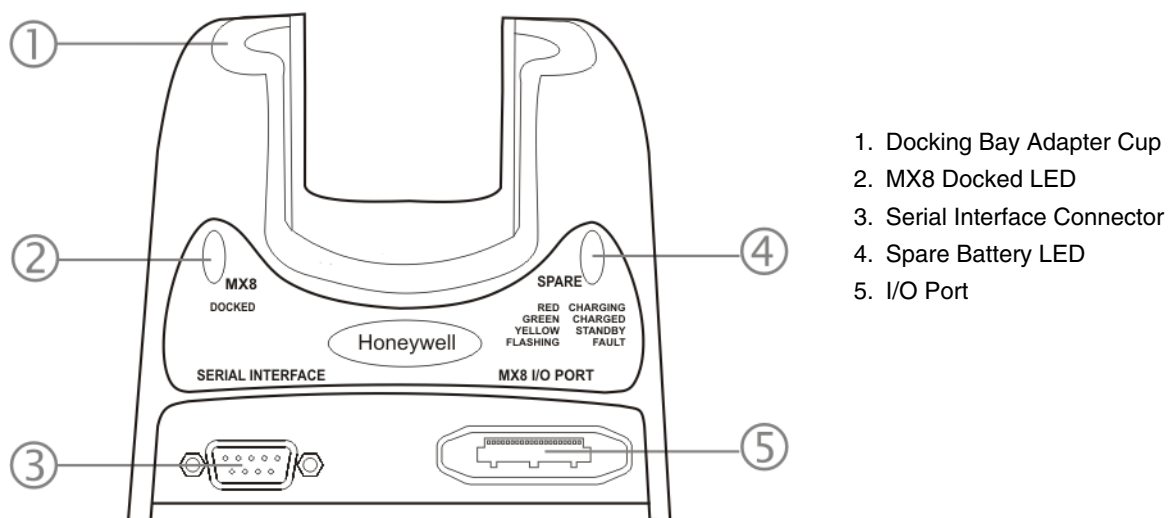
Battery Charging in a Desktop Cradle

Main battery recharging in a docked MX8 is managed by the Power Management settings in the MX8. Refer to the Power control panel on the MX8.

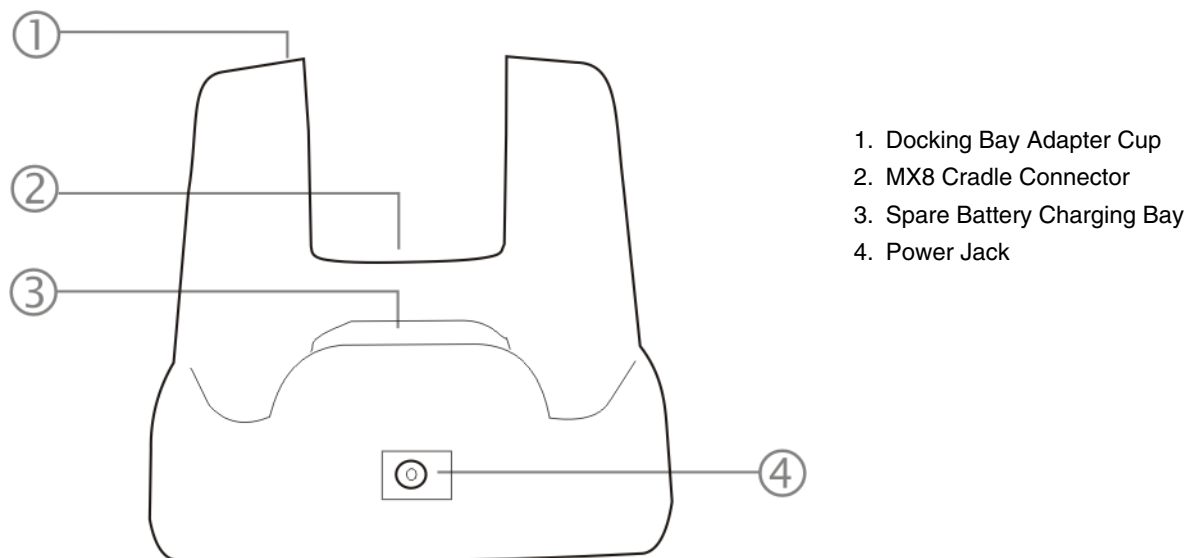
The spare battery in the spare battery well re-charges with or without an MX8 in the dock. The spare battery is fully charged in approximately four hours.

The cradle must be receiving power from an external power source before the main battery in the docked MX8 or spare battery pack charging can take place.

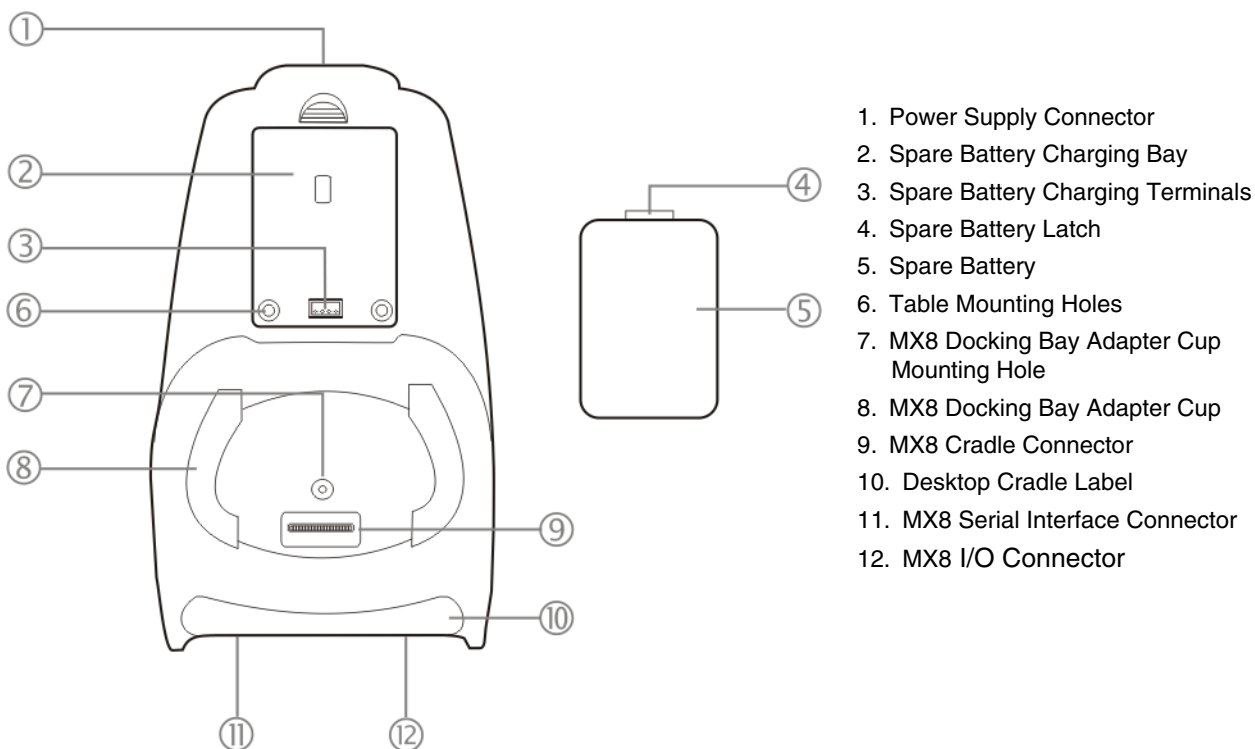
Front View



Back View

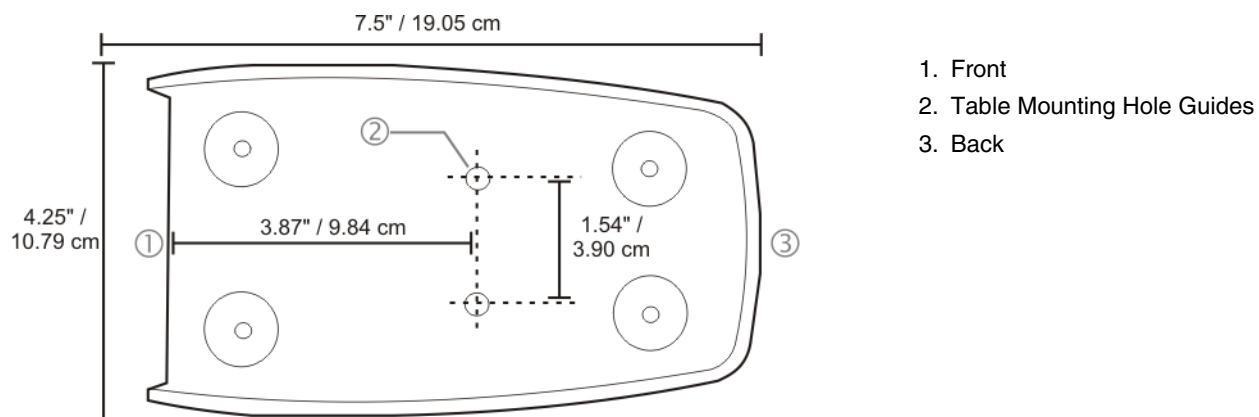


Top View



Desktop Mounting Footprint

Following image is not to scale.



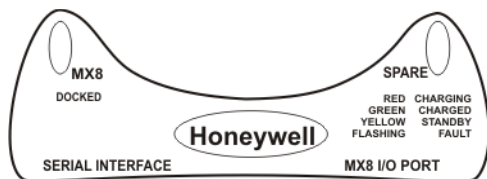
Bolts, washers, screws, screwdriver or wrench needed when attaching the MX8 desktop cradle to a protected flat surface are not supplied by Honeywell.

Periodically check the table mounting hardware and re-tighten if necessary. Table mounting hardware can be finger-tightened.

Do not over-tighten the table mounting hardware. If the cradle is cracked, it must be replaced before being placed into service. Contact Technical Assistance for help.

Cradle LEDs

When the desktop cradle AC/DC power supply cable begins to supply power to the cradle, the cradle LEDs flash yellow, red, green for three seconds then turn off. The cradle is ready for use.



Docked LED

When Docked LED is ...	It means
Off	MX8 not inserted or no power applied
Red	MX8 docked and power applied.

The cradle must be connected to a power source.

Spare Battery LED

When Spare LED is ...	It means
Off	Battery pack not inserted or no power applied
Green	Battery pack fully charged
Red	Battery pack charging
Yellow / Amber	Battery pack temperature out of range
Flashing Red	Battery pack fault or failure

The cradle must be connected to AC power. Spare battery charging does not require an MX8 be docked in the docking bay.

MX8 Mobile Device System Status LED

The MX8 System Status LED is located at the top of the keypad.

When the LED is ...	The Status is ...	Comment
Blinking Red	Power Fail	Replace the main battery with a fully charged main battery. Or Connect the MX8 to external AC power to allow the internal charger to charge the main battery e.g., dock in a powered cradle.
Steady Red	Main Battery Low	Low Battery Warning. Replace the main battery with a fully charged main battery. Or dock the MX8 in a powered cradle.
Blinking Green	Display Off	No user intervention required.
No Color	Good	No user intervention required.

Installing / Removing the Docking Bay Adapter Cup

Equipment: Phillips screwdriver and torquing tool (not supplied by Honeywell). You will need a torquing tool capable of torquing up to 6 (+/- .5) in/lb. Use a clean, well-lit stable surface.

The desktop cradle is shipped with the docking bay adapter cup pre-installed. If the MX8 has a rubber boot, the docking bay adapter cup must be removed before the MX8 is placed in the desktop cradle.

The desktop cradle can secure an MX8 with a rubber boot (MX8402BOOT or MX8403BOOT) enclosing/protecting the mobile device.

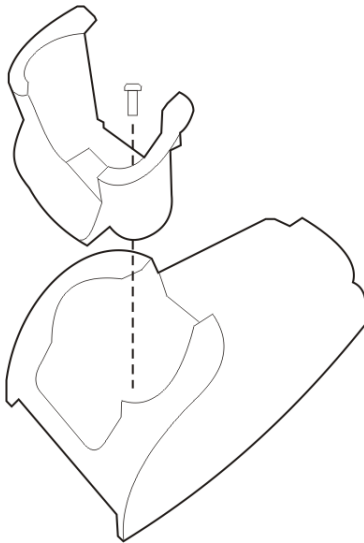
Before docking an MX8 without a rubber boot in the cradle, re-install the docking bay adapter cup.

Installing

The adapter cup is installed facing in one direction. Put the adapter cup in the MX8 docking bay, aligning the screw hole in the adapter cup with the screw hole in the MX8 docking bay.

Using a torquing screwdriver, insert the screw in the adapter cup screw hole, and torque the screw to 6 in/lbs +/- .5 in/lbs.

Periodically check the connection of the adapter cup and re-torque if necessary.



Removing

Remove the adapter cup by unscrewing the single captive screw at the front of the adapter cup.

Place both the adapter cup and the screw in a protected, safe area until needed.

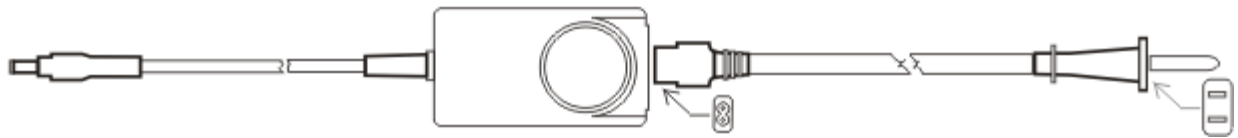
Assembling the AC Power Adapter

Note: Connect the cable to the cradle first, then to an AC source.

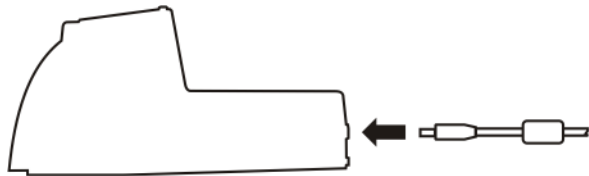
The external Power Supply for the cradle is shipped with the cradle.

The Power connector is located on the back of the cradle.

The cradle power supply is intended for use with the MX8 Desktop Cradle and the MX8 Y-connector only.



1. Plug the AC power plug into any AC wall outlet with a dependable power source.
2. Firmly press the adapter end of the power cable into the 2 pin connector on the power adapter.
3. Firmly press the cradle end of the power cable into the single connector on the back of the cradle.
4. AC power is now being supplied to the AC power adapter and the cradle.



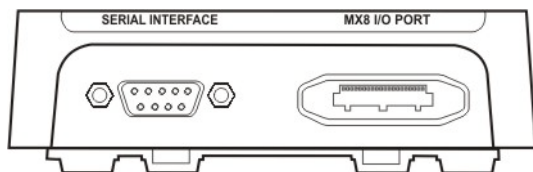
Connecting Input/Output Cables

Note: Route all cables to ensure they are protected from jostling, tugging or being disconnected by passing objects.

The cradle must be receiving power from an external power source before MX8 battery charging can begin.

Attaching a Serial or I/O Connector

Periodically test the connections for stability and re-tighten if necessary.



Serial Cable

The serial cable is connected to the port labeled Serial Interface on the left front of the desktop cradle. The serial cable end can originate with a tethered scanner, a desktop/laptop PC, a printer or another serial device.

1. Align the RS232 serial cable end (female) carefully to the Serial Interface port (male) on the left front of the desktop cradle.
2. Press the ends together and finger tighten the screws on either side of the connector.
3. Test the connection for stability.

I/O Cable

The I/O connector cable is connected to the port (male) labeled MX8 I/O Port on the right front of the desktop cradle.

1. Squeeze the clips next to the connector attached to the cable to open the catches in the connector assembly.
2. Firmly press the cable end (female) into the MX8 I/O Port connector (male) on the front of the cradle.
3. Release the clips in the connector cable.
4. Test the connection for stability.

Docking and Undocking the MX8

See [Installing / Removing the Docking Bay Adapter Cup](#) (page 12-7).

When the MX8 is in Suspend Mode it wakes up when it is docked in a powered cradle. There is no change in mode state settings or behavior when the MX8 is docked in a cradle without a power source. MX8 mode states while the MX8 is in a powered cradle e.g., suspend, resume, display backlight, etc., are managed by the MX8 OS Power settings.

If the cradle is not permanently attached to the work surface, stabilize the cradle with one hand while inserting or removing the MX8 with the other hand.

The MX8 is inserted into the charging pocket with the keypad facing forward.

Docking the MX8

Remove any cables attached to the base of the MX8.

Carefully press the MX8 straight down into the docking bay until the multi-pin connector at the base of the MX8 clicks into place with the multi-pin charging/communication connector at the bottom of the docking bay. The MX8 cradle is designed to secure the MX8 with the keypad facing forward.

The Docked LED illuminates.

Undock the MX8

Remove the MX8 from the cradle by pulling it straight up and out of the docking bay. If necessary, brace the cradle with one hand while the other hand removes the MX8.

The Docked LED turns Off.

Using the Spare Battery Bay

Required: The steps outlined in [Assembling the AC Power Adapter](#) (page 12-8) have been completed and the cradle has a dependable power source. The cradle has been bolted to a stable surface, if desired.

Do not drop or slam the spare battery into the charging pocket. Damage may result.

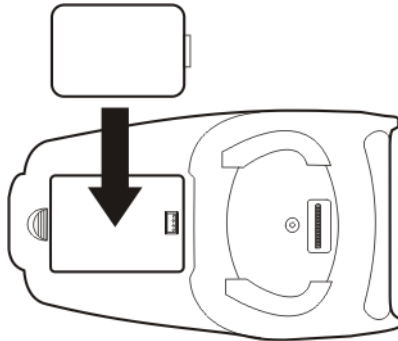
A fully depleted spare battery recharges in approximately four hours in the MX8 powered cradle. Charging time may take longer if a tethered scanner, connected to the Serial port and drawing power from the cradle, is used.

The spare battery well is molded in the shape of the MX8 main battery. The spare battery can be inserted in the battery well in only one direction.

When there is an MX8, with or without a handle, docked in the cradle, a spare battery can still be inserted in the charging bay.

You do not need to undock the MX8 before inserting or removing a Spare battery.

Stabilize the cradle with one hand when inserting/removing the Spare battery, if necessary.



Inserting a Spare Battery

1. Hold the battery with the charging terminals facing down, toward the charging pocket.
2. Tilt the end (without the latch) of the spare battery pack into the upper end of the battery charging pocket, and firmly press down on the other end (with the latch) until the battery is fully inserted into the battery well.
3. Push down on the spare battery until the catch clicks into place, securing the spare battery in the battery bay. This will ensure the charging contacts on the spare battery connect with the re-charging contacts in the battery bay.
4. The Spare charging bay LED illuminates.

Removing Spare Battery

A green Spare battery LED signifies the spare battery is charged.

1. Remove the Spare battery by sliding the latch in and pulling the Spare battery up, with a hinging motion.
2. Take the battery out of the charging bay.
3. The Spare charging bay LED turns Off.

MX8 Desktop Cradle Help

The following is intended as an aid in determining whether the MX8 battery pack or the cradle battery charger may be malfunctioning.

Issue	Cause	Solution
Battery pack does not fit in battery well.	Different manufacturer's battery pack, or there is an object in the battery well.	Check if the battery pack is Honeywell part number 161376-0001. If not, do not use. Remove the object from the battery well.
No battery pack in spare battery charging well, but the charging LED is on.	Dirt or foreign objects are in the battery well.	Unplug cradle from outlet. Remove any dirt or foreign objects from battery well. If the LED continues to stay ON, the cradle may be defective. Return charger to an authorized Honeywell service center.
Cradle is plugged into a live outlet, battery pack is inserted, but RED LED is OFF and no other LEDs are on, or all LEDs are off.	Battery pack is not making contact with charging terminals in the battery well. Faulty battery pack. New battery pack, same result.	Push battery pack in firmly. Do not "slam" the battery pack into the battery well. Replace battery pack. Contact Honeywell for replacement options.
When you first put a fully charged battery pack in the battery well, the RED LED comes on, indicating the battery pack is charging.	During the first few minutes, the charger checks the battery pack for correct voltage and charge state. During this time the LED is RED and is continuously ON. After charging is complete, the LED is GREEN.	There is nothing wrong with the battery pack or charging pocket.
LED is flashing RED at any station. LED is flashing RED at any station.	Current could not be sourced through the battery pack due to age, exhaustion or damage to the cell(s). Or The battery pack does not communicate with the charger.	Contact Honeywell for battery pack replacement options.
	The charger's timeout period has expired.	Make sure that the battery pack temperature is within specification and retry charging. If problem repeats, contact Honeywell for battery pack replacement options.
Solid YELLOW LED when battery pack is inserted in the cradle.	The battery pack is too hot or too cold to charge.	Remove battery pack from the cradle and allow it to adjust to room temperature. If the battery pack is left in the cradle, it will cool down or warm to a temperature upon which the cradle will begin the charge cycle. However, depending on the temperature of the MX8 battery, it may take 2-3 hours to adjust. The battery pack can cool down faster if the battery is not in the battery well.
MX8 docked in cradle but cannot work with accessory cables connected to cradle.	MX8 not fully seated in cradle Foreign objects inside docking bay or cable connectors	Reseat the MX8 fully into the docking bay. Remove the foreign objects and reseat the MX8 into the docking bay.
MX8 docked in cradle but Docked LED does not light up.	MX8 not fully docked. Power supply not connected.	Check the docking bay is clear of foreign objects and reseat the MX8 fully into the docking bay. Check that power is applied to the Power Jack at the rear of the MX8 Desktop Cradle.

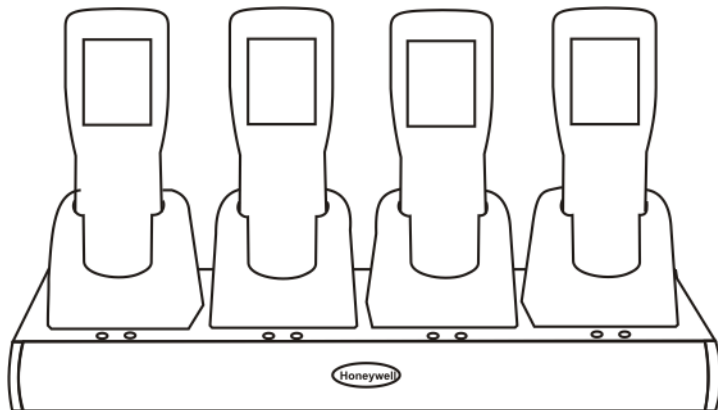
Using the Charging Multi-Dock

Introduction

The MX8 Charging Multi-dock is designed to secure the MX8 in the docking bay and to charge the main battery in the MX8 at the same time. A powered Charging Multi-dock can simultaneously recharge the main batteries in up to four MX8s. Each docking bay can accept an MX8 with or without a protective boot and with or without a trigger handle or handstrap.

Wireless host/client communications can occur whether the Charging Multi-dock is receiving external power or not as wireless functions draw power from the main battery in the MX8.

This device is intended for indoor use only and requires an indoor AC power source. This device is not approved for use in hazardous locations.



Note: The MX8 must have a main battery installed when it is docked.

The following list outlines, in a general way, the process to follow when preparing the MX8 Multi-dock for use. Refer to the following sections in this document for more details.

1. Place the Multi-dock on a stable surface.
2. Install / Remove the Docking Bay Adapter Cup.
3. Assemble the AC Adapter.
4. The charging Multi-dock is ready for use.

Installing / Removing the Docking Bay Adapter Cups

Equipment: Phillips screwdriver and torquing tool (not supplied by Honeywell). You will need a torquing tool capable of torquing up to 6 (+/- .5) in/lb. Use a clean, well-lit stable surface.

The charging multi-dock is shipped with the docking bay adapter cups pre-installed. If the MX8 has a rubber boot, the docking bay adapter cup must be removed before the MX8 is placed in the docking bay.

The charging multi-dock can secure an MX8 with a rubber boot (MX8402BOOT or MX8403BOOT) enclosing/protecting the mobile device.

Before docking an MX8 without a rubber boot in a docking bay, re-install the docking bay adapter cup.

Installing

The adapter cup is installed facing in one direction. Put the adapter cup in a docking bay, aligning the screw hole in the adapter cup with the screw hole in the docking bay. Periodically check the connection of the adapter cup and re-torque if necessary.

Using a torquing screwdriver, insert the single captive screw in the adapter cup screw hole, and torque the screw to 6 in/lbs +/- .5 in/lbs.

Removing

Remove the adapter cup by unscrewing the single captive screw at the front of the adapter cup. Place both the adapter cup and the screw in a protected, safe area until needed.

Assembling the AC Power Adapter

The AC adapter 4 pin barrel connector is L-shaped and keyed to the Multi-dock power port on the Charging Multi-dock.

To apply AC power to the Charging Multi-dock follow the steps below in sequence.

1. Plug the male 3 prong AC adapter cable end of the AC power assembly into an AC power source (e.g., wall outlet).
2. Press the female end of the power cable into the male connector on the AC adapter. When AC power is being supplied to the AC adapter, the LED on the power adapter illuminates green.
3. Line up the pins on the 4-pin barrel connector end of the cable with the pins in the power port on the Multi-dock. Push the barrel connector into the power port until it is seated firmly.
4. External power is now being supplied to the charging Multi-dock. The charging Multi-dock is ready for use.

LED Indicators

There are two LEDs per docking bay. When the Multi-dock is connected to a power source:

1. The LED on the left, when illuminated red, indicates the MX8 is properly seated in the docking bay.
2. The LED on the right, when illuminated green, indicates the docking bay is receiving power.

When both docking bay LEDs are off, an MX8 is not docked and power is not available to the docking bay.

When all LEDs are off, power is not applied to the multi-dock.

MX8 System Status LED

The MX8 System Status LED is located at the top of the MX8 keypad.

When the LED is . . .	The Status is . . .	Comment
Blinking Red	Power Fail	Connect the MX8 to external AC power to allow the internal charger to charge the main battery e.g., dock in a powered multi-dock. or Replace the main battery with a fully charged main battery.
Steady Red	Main Battery Low	Low Battery Warning. Replace the main battery with a fully charged main battery. or Dock the MX8 in a powered multi-dock.
Blinking Green	Display Off	No user intervention required.
No Color	Good	No user intervention required.

Docking and Undocking the MX8

See [Installing / Removing the Docking Bay Adapter Cup](#) (page 12-7).

When the MX8 is in Suspend Mode it wakes up when it is docked in a powered Multi-dock charging bay. There is no change in mode state settings or behavior when the MX8 is docked in a Multi-dock without a power source. MX8 mode states while the MX8 is in a powered Multi-dock e.g., suspend, resume, display backlight, etc., are managed by the MX8 OS Power settings.

If the Multi-dock is not permanently attached to the horizontal surface, stabilize the Multi-dock with one hand while inserting or removing the MX8 with the other hand.

Remove the MX8 from holster, carry cases and voice cases before docking the MX8.

The MX8 is inserted into a Multi-dock charging pocket with the keypad facing forward.

Docking the MX8

Remove any cables attached to the base of the MX8.

Carefully press the MX8 straight down into the charging bay until the multi-pin connector at the base of the MX8 clicks into place with the multi-pin charging connector at the bottom of the charging bay. The Multi-dock charging bays are designed to secure the MX8 with the keypad facing forward.

The left LED illuminates.

Undock the MX8

Remove the MX8 from the charging bay by pulling it straight up and out of the charging bay. If necessary, brace the Multi-dock with one hand while the other hand removes the MX8.

The left LED turns Off.

Safety Guidelines and Cautions

- It is recommended that a grounded three (3) prong AC outlet be used to power this device. The user should insure that the AC outlet is grounded before using this device. If you are not sure that the AC outlet has appropriate ground, we suggest that a qualified electrician be called for verification.
- Do not pour, spray or spill any liquid into or on the multi-dock. If liquid does come in contact with the multi-dock, immediately un-plug the multi-dock and remove any mobile devices in the docking bays.
- For Indoor Use Only.
- Before using this multi-dock, read all instructions and cautionary notations on the multi-dock and on the MX8.
- To reduce risk of injury, only use authorized battery products in the MX8. Other non-approved batteries may cause personal injury and / or damage to the equipment.
- Do not expose the multi-dock to excessive moisture, temperature extremes or direct sunlight.
- Place multi-dock in a well ventilated area, which is free of foreign materials.
- To reduce risk of electric shock, unplug multi-dock from power source before cleaning.
- Dispose of used batteries in accordance with your state or local hazardous material laws.
- Dispose of multi-dock correctly according to local regulations to comply with WEEE regulations.
- Do not disassemble, incinerate, modify, or short circuit the multi-dock, any battery, or related components.

Using the Passive Vehicle Cradle

Introduction

Wireless communication is available as long as the MX8 has sufficient energy in the main battery pack and a clear signal path. The passive vehicle cradle is lined with strips of hook-and-loop fabric to ensure a snug fit between the MX8 and the inside of the cradle. The cradle can secure an MX8 with or without a rubber boot by inserting or removing the Velcro slides attached to the inside of the docking well. The cradle can secure the MX8 with or without a trigger or handstrap. The MX8 passive vehicle cradle does not have power, MX8 serial or input/output connectors.

The MX8 passive vehicle cradle consists of:

- Cradle bracket
- U-bracket
- 2 knobs
- Hook and loop fabric to secure the MX8

An optional RAM assembly consists of:

- RAM ball base for vehicle mount
- RAM arm
- RAM base to attach U-bracket
- 4 each: bolts, nuts and washers

The installer must supply hardware to attach either the U-bracket or the RAM ball base to the vehicle.

Communications cables for the MX8 are available separately.

There are two mounting options for the cradle:

- U-bracket mounting. See [Installing the Cradle U-Bracket](#) (page 12-17).
- RAM ball Arm mounting. See [Installing the RAM Bracket](#) (page 12-18).

Note: Do not put the MX8 into the passive vehicle cradle until the cradle is securely fastened to the vehicle.

Preparing the Passive Vehicle Cradle for Use

The passive vehicle mounted cradle should be mounted in an area in the vehicle where it:

- Does not obstruct the drivers vision or safe vehicle operation.
- Will be protected from rain or inclement weather.
- Will be protected from extremely high concentrations of dust or wind-blown debris.
- Can be easily accessed by a user seated in the drivers seat while the vehicle is not in operation.

Quick Start

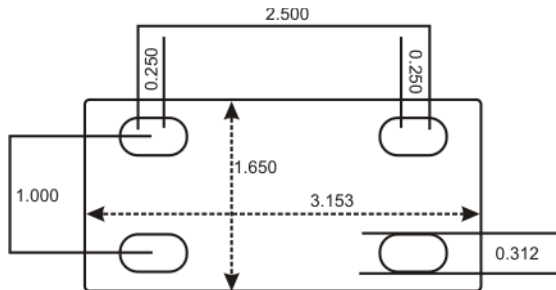
The following list outlines, in a general way, the process to follow when preparing the MX8 passive vehicle cradle for use. Refer to the following sections for more details.

1. Attach the RAM bracket or U-bracket mounting device to the vehicle.
2. Attach the MX8 passive cradle to the vehicle mounted bracket using the Angle Adjust knobs.
3. Adjust the cradle to the best viewing angle using the Angle Adjust knobs. The Passive Vehicle Mount cradle is ready for use.

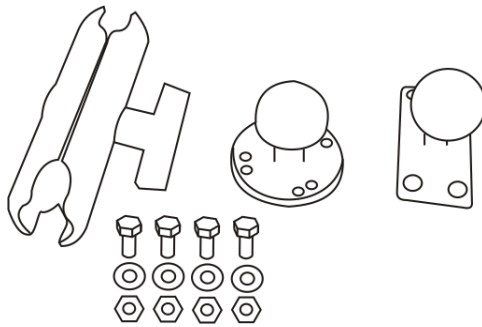
Components

U-Bracket Footprint

The image below is not to scale.



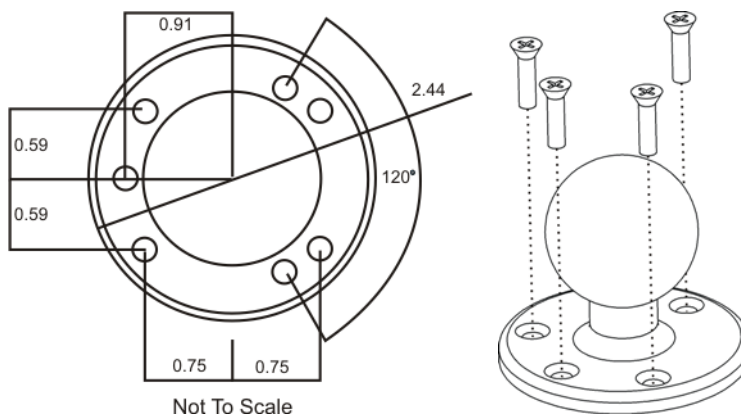
RAM Assembly Components



Mount the cradle U-bracket to the upper RAM ball assembly with the bolts, washers and nuts supplied by Honeywell.

- Qty 4 – Hex Cap 1/4-20 x 3/4 bolts
- Qty 4 – 1/4 flat washer
- Qty 4 – 1/4-20 nylon insert lock nuts

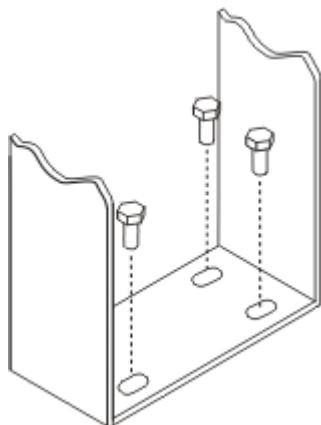
RAM Assembly Footprint



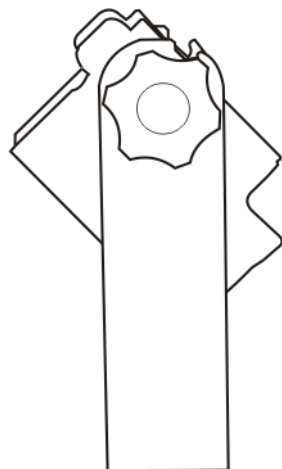
Installing the Cradle U-Bracket

Note: Honeywell does not supply the bolts or washers needed when mounting the cradle assembly to the vehicle chassis. Use bolts with a maximum 10/32" (0.3125) diameter.

1. Attach the U-Bracket to the vehicle, making sure it does not impede safe operation of the vehicle.



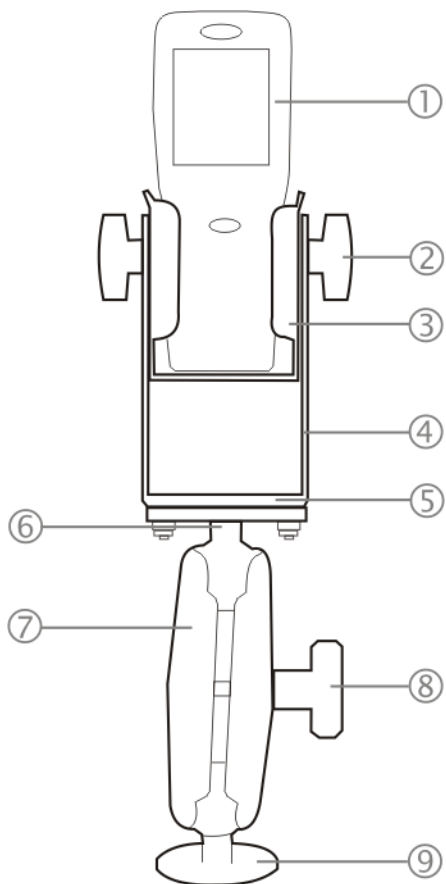
2. Attach the Passive Cradle to the U-Bracket using the Angle Adjust knobs.



3. Use both knobs to loosen and tighten the cradle to the U-bracket while determining the best viewing angle. The passive vehicle mounted cradle is ready for use.

Periodically test the passive mounting device and tighten bolts and/or knob as needed. If the cradle becomes cracked or warped it must be replaced before the cradle is put back in service.

Installing the RAM Bracket



1. MX8
2. Angle Adjust Knobs
3. Passive Cradle
4. U-Bracket
5. Mounting Hex Bolt
6. Upper RAM Ball Assembly
7. Arm
8. Thumbscrew
9. Lower RAM Ball Assembly (mounted to vehicle)

1. Attach the lower RAM ball assembly to the vehicle, making sure it does not impede safe operation of the vehicle.
2. Fasten the upper RAM ball assembly to the base of the U-bracket using the supplied bolts, washers and screws.
3. Loosen the turnscrew on the RAM arm, place the lower socket over the vehicle mount RAM ball, then the other arm socket over the RAM ball on the U-bracket.
4. Tighten the arm turnscrew until the U-bracket is secured to the RAM arm and the vehicle.
5. Attach the Passive Cradle to the U-Bracket using the Angle Adjust knobs.
6. Use both knobs to loosen and tighten the cradle to the U-bracket while determining the best viewing angle. The passive vehicle mounted cradle is ready for use.

Periodically test the mounting device and tighten bolts and/or knob as needed. If the cradle becomes cracked or warped it must be replaced.

Velcro Slides

The passive vehicle cradle has two Velcro slides in the passive cradle docking bay.

- Remove the Velcro slides to secure the MX8 with a rubber boot.
- Insert the Velcro slides to secure the MX8 without a rubber boot.

Note: Do not put the MX8 into the passive vehicle cradle until the cradle is securely fastened to the vehicle.

Battery Charger

Unpacking your Battery Charger

After you open the shipping carton containing the product, take the following steps:

- Check for damage during shipment. Report damage immediately to the carrier who delivered the carton.
- Make sure the items in the carton match your order.
- Save the shipping container for later storage or shipping.

Introduction

The MX8 Battery Charger is designed to simultaneously charge four rechargeable Lithium Ion (Li-Ion) battery packs. The time required for charging is dependent upon the battery pack temperature and conditions.

The battery charger should be located in an area where it:

- Is well ventilated.
- Is not in high traffic areas.
- Locates or orients the AC cord so that it will not be stepped on, tripped over or subjected to damage or stress.
- Has enough clearance to allow easy access to the power port on the back of the device.
- Is protected from rain, dust, direct sunlight or inclement weather.

This device is intended for indoor use only and requires an indoor AC power source. The charger is not approved for use in Hazardous Locations.

This device cannot charge/recharge coin cell batteries sealed inside the mobile device, if any.

This chapter is intended to familiarize the user with the safety and operating instructions necessary to use the MX8 Battery Charger (Model MX8A385CHGR4US, MX8A386CHGR4WW) to charge rechargeable lithium-ion battery packs (MX8A380BATT) .

This information should be readily available to all users and maintenance personnel using this battery charger.

Store the charger and batteries when not in use in a cool, dry, protected place.

Cautions and Warnings

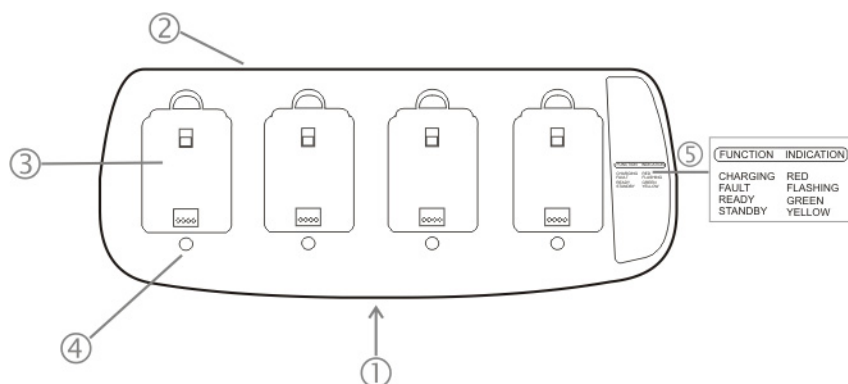
Battery Charger

- There is a risk of explosion if the MX8 Li-Ion battery in the charging pocket is replaced by an incorrect type. Other batteries or battery packs may burst causing injury or property damage.
- Do not insert any other type of Li-Ion battery in the battery charging pocket.
- Do not allow cleaning agents of any kind to contact the battery charging contacts; they may be damaged. If necessary, clean them with a soft-bristle, dry brush or compressed air.
- Disconnect the charger from AC power by pulling the plug; not the cord.
- Use care when inserting battery. Do not "slam" or slide the battery into the pocket, this could damage the charger.
- Keep dirt and foreign objects out of the battery pocket. Do not short circuit any of the contacts in the battery pocket, this could result in injury or property damage.
- Do not disassemble or perform modifications to the charger. There are no user serviceable components in the charger.

Lithium-Ion Battery Pack

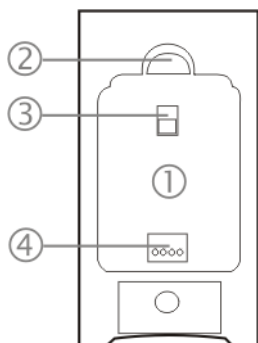
- Dispose of used Li-Ion batteries according to the instructions for the type of battery.
- When not in use, lay the battery pack contact-side up in a protected environment.
- Do not store the Li-Ion battery pack in direct sunlight or anywhere the battery pack cannot cool down.
- If the Li-Ion battery pack is hot after removal from the MX8, allow it to cool at room temperature or in a cool air stream before placing it in the charger.
- Do not dispose of Li-Ion batteries into a fire. Burning will generate hazardous vapors and may cause the battery to explode. Failure to observe this warning may result in injury from inhalation of vapors or burns from flying debris.
- Do not immerse Li-Ion batteries in water or any other liquid. If batteries are immersed, contact Honeywell.
- Do not disassemble or perform modifications to the battery. There are no user serviceable components in the battery.
- Do not place the Li-Ion battery into a pocket or toolbox with conductive objects (coins, keys, tools, etc.). A Li-Ion battery placed on damp ground or grass could be electrically shorted.
- Do not store Li-Ion batteries above 140°F (60°C) for extended periods.
- Failure to observe these warnings could result in injury or damage to the battery from rapid discharge of energy or battery overheating.
- Electrolyte Burns. Be careful when handling batteries. If a battery is broken or shows signs of leakage do not attempt to charge it. Dispose of it! Lead and Nickel-based cells contain a chemical solution that burns skin, eyes, etc. Leakage from cells is the only possible way for such exposure to occur. In this event, rinse the affected area thoroughly with water. If the solution contacts the eyes, get immediate medical attention.
- Electrical Burns. Batteries are capable of delivering high currents when accidentally shorted. Accidental shorting can occur when contact is made with jewelry, metal surfaces, conductive tools, etc., making the objects very hot. Never place a charged battery in a pocket or case with keys, coins, or other metal objects.

Front View



1. Front
2. Power Jack location
3. Battery Charging Pocket
4. LED Indicator
5. LED Function Legend

Top View



1. Battery Charging Pocket
2. Retaining Clip
3. Battery Release Spring
4. Battery Charging Contacts

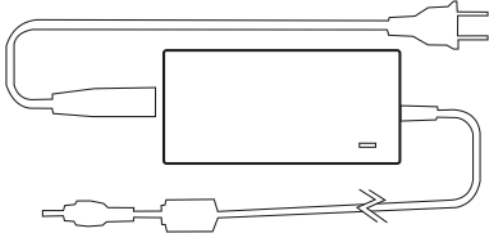
Installation

Assemble the Power Supply

Assemble the AC adapter for the MX8 Battery Charger before connecting it to the charger.

The AC power supply for the battery charger is shipped with the battery charger. Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) if there is no AC cable.

The battery charger power supply is intended for use with the MX8 battery charger *only*.



1. Plug the 2-prong end of the cable into an AC wall outlet.
2. Firmly press the female end of the power cable into the male connector on the AC power adapter. An LED on the power adapter illuminates when AC power is available.
3. AC power is now being applied to the power adapter.

Setup

Place the battery charger on a flat, horizontal, hard surface or fasten securely to a stable surface using the keyhole openings on the bottom of the battery charger. See [Mounting](#) (page 13-5).

Do not insert battery packs until the battery charger has finished powering up:

1. Assemble the Power Supply and connect it to an indoor power source (e.g. wall outlet).
2. Insert the power connector from the power supply into the power outlet at the back of the battery charger.
3. AC power is now being applied to the battery charger and it begins to power up.
4. Charge pocket LEDs flash while the battery charger enters and exits the startup check.
5. When the charge pocket LEDs are not illuminated, the battery charger is ready for use.

Mounting

The battery charger should be located in an area where it:

- Is well ventilated.
- Is not in high traffic areas.
- Locates or orients the AC cord so that it will not be stepped on, tripped over or subjected to damage or stress.
- Has enough clearance to allow easy access to the power port on the back of the device.
- Is protected from rain, dust, direct sunlight or inclement weather.

This device is intended for indoor use only and requires an indoor AC power source. The charger is not approved for use in hazardous locations.

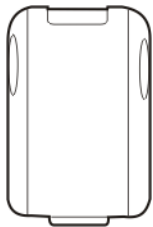
Place the battery charger on a flat, horizontal, hard surface.

The battery charger can be mounted to a stable, vertical surface (e.g., a wall) using the keyhole openings in the bottom panel of the battery charger.

1. Length of battery charger - 11.75 inches (in)/ 29.8 centimeters (cm)
2. Width of battery charger - 5.25 in / 13.3 cm
3. Left keyhole center to right keyhole center - 9.8 in / 25 cm
4. Distance down to keyhole center from back of battery charger - 0.75 in / 1.9 cm
5. Distance to keyhole center from side of battery charger - 1.1 in / 3.0 cm
6. Distance to keyhole center from front of battery charger - 4.25 in / 10.8 cm

Care should be taken, when inserting batteries in a wall-mounted battery charger, that the battery is secured by the latch in the battery charging pocket.

Charging Batteries



New batteries should be charged fully before first use. The life and capacity of a Lithium Ion battery pack can vary significantly depending on the discharge current and the environment in which it is used.

When a battery is placed in a charging pocket, the battery charger begins charging the battery. There is a slight delay while the charger evaluates the condition of the battery (ambient temperature, remaining charge, etc.) before charging begins.

As with all batteries, expect to see a reduction in the total number of operations a fully charged battery pack can deliver as it ages. When the battery reaches end of life (end-of-life occurs after 500 charge/discharge cycles) it must be replaced.

Battery packs do not need to be fully discharged between charge cycles.

While charging, the charger and battery pack will generate enough heat to feel warm. This is normal and does not indicate a problem.

Inserting a Battery into the Charging Pocket

It is important that battery packs are inserted into the charging pocket correctly. Inserting the battery incorrectly could result in damage to the battery pack or the charger.

Caution! Do not “slam” the battery pack into the charging pocket. Damage may result.

1. When preparing the battery pack for insertion into the battery charging pocket, hold the battery with its four charging contacts in line with the charging contacts in the charging pocket. Aim the retaining catch towards the back of the charger.
2. Push the locking tab towards the back of the battery charging pocket until it stays in place.
3. Place the battery in the charging pocket, making sure the tab at the top of the battery pack fits into the slot at the top end of the charging pocket.
4. With a hinging motion, slip the battery down into the charging pocket until the locking tab clicks into place and the battery pack is secure in the charging pocket.

Remove the Battery from the Charging Pocket

Push the latch away from the battery. The battery will pop up slightly. Grasp the battery and with a hinging motion, lift it out of the charging pocket.

Interpreting the Charging Pocket LEDs

The status of the charge operation is indicated by the color of the LED for each charging pocket.

RED Continuous - on any charge pocket

Continuous red means the battery pack is charging.

RED FLASHING - on all charge pocket

Battery pack fault or failure.

GREEN - on any charge pocket

Continuous green means the battery pack charge is complete - Battery is ready for use.

YELLOW - on any charge pocket

Continuous yellow / amber means the battery pack temperature is out of range. The charging pocket is in standby mode while the pocket waits for the battery pack to warm up or cool down.

NO LIGHT - on any charge pocket

No light on a charge pocket means there is no battery pack installed,

- or the battery pack in the pocket is not fully inserted,
- or a defective or damaged battery pack is installed,
- or the charger is defective or damaged. Refer to Battery Charger Help.

NO LIGHT - on all charge pockets

No light means there is no AC power available to the battery charger or there is power but there are no rechargeable batteries in any charging bay.

Battery Charger Help

The following is intended as an aid in determining whether the battery pack or the charger may be malfunctioning:

Issue	Cause	Solution
Battery pack does not fit in charging pocket.	Different manufacturer's battery pack, or there is an object in the charging pocket.	Check if the battery pack has part number MX-8A380BATT/161376-0001 on the label. If not, do not use. Remove the object from the charging pocket.
No battery pack in charger, but any of the LEDs are on.	Dirt or foreign objects are in the charging pocket.	Unplug charger from AC supply. Remove any dirt or foreign objects from the charging pocket. See Charger Cleaning, Storage and Service (page 13-8). If the LEDs continue to remain ON, the charger may be defective. Return charger to an authorized Honeywell service center.
Charger is plugged into a live outlet, battery pack is inserted, but RED LED is OFF and no other LEDs are on, or all LEDs are off.	Battery pack is not making contact with battery charge terminals in the charging pocket.	Push the battery pack in firmly until you hear a click as the battery catch connects with the charger pocket. Do not "slam" the battery pack into the charging pocket.
Charger is plugged into a live outlet, battery pack is inserted, but RED LED is OFF and no other LEDs are on, or all LEDs are off.	Faulty battery pack.	Replace battery pack.
Charger is plugged into a live outlet, battery pack is inserted, but RED LED is OFF and no other LEDs are on, or all LEDs are off.	New battery pack, same result.	Contact Technical Assistance (page 15-1) for replacement options.
When you first put a fully charged battery pack in the charging pocket, the RED LED comes on, indicating the battery pack is charging.	During the first few minutes, the battery charger checks the battery pack for correct voltage and charge state. During this time the LED is RED and is continuously ON. After charging is complete, the LED is GREEN.	There is nothing wrong with the battery pack or charger. Do not "top off" a fully charged battery pack by repeatedly placing it in the charging pocket. The battery pack may overheat and be damaged.
LED is flashing RED at any pocket.	Current could not be sourced through the battery pack due to age, exhaustion or damage to the cell(s). The battery pack does not communicate with the charger.	Contact Technical Assistance (page 15-1) for battery pack replacement options.

Issue	Cause	Solution
LED is flashing RED at any pocket.	The charger's timeout period has expired.	Make sure that the battery pack temperature is within specification and retry charging. Contact Technical Assistance (page 15-1) if problem repeats, for battery pack replacement options.
LED is flashing RED at any pocket.	The battery pack voltage has not reached 2.5V within 60 minutes and the charger has timed out.	Contact Technical Assistance (page 15-1) for battery pack replacement options.
Solid YELLOW / AMBER LED when battery pack is inserted in the charging pocket.	The battery pack is too hot or too cold to charge.	Remove battery pack from the charging pocket and allow it to adjust to room temperature. <i>Note: If the battery pack is left in the charging pocket, it will cool down or warm to a temperature upon which the charger will begin the charge cycle. However, depending on the temperature of the battery, it may take 2-3 hours to adjust. The cool-down / warm-up of a battery pack is much quicker if the battery is not in the charging pocket.</i>

Charger Cleaning, Storage and Service

Cleaning

Unplug the charger from the power source before cleaning or removing debris from charging pockets.

Use only mild detergent with a slightly damp cloth to clean the outside of the charger. Do not use solvents or flammable cleaners. Allow the case to dry fully before using again.

Do not allow cleaning agents of any kind to contact the charging contacts; they may be damaged. If necessary, clean them with a soft-bristle, dry brush or compressed air.

Storage

Remove all batteries from the charging bays and disconnect AC power before placing the charger in storage. It should be stored in a cool, dry place, protected from weather and airborne debris.

Battery packs should be kept in a cool, dry place whenever possible. Do not store battery packs in direct sunlight, on a metal surface, or anywhere the battery pack cannot cool down. Do not leave the battery pack in a non-operating charger. The battery pack may discharge through the charger rather than hold its charge.

Service

There are no user serviceable parts in the rechargeable Lithium Ion battery or the charger. Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) should your charger require service.

Battery Cleaning, Storage and Service

Cleaning

The battery pack should not require cleaning unless it has become heavily soiled. Old or damaged batteries should be disposed of promptly and properly. The best way to dispose of used batteries is to recycle them. Battery recycling facilities recover the nickel, lithium or lead from old batteries to manufacture new batteries.

Use only mild detergent with a slightly damp cloth to clean the outside of the battery. Do not use solvents or flammable cleaners. Allow the case to dry fully before using again.

Do not allow cleaning agents of any kind to contact the charging contacts; they may be damaged. If necessary, clean them with a soft-bristle, dry brush or compressed air.

Storage

Battery packs should be stored, charging contact side up, in a cool dry place, protected from weather and airborne debris, whenever possible.

Do not store battery packs in direct sunlight, on a metal surface, or anywhere the battery pack cannot cool down.

Do not leave the battery pack in a non-operating charger. The battery pack may discharge through the charger rather than hold its charge.

Note: Battery packs may leak up to 1 mA current through the battery contacts when left in a non-powered charger pocket.

Service

There are no user serviceable parts in the lithium ion battery pack. Contact [Technical Assistance](#) (page 15-1) for battery disposal and replacement options.

Technical Specifications

MX8

Processor	Marvell Xscale PXA-27X CPU operating at 520 MHz. Turbo mode switching is supported. 32 bit CPU (with on-chip cache)
Memory	128 MB SDRAM | 128 MB Strata Flash | 20 MB available for programs and data
Mass Storage	Removable Mini SD Card. 128MB
Operating System	Microsoft® Windows® Mobile® 6.1
Radio Modules	802.11 a/b/g radio / Bluetooth
Scanner options	Integrated. No Scanner Intermec EV-15 Linear Imager Hand Held Products 5300 SF 2D Imager Symbol 955I (Short Range) Symbol 955E (Base Laser) Honeywell Laser Scanner, N43XX
Display technology	Transmissive Color LCD with Touchscreen. Customer Configurable Display. LED Backlighting. Type - LCD – Active Transmissive Color / LED Backlight Resolution - 320 (Vertical) x 240 (Horizontal) pixels Size - 1/4 VGA portrait Diagonal Viewing Area - 2.8 in (7.12cm) Dot Pitch - 60 (W)um X 180 (H) um Dot Size - 180 um X 180 um Color Scale - 256 colors
External Connectors / Interface	20 pin Multi function I/O connector. Provides cabled connection to external devices such as an audio headset, USB/power connection, RS-232/power connection.
Main Battery	Li-Ion battery pack 3.7V 2.3000mAh. In-Unit and External Re-Chargeable
Backup Battery (CMOS)	Internal Nickel Metal Hydride (Ni-MH) 2.4V max. Automatically charges from main battery during normal operation. Requires AC power for re-charging. Memory operational for 5 minutes when main battery is depleted. Minimum life expectancy is 2 years.

Dimensions and Weight

Dimension	
Length	7.58" | 19.2 cm
Width at Display Width at handgrip	2.84" | 7.2 cm 2.45" | 6.2 cm
Depth at Scanner Depth at Battery	1.72" | 4.36.1 cm 1.52" | 3.86 cm
Weight	
Unit with network card, battery, SE955 scanner and handle	1 lbs | 458g
Unit with network card, battery, SE955 scanner and handstrap	0.84 lbs | 385g
Battery	2.8 oz | 80g
Network Card	0.35 oz | 9.9g
Mini SD Flash Card	0.035 oz | 1g

Environmental Specifications

Operating Temperature	14°F to 122°F (-10°C to 50°C)
Storage Temperature	-4°F to 158°F (-20°C to 70°C)
ESD	8 KV air, 4kV direct contact
Operating Humidity	Up to 90% non-condensing at 104°F (40°C)
Water and Dust	IEC 60529 compliant to IP54
Vibration	Based on MIL Std 810D

Network Card Specifications

Summit 802.11 b/g

Bus Interface	16-bit Compact Flash Type I with 50-pin connector
Wireless Frequencies	2.4 to 2.4897 GHz
RF Data Rates	1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps
RF Power Level	50 mW max.
Channels	1-11 FCC, 1-13 ETSI
Operating Temperature	Same as MX8 Operating Temperature
Storage Temperature	Same as MX8 Storage Temperature
Connectivity	TCP/IP, Ethernet, ODI
Diversity	Yes

Summit 802.11 a/b/g

Bus Interface	16-bit Compact Flash Type I with 50-pin connector
Wireless Frequencies	2.4 to 2.4897 GHz IEEE 802.11b / 802.11g DSSS OFDM 5.0GHz IEEE 802.11a DSSS OFDM
RF Data Rates	1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps
RF Power Level	64 mW (18dBm)
Channels	FCC : 1-11, 36, 40, 44, 48, 149, 153, 157, 161 ETSI: 1-13, 36, 40, 44, 48
Operating Temperature	Same as MX8 Operating Temperature
Storage Temperature	Same as MX8 Storage Temperature
Connectivity	TCP/IP, Ethernet, ODI
Diversity	Yes

Bluetooth

Enhanced Data Rate	Up to 3.0 Mbit/s over the air
Connection	No less than 32.80 feet (10 meters) line of sight
Operating Frequency	2.402 – 2.480 GHz
Bluetooth Version	2.0 + EDR

Input/Output Port Pinout

Pin No	Pin Description
1	UART_TXD
2	UART_RTS
3	UART_RXD
4	UART_CTS
5	GND
6	USBC_D+
7	USBC_VBUS
8	HS_OUT
9	HS_SLEEVE
10	HS_DETECT
11 to 13	DC_GND
14	UART_DTR
15	UART_DSR
16	USBC_D-
17	HS_MIC
18 to 20	DC_IN

AC Wall Adapter

Feature	Specification
Input Power Switch	None
Power "ON" Indicator	None
Input Fusing	Current Fuse
Input Voltage	100VAC min – 240 VAC max
Input Frequency	50 - 60 Hz
Input Connector	North American wall plug, no ground
Output Connector	AC wall adapter has a 5.5mm barrel connector. This connects to the cables which transition power to the 20 pin D connector.
Output Voltage	+5V, regulated
Output Current	0 Amps min, 3 Amps max
Operating Temperature	32 F to 100° F / -0° C to 40° C. The AC Power Adapter is only intended for use in a 25°C (77°F) maximum ambient temperature environment.
Storage Temperature	-40° F to 180° F / -40° C to 80° C
Humidity	Operates in a relative humidity of 5 – 95% (non-condensing)

Cradles and Multi-dock

Technical Specifications – Desktop Cradle

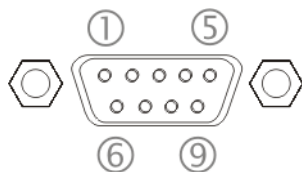
Note: Do not store MX8 batteries above 140°F (60°C) for extended periods.

Weight	18 oz / 500 grams
Dimensions	H 3.6 in x W 4.3 in; x L 7.5 in
Temperature	
Operating	32° F to 122° F / 0° C to 50° C (charger On, no charging in progress)
Charging	50° F to 104° F / 10° C to 40° C (spare battery charger is charging)
Storage	-4° F to 158° F / -20° C to 70° C
Humidity	5% to 90% (non-condensing) at 104° F / 40° C
IEC 60529	Compliant to IP40
Ports	Power, MX8 I/O and serial port

Pinout - RS232 Connector

Note: Tethered scanners must be connected to powered cradles.

The connector is industry-standard RS232 and is a PC/AT standard 9-pin D male connector.



Pin	Signal	Description
1	DCD	Data Carrier Detect
2	RXD	Received Data – Input
3	TXD	Transmitted Data – Output
4	DTR	Data Terminal Ready
5	GND	Signal/Power Ground
6	DSR	Data Set Ready
7	RTS	Request to Send
8	CTS	Clear To Send
9	RI or Power	+5 VDC sourced by the Cradle

Note: Pin 9 of this port is connected to +5 VDC. Only approved cables are to be used for communication between the cradle and external devices.

Technical Specifications – Charging Multi-dock

Note: Do not store the Multi-dock above 158°F (70°C) for extended periods.

Weight	3.6 lbs / 1.6 Kg
Dimensions	Length 19 in (480mm) Width 6.25 in (160mm) Height 5.25 in (135mm)
Temperature	
Operating	0°C to +50°C (+32°F to +122°F) (non-condensing)
Storage	-20°C to +70°C (-4°F to +158°F)
Power Supply	AC Input: 100-240V ~ 1.8A, 50-60Hz DC Output: 5V, 9A Max

Battery Charger

Battery: Li-ion 3.7v 3000mAh battery with a 500 charge/discharge life cycle

Electrical

Note: Battery packs may leak up to 1mA current through the battery contacts when left in an unpowered battery charger charging pocket.

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum	Note
Power Supply Input Voltage (V AC-IN)	100 VAC	240VAC	Auto-switching
Power Supply Input Frequency (freq)	47Hz	63Hz	

Temperature

Function	Minimum	Maximum	Note
Operating	0°C (32°F)	+50°C (120°F)	Battery packs will only be charged when their internal temperature is between 10°C (50°F) and 40°C (100°F)
Battery Pack Charging	10°C (50°F)	+40°C (104°F)	Battery packs will not begin charging when their internal temperature is outside this range.
Storage	-20°C (-4°F)	+70°C (160°F)	Unit is off.

Dimensions

Weight	1.1 lbs / .50 kg (no batteries) 2.5 lbs / 1.13 kg (with a battery in each charging bay)
Length	13.5 in / 34.3 cm
Width	5.3 in / 13.5 cm
Height	1.75 in / 4.44 cm

Customer Support

Technical Assistance

If you need assistance installing or troubleshooting your device, please contact us by using one of the methods below:

Knowledge Base: www.hsmknowledgebase.com

Our Knowledge Base provides thousands of immediate solutions. If the Knowledge Base cannot help, our Technical Support Portal (see below) provides an easy way to report your problem or ask your question.

Technical Support Portal: www.hsmsupportportal.com

The Technical Support Portal not only allows you to report your problem, but it also provides immediate solutions to your technical issues by searching our Knowledge Base. With the Portal, you can submit and track your questions online and send and receive attachments.

Web form: www.hsmcontactsupport.com

You can contact our technical support team directly by filling out our online support form. Enter your contact details and the description of the question/problem.

Telephone: www.honeywellaidc.com/locations

For our latest contact information, please check our website at the link above.

Product Service and Repair

Honeywell International Inc. provides service for all of its products through service centers throughout the world. To obtain warranty or non-warranty service, please visit www.honeywellaidc.com and select **Support > Contact Service and Repair** to see your region's instructions on how to obtain a Return Material Authorization number (RMA #). You should do this prior to returning the product.

Limited Warranty

Honeywell International Inc. ("HII") warrants its products to be free from defects in materials and workmanship and to conform to HII's published specifications applicable to the products purchased at the time of shipment. This warranty does not cover any HII product which is (i) improperly installed or used; (ii) damaged by accident or negligence, including failure to follow the proper maintenance, service, and cleaning schedule; or (iii) damaged as a result of (A) modification or alteration by the purchaser or other party, (B) excessive voltage or current supplied to or drawn from the interface connections, (C) static electricity or electrostatic discharge, (D) operation under conditions beyond the specified operating parameters, or (E) repair or service of the product by anyone other than HII or its authorized representatives.

This warranty shall extend from the time of shipment for the duration published by HII for the product at the time of purchase ("Warranty Period"). Any defective product must be returned (at purchaser's expense) during the Warranty Period to HII factory or authorized service center for inspection. No product will be accepted by HII without a Return Materials Authorization, which may be obtained by contacting HII. In the event that the product is returned to HII or its authorized service center within the Warranty Period and HII determines to its satisfaction that the product is defective due to defects in materials or workmanship, HII, at its sole option, will either repair or replace the product without charge, except for return shipping to HII.

EXCEPT AS MAY BE OTHERWISE PROVIDED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE FOREGOING WARRANTY IS IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER COVENANTS OR WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, ORAL OR WRITTEN, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT.

HII'S RESPONSIBILITY AND PURCHASER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY UNDER THIS WARRANTY IS LIMITED TO THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF THE DEFECTIVE PRODUCT WITH NEW OR REFURBISHED PARTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL HII BE LIABLE FOR INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, AND, IN NO EVENT, SHALL ANY LIABILITY OF HII ARISING IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PRODUCT SOLD HEREUNDER (WHETHER SUCH LIABILITY ARISES FROM A CLAIM BASED ON CONTRACT, WARRANTY, TORT, OR OTHERWISE) EXCEED THE ACTUAL AMOUNT PAID TO HII FOR THE PRODUCT. THESE LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY SHALL REMAIN IN FULL FORCE AND EFFECT EVEN WHEN HII MAY HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH INJURIES, LOSSES, OR DAMAGES. SOME STATES, PROVINCES, OR COUNTRIES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATIONS OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

All provisions of this Limited Warranty are separate and severable, which means that if any provision is held invalid and unenforceable, such determination shall not affect the validity of enforceability of the other provisions hereof. Use of any peripherals not provided by the manufacturer may result in damage not covered by this warranty. This includes but is not limited to: cables, power supplies, cradles, and docking stations. HII extends these warranties only to the first end-users of the products. These warranties are non-transferable.

Limited Warranty Durations

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 Desktop Cradle is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 Passive Vehicle Cradle is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 Battery Charger is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 3000mAh Li-Ion Battery is 6 months.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 Charging Multi-Dock is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 AC power supply and cables is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 cables (USB, Serial, Communication, Power) is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 fabric accessories (e.g., belt, case, holster) is 90 days.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX8 headsets is 1 year.

Honeywell Scanning & Mobility
9680 Old Bailes Road
Fort Mill, SC 29707

www.honeywellaidc.com